

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.

B5432

Chap.

Copyright No.

Shelf . G 5

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

GOD'S GUIDE

FOR

MAN'S FAITH AND PRACTICE.

BEING

AN ARRANGEMENT OF THE HOLY SCRIPTURES,
UNDER THE VARIOUS ASPECTS OF

MAN'S BELIEF, DUTY, AND PRIVILEGE.

IN CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER.

IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE DESIGN OF THE LATE
JAMES GILRUTH.

SYSTEMATIZED AND COLLATED

BY *James* J. H. GILRUTH.

NEW YORK:
NELSON & PHILLIPS.

CINCINNATI:
HITCHCOCK & WALDEN.

HR 1877.



BS432
.G5

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1877, by
J. H. GILRUTH.
in the Office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington.

INTRODUCTION.

THE plan and scope of the following work are based on the idea that God's Word, if studied in its natural and proper relations, is its own infallible interpreter.

The late James Gilruth, of Davenport, Iowa, was accustomed, in the course of his ministry, to note down the topics that occurred to him in his careful study of the Scriptures, and to group under them, in chronological order, all the passages that seemed to him to elucidate and confirm them. His favourite idea was, that the Scriptures contain all the truths that men should hold as articles of faith, and, in connexion with these, full directions for our actions under all circumstances of life. His work grew with his years, but was not completed. His son, James H. Gilruth, of Mount Vernon, Iowa, made a critical examination of the manuscript, and, taking it as a basis, made an entirely new arrangement. The present volume is the fruit of this latter labor. It will be seen that the headings are generally a condensation of the texts. Sometimes, however, this was not practicable, and, in such cases, those headings have been given which were judged best suited to call attention to the subject.

While the plan, with much of the treatment involved in carrying it out, is largely that of the son, the fundamental idea is due to the father. The work is, therefore, the fruit of the critical and intense study of the Bible by two minds; but there is all that symmetry and unity which every literary production needs in order to reach the highest ends. No work, even when the result of one mind, is hardly worth the publishing which has not undergone all those happy transformations which come from the process of composition and general preparation. The world's best works began with little more than a conception. Their order and development belonged to that peculiar inspiration which comes from having made a good beginning, and grows with the increasing pages.

But is there a place in the Christian literature of our day for such a work as the present? We think there is. There never was a time when all the collateral departments of revealed truth were studied with such interest and critical care as in our day. The natural history of the Bible lands, the career of nations related to the scriptural peoples, and the usages and literature of the chosen family, are examined with an assiduity and judgment without example in the history of the Church. In another and still higher respect we observe an unparalleled interest in what concerns the divine truth and the teaching of it to the world. We mean the precise language of the Bible itself.

This is an age in which there is not only more

study than during any of its predecessors in the themes about the Scriptures, but in the Scriptures themselves. The letter of the Bible is inquired into with a keenness of relish and a wealth of learning which give us ground for hoping for it a firmer hold upon the popular mind than ever before. To this latter class of works the following contribution to our biblical literature—"God's Guide for Man's Faith and Practice"—now comes, to take its place of service and honour. The full history of its preparation may not be told here. The time it has occupied, the constant reliance upon the Source of all wisdom, the patience required at every step, and the rare judgment needed throughout, can hardly be seen in their full light. The good work which we believe it will perform will be its best recognition.

It cannot be denied that the inferences which men have drawn from the language of the Bible are often antagonistic. One needs only to arrange the Confessions of the great Christian bodies beside each other to see the opposing variations of human deductions from the Bible. We turn over the pages of such works as Winer's "Confessions of Christendom," and Schaff's "Creeds of Christendom," to see how strangely vast bodies of men can drink from the same fountain and arrange themselves in opposing lines. We, therefore, hail with pleasure every agency that would bring the Christian world back to its common source of truth and duty. What is human often divides; what is divine always unites! A more intimate

knowledge of the exact words of the Scriptures must remove many points of difference between believers, and aid in bringing in that broad charity without which the Churches would be merely human organizations. That oneness of the people of God, which all feel to be the intention of the Great Teacher, must be greatly promoted by a familiar acquaintance with just what the Scriptures do say upon every point of doctrine and duty.

To the pastors, Sunday-school teachers, and all evangelical believers and workers in the vineyard of the Church of Christ, we cordially commend this volume as an honest and thorough effort toward a firmer union of all Christian people, and a more intimate acquaintance with the divine will.

J. F. HURST.

DREW THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY,
MADISON, N. J., *July 23, 1877.*

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

GOD.

	SECTION		SECTION
GOD IS A SPIRIT.....	1	Does what He pleases and wills....	33
GOD, ONE ONLY.....	2	Power belongs unto God.....	34
GOD IS INVISIBLE.....	3	The giver of strength and power	
GOD IS ETERNAL, IMMORTAL.....	4	unto men.....	35
The only Immortal.....	5	GOD IS GOOD.....	36
The First and the Last.....	6	GOD IS HOLY.....	37
GOD IS EVERY-WHERE:—		GOD IS PURE.....	38
Not contained in the heavens.....	7	GOD IS RIGHTEOUS.....	39
Is in heaven and earth.....	8	GOD IS JUST.....	40
Is near to every one.....	9	GOD IS TRUE.....	41
None can hide from his presence...	10	GOD IS FAITHFUL.....	42
Sees and hears every thing.....	11	GOD IS COMPASSIONATE AND MERCI-	
GOD IS UNCHANGEABLE.....	12	FUL.....	43
GOD'S WISDOM:—		GOD IS THE CREATOR.....	44
Infinite in wisdom.....	13	GOD IS KING, GOVERNOR, AND LAW-	
Has done all things in wisdom....	14	GIVER.....	45
The giver of wisdom to men.....	15	GOD IS JUDGE.....	46
The giver of judicial wisdom.....	16	GOD'S ANGER:—	
The giver of wisdom and skill in		Angry with the wicked.....	47
arts, sciences, and poetry.....	17	Will render indignation and fury	
GOD'S KNOWLEDGE:—		against the wicked.....	48
Perfect in knowledge.....	18	Will render vengeance to his ene-	
Knows the thoughts and actions of		mies.....	49
men.....	19	GOD IS LONGSUFFERING, KIND.....	50
Knows the hearts of men.....	20	GOD IS THE REDEEMER.....	51
Knows who love and trust him....	21	GOD IS THE DELIVERER.....	52
Knows who will teach their chil-		GOD IS THE SAVIOUR.....	53
dren to keep his ways.....	22	GOD IN RESPECT TO THE RIGHTEOUS:—	
Knows what we need.....	23	Defends the righteous.....	54
Knows how to deliver the godly		Upholds the righteous.....	55
and to punish the unjust.....	24	Helps the righteous.....	56
Knows the end from the begin-		Keeps the righteous.....	57
ning.....	25	Preserves the righteous.....	58
GOD'S MEMORY:—		Leads and teaches the righteous..	59
Remembers the righteousness of		Favors and blesses the righteous...	60
nations.....	26	Is the refuge and strength of the	
Remembers wickedness of nations.	27	righteous.....	61
Remembers individuals.....	28	Is the God and Father of the right-	
Remembers his covenants.....	29	eous.....	62
GOD IS ALMIGHTY.....	30	GOD IS LOVE.....	63
All things possible with him.....	31	IN GOD IS OUR EXISTENCE.....	64
Able to perform what he has		GOD IS THE GOD AND FATHER OF JE-	
promised.....	32	SUS CHRIST.....	65

CHAPTER II.

JESUS CHRIST.

SECTION		SECTION	
A BLESSING PROMISED.....	66	HE WAS A PROPHET.....	104
A PROPHET LIKE UNTO MOSES PROM- ISED	67	Foretold the destruction of Jeru- salem	105
THE PROMISES FULFILLED IN JESUS CHRIST.....	68	Foretold what signs should follow believers	106
HE WAS BEFORE ALL THINGS:—		Foretold his own death and resur- rection.....	107
Before Abraham.....	69	Foretold the gift of the Comforter	108
With God before the world was...	70	HIS KNOWLEDGE:—	
The Firstborn and beginning of the creation of God.....	71	Knows the Father.....	109
The First and the Last.....	72	Only knows the Father.....	110
THE WORD OF GOD WAS MADE FLESH	73	Spirit of God made him of quick understanding.....	111
Was in the form of God, but took the likeness of men.....	74	Knows all men and their thoughts	112
Begotten of the Holy Ghost—born of a virgin.....	75	Knows his own.....	113
THE SON OF GOD:—		Knew who should betray him....	114
God declares him his Son.....	76	Did not know the day of the end..	115
Declares himself the Son of God...	77	HIS POWER:—	
John the Baptist declares the Son of God.....	78	All things delivered unto him....	116
Others declare him the Son of God.	79	All power given to him.....	117
Devils declare him the Son of God.	80	Equal with God.....	118
He is the only begotten Son of God.	81	Power to lay down life and take it again.....	119
HE IS THE SON OF MAN.....	82	Gave power to his disciples.....	120
Was born in Bethlehem.....	83	Gives power to become the sons of God by him	121
Grew in stature and wisdom.....	84	Able to succour the tempted.....	122
Was circumcised and baptized....	85	Able to save them that come to God by him	123
Was tempted.....	86	Able to subdue all things.....	124
He fasted, hungered, and thirsted..	87	Performed miracles.....	125
Was weary, and slept	88	Wind and sea obey him.....	126
Was grieved and troubled.....	89	Walked on the water.....	127
He prayed.....	90	Turned water into wine.....	128
He gave thanks.....	91	At his word the fig tree withered.	129
He is our brother.....	92	Fed the multitude	130
He is our example.....	93	Healed the blind, dumb, etc.....	131
HE IS MESSIAH THE CHRIST.....	94	Healed the sick and those possessed of devils.....	132
Kept, helped, and given for a cove- nant.....	95	Cast out devils by the Spirit of God	133
On him the Holy Spirit descended.	96	Raised the dead to life.....	134
Was led by the Spirit.....	97	HE HAD COMPASSION.....	135
Anointed to preach the Gospel....	98	Groaned and wept.....	136
Preached and taught.....	99	Rejoiced in spirit.....	137
The doctrine and word not his own.....	100	HE WAS WITHOUT SIN.....	138
Spoke and did as taught by the Father	101	Challenged any to convict him of sin.....	139
Makes known what he has heard..	102	HE WAS MEEK AND LOWLY.....	140
Made known all that he heard....	103	Washed the disciples' feet.....	141

SECTION	SECTION
JESUS CHRIST WAS PERSECUTED:—	HE IS THE JUDGE..... 186
They sought to kill him..... 142	Just and holy..... 187
They endeavoured to catch him in his words..... 143	HE IS THE GIVER OF GRACE..... 188
They took counsel against him... 144	HE IS THE LIGHT OF THE WORLD.... 189
They hired Judas to betray him... 145	HE IS THE WISDOM OF GOD..... 190
They bought the potter's field with the price of Jesus..... 146	HE IS THE FOUNDATION OF THE CHURCH..... 191
He gave no answer to accusations. 147	HE IS THE HEAD OF THE CHURCH ... 192
He was mocked and scourged.... 148	HIS RELATIVE POSITION:—
HE WAS CRUCIFIED..... 149	Greater than the prophets or Abra- ham 198
Felt himself forsaken of God..... 150	Greater than the angels..... 194
Numbered among transgressors... 151	Above all creatures..... 195
Lots cast for his coat..... 152	The Father is greater than Christ. 196
Vinegar with gall given him to drink 153	God is the head of Christ..... 197
Reviled and mocked for trusting in God..... 154	HE PROCEEDED FROM THE FATHER, AND RETURNED TO HIM..... 198
Pierced by the soldiers 155	Came from heaven..... 199
Commended his spirit to God and died..... 156	Came in the Father's name..... 200
Was laid in the sepulchre..... 157	Should be honoured even as the Father..... 201
HIS RESURRECTION:—	Is honoured by the Father..... 202
Arose from the dead the third day. 158	HE IS THE AUTHOR OF ETERNAL SAL- VATION AND FAITH..... 203
Appeared to his disciples..... 159	HE HAS LIFE IN HIMSELF—GIVEN BY THE FATHER..... 204
HE WAS CARRIED UP INTO HEAVEN. 160	He is life..... 205
HE SHALL COME AGAIN..... 161	Has the words of eternal life.... 206
HE APPEARED TO SOME AFTER HIS ASCENSION..... 162	Gives eternal life..... 207
HE IS ALWAYS WITH HIS DISCIPLES. 163	Quickens whom he will..... 208
THE ATONEMENT:—	HE IS THE FULNESS OF GOD..... 209
The bread of life..... 164	The image of God..... 210
The Lamb of God that was slain.. 165	Called Elohim [God]..... 211
Gave himself a sacrifice..... 166	Called Adonai [Lord]..... 212
Was delivered for our offences.... 167	Called Jehovah [Lord]..... 213
Suffered and died for our sins.... 168	Whoever sees Christ sees the Fa- ther..... 214
Was offered once for all..... 169	In him God is manifested..... 215
Is the propitiation of our sins.... 170	He is in the Father..... 215
Is the ransom..... 171	God in Christ reconciling the world 217
Through him is reconciliation.... 172	He and the Father are one..... 218
The only mediator between God and man..... 173	BY HIM GOD CREATED ALL THINGS. 219
The sinner's intercessor and advo- cate..... 174	Upholds all things..... 220
The High Priest..... 175	HE IS EXALTED TO THE RIGHT HAND OF THE THRONE OF GOD..... 221
His priesthood is unchangeable... 176	Is Lord and Master..... 222
The Redeemer..... 177	Is King..... 223
The Deliverer..... 178	His kingdom not of this world... 224
The Saviour..... 179	His kingdom shall have no end... 225
Salvation in no other name..... 180	HE SHALL DELIVER UP THE KINGDOM TO GOD THE FATHER, AND HIMSELF BE SUBJECT 226
The Good Shepherd and Bishop... 181	THE SON IS FULLY KNOWN AND COM- PREHENDED ONLY BY THE FATHER. 227
Touched with our infirmities.... 182	
Gives rest to the weary..... 183	
Receiveth sinners..... 184	
Has power on earth to forgive sins 185	

CHAPTER III. THE HOLY SPIRIT.

SECTION	SECTION
PROCEEDS FROM THE FATHER..... 228	TAUGHT THE APOSTLES..... 242
Given by the Father..... 229	Guides ministers in determining
Given in answer to prayer of Christ. 230	where to preach..... 243
Sent by Jesus Christ..... 231	Is given to all disciples..... 244
INSPIRED THE PROPHETS AND APOS-	Brings to remembrance the word
TLES..... 232	of God..... 245
BEGAT JESUS CHRIST..... 233	Convinces of sin, righteousness,
Given to Christ..... 234	and judgment..... 246
By the Holy Spirit Christ had wis-	Regenerates..... 247
dom, understanding, etc..... 235	Gives assurance to believers..... 248
Led Christ through temptation... 236	Sanctifies..... 249
By the Holy Spirit Christ cast out	Strengthens the believer..... 250
devils..... 237	Prompts and helps in prayer.... 251
Led Christ in his ministry..... 238	Teaches and leads the believer... 252
Through the Holy Spirit Christ	Gives different talents to different
offered himself to God..... 239	men..... 253
By the Holy Spirit Christ gave	Not known by the natural man... 254
commandments to the apostles.. 240	Blasphemy against the Holy Spirit
Witnesses for Christ..... 241	is not forgiven..... 255

CHAPTER IV.

ANGELS.

They worship God..... 256	Appeared in a material body and ate
Do the will of God—help the right-	food..... 262
eous..... 257	Are not to be worshipped..... 263
Execute God's judgments on the	Foretold the birth of Christ..... 264
wicked..... 258	Ministered to Christ..... 265
Restrained Abraham..... 259	Rolled the stone from the sepulchre.. 266
Sometimes instructed the prophets.. 260	Declared Christ should come again.. 267
Foretold the birth and character of	They worship Christ..... 268
persons..... 261	Attend Christ in his kingdom..... 269

CHAPTER V.

DEVILS.

They were angels, but sinned..... 270	Adversary of the righteous..... 277
Sometimes appear as angels of light.. 271	Temporary success against the right-
Instigate all wickedness..... 272	eous..... 278
Tempt men to wickedness..... 273	Contend against angels..... 279
Tempted Christ..... 274	Know Christ and tremble..... 280
Power to do evil..... 275	Are not to be worshipped..... 281
Darken the minds of the ungodly... 276	Shall be cast into the lake of fire... 282

CHAPTER VI.

MAN.

	SECTION		SECTION
CREATED BY GOD.....	283	FAITH AND CONFESSION:—	
Shall be fruitful and multiply.....	284	Impossible to please God unless we	
MAN'S RELATIVE POSITION:—		believe him.....	312
Lower than angels—has dominion		Faith in Christ and confession of	
over the earth.....	285	him are necessary.....	313
SIN AND DEATH.....	286	If we deny him, he will deny us..	314
The body dies, the spirit and soul		EVIDENCES, SUFFICIENT TO GIVE AS-	
live.....	287	Surance.....	315
No knowledge of things transpir-		STEADFASTNESS AND TRUST:—	
ing on earth.....	288	Stand fast in the faith.....	316
Remember experiences of life, the		Cast all burdens and cares on the	
good and bad are separated.....	289	Lord.....	317
The righteous rest in peace with		LOVE GOD... ..	318
Christ.....	290	Fear God.....	319
The righteous not yet ascended to		By the fear of God men depart	
heaven.....	291	from evil.....	320
THERE SHALL BE A RESURRECTION..	292	Reverence God.....	321
The righteous raised first.....	293	Seek God.....	322
Body of the righteous, incorrupt-		Worship God.....	323
ible, immortal.....	294	PRAYER:—	
Body of the righteous like that of		Pray without ceasing.....	324
Christ.....	295	Pray in the name of the Lord	
Body not subject to law controlling		Jesus.....	325
the natural body.....	296	Asking contrary to God's will... ..	326
THE JUDGMENT IN THE END OF THE		Asking according to his will.....	327
WORLD.....	297	Vain repetitions, unknown lan-	
Account for every word and action	298	guage.....	328
None know when the end shall be.	299	After this manner therefore pray	
ALL SHOULD REPENT AND TURN		ye.....	329
UNTO GOD.....	300	DESIGN OF OUR CREATION AND RE-	
FORGIVENESS AND SALVATION FOR		DEMPTION:—	
THOSE WHO BELIEVE IN CHRIST... ..	301	To show forth the glory and kind-	
Jesus Christ the only way to God.	302	ness of God.....	330
Must believe Christ to be the Son		Understand him and be his wit-	
of God.....	303	nesses.....	331
THE RIGHTEOUS KNOW AND UNDER-		Tell what God has done for you..	332
STAND GOD.....	304	Singing and thanksgiving.....	333
To know God and Christ is life... ..	305	Give thanks for food at time of	
The wicked and worldly do not		eating.....	334
know God.....	306	Give unto the Lord the glory due	
DIVINE CALLING:—		to him.....	335
None come to Christ except the		HAVE NO OTHER GODS BEFORE THE	
Father draw him.....	307	LORD GOD.....	336
All are drawn.....	308	Image worship.....	337
MAN'S CHOICE:—		Divination, spiritualism.....	338
Whosoever will may come.....	309	TAKING OATHS:—	
Every one makes his own choice..	310	Swear only by the name of God... ..	339
Every one who chooses to do his		Take not the name of God in vain.	340
will shall know the doctrines of		Swear by nothing that God has	
God.....	311	created.....	341

	SECTION		SECTION
KEEP GOD'S COMMANDMENTS IN THE		PARENTS AND CHILDREN:—	
HEART.....	342	Parents provide for the children...	378
THE SABBATH:—		Train children for the Lord.....	379
A day of holy convocation, and rest		Do not provoke the child.....	380
from secular labour.....	343	Have the children in subjection...	381
Read the word of God—preach the		Children, obey your parents.....	382
Gospel.....	344	Mocking or despising parents.....	383
Works of mercy and necessity to be		MASTERS AND SERVANTS:—	
done.....	345	Masters to servants.....	384
BAPTISM:—		Servants to masters.....	385
It is right to be baptized.....	346	CIVIL GOVERNMENT:—	
In the name of the Father, Son,		Choosing rulers.....	386
and Holy Ghost.....	347	Trials by the judges.....	387
Practiced in the time of the apos-		Judges and officers—impartial....	388
ties.....	348	Government taxes.....	389
LORD'S SUPPER:—		Pray for all in authority.....	390
In remembrance of Christ.....	349	Laws contrary to God's command-	
Not to the satisfying of the appe-		ments.....	391
tite.....	350	THEFT, ROBBERY, FRAUD.....	392
FASTING:—		The thief shall repay double.....	393
It is the custom of believers to fast.	351	The thief's partner.....	394
Relieving the oppressed, to be seen		Cheating in buying and selling....	395
of God only.....	352	COVETOUSNESS.....	396
INTEMPERANCE:—		DUTY OF ALL PERSONS TO WORK....	397
Surfeiting and drunkenness.....	353	INCREASE AND USE OF WEALTH:—	
Associating with drunkards.....	354	Labouring for riches.....	398
Keeping the appetites in subjection.	355	Setting the heart on riches.....	399
Giving strong drink to another per-		God gives the power to get wealth	400
son.....	356	Honour the Lord with thy sub-	
Defiling the body.....	357	stance.....	401
DOING EVIL.....	358	Give according to prosperity.....	402
Giving offence, causing a brother		Give not to be seen of men.....	403
to stumble.....	359	Give to the poor.....	404
BE MEEK TO ALL MEN.....	360	TREATMENT OF FOREIGNERS.....	405
Be patient.....	361	GIVING TESTIMONY:—	
Pride and arrogance.....	362	False witness.....	406
Esteem others more worthy than		The number of witnesses.....	407
self.....	363	TALKING:—	
HOSPITALITY.....	364	Do not lie, but speak the truth... 408	
MURDER, HATRED, REVENGE:—		Speak evil of no man.....	409
Murder and its penalty.....	365	Be swift to hear, slow to speak... 410	
Hatred.....	366	Do not flatter.....	411
Revenge.....	367	Be not a talebearer.....	412
Anger, wrath.....	368	Do not revile nor curse.....	413
Contention and strife.....	369	Do not speak harshly, but pleas-	
PEACEMAKING.....	370	antly.....	414
A brother trespassing.....	371	Foolish talking and jesting.....	415
ADULTERY, FORNICATION.....	372	GOOD WORKS:—	
HUSBAND AND WIFE:—		Maintain good works with zeal... 416	
Hasband and wife one flesh.....	373	Deliver the oppressed, help the	
Divorce.....	374	needy.....	417
Benevolence one to the other....	375	Voluntary self-humiliation.....	418
Husbands to wives.....	376		
Wives to husbands and households.	377		

	SECTION		SECTION
WORKS AND SALVATION:—		Elders—Maintain doctrine.....	441
Justification not of works, but of grace.....	419	Elders—superstitions, disputations	442
Salvation not of works, but of grace	420	Elders—obtain confidence of the people.....	443
CHILDREN OF GOD BY ADOPTION....	421	Elders—fearless, pleasing God....	444
Love one another.....	422	Elders—how supported.....	445
Love the fulfilling of the law.....	423	Elders—esteemed and honoured..	446
CHRISTIAN PERFECTION:—		Elders—pray for.....	447
Be perfect before God.....	424	Deacons—duty of.....	448
Sanctification the will of God....	425	Deacons—how appointed.....	449
Peace with God by the blood of Christ.....	426	Deacons—character, etc.....	450
Sanctified by the blood of Christ..	427	Accused brethren tried by the Church.....	451
Free from the dominion of sin ...	428	Bad characters excommunicated..	452
CHRISTIAN PRIESTHOOD.....	429	False teachers excluded.....	453
CHURCH POLITY:—		Wicked persons and false teachers kept in the Church.....	454
Church to be without divisions... 430		Letters of commendation.	455
Some to be apostles, some to be prophets, etc.....	431	THE BIBLE:—	
Abilities and duties differ in per- sons	432	Given by inspiration of God.....	456
Responsible for use of abilities....	433	Gives light and understanding....	457
General superintendents—how ap- pointed.....	434	Scripture and traditions.....	458
Elders—how appointed.....	435	Able to accomplish that for which it is given.	459
Elders—character and reputation. 436		All must hear and know.....	460
Elders—advised where to labour.. 437		Search and remember the Scrip- tures.....	461
Churches advised.....	438	Written for our instruction.....	462
Elders—duty of.....	439	Word of God fitted to the lips....	463
Elders—neglect of duty.....	440	SPREAD OF THE TRUTH.....	464

CHAPTER VII.

THE HEAVENS AND THE EARTH.

CREATED BY GOD.....	465	Storms and floods.....	468
Belongs unto God.....	466	Winds and the sea.....	469
Rain and dew.....	467	Earth to be consumed.....	470

CHAPTER VIII.

ANIMALS.

ANIMALS—CREATED BY GOD.....	471	Used as food by man.....	474
Under the dominion of men.....	472	Used of God to punish disobedient people.....	475
To be fed and cared for.....	473		

GOD'S GUIDE FOR MAN'S FAITH AND PRACTICE.

CHAPTER I.

GOD.

§ 1. *God is a Spirit.*

A. D. 27.] John 4. 24. God *is* a Spirit.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 3. 17. The Lord *is* that Spirit. ¹⁸ The Spirit of the Lord: [literally, the Lord, the Spirit.]

§ 2. *There is one God Only.*

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 4. 35. Unto thee it was showed, that thou mightest know that the Lord he *is* God; *there is* none else beside him. ³⁹ Know therefore this day, and consider *it* in thine heart, that the Lord he *is* God in heaven above, and upon the earth beneath: *there is* none else.

Deut. 6. 4. Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God *is* one Lord.

Deut. 32. 39. See now that I, *even I, am* he, and *there is* no god with me.

B. C. 1042.] 2 Sam. 7. 22. Wherefore thou art great, O Lord God: for *there is* none like thee, neither *is there any* God besides thee.

1 Chron. 17. 20. O Lord, *there is* none like thee, neither *is there any* God besides thee.

B. C. 1018.] 2 Sam. 22. 32. For who *is* God, save the Lord? and who is a rock, save our God?

B. C. 1015.] Psal. 86. 10. Thou *art* God alone.

B. C. 1004.] 1 Kings 8. 60. That all the people of the earth may know that the Lord *is* God, and that *there is* none else.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 43. 10. Ye *are* my witnesses, saith the Lord, and my servant whom I have chosen; that ye may know and believe me, and understand that I *am* he: before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me.

Isa. 44. 6. Thus saith the Lord the King of Israel, and his Redeemer the Lord of hosts; I *am* the first, and I *am* the last; and beside me *there is* no God. ⁸ Is there a God beside me? yea, *there is* no God; I know not *any*.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 45. 5. I *am* the Lord, and *there is* none else, *there is* no God beside me: I girded thee, though thou hast not known me; ¹⁹ That they may know from the rising of the sun, and from the west, that *there is* none beside me. I *am* the Lord, and *there is* none else. ²¹ And *there is* no God else beside me; a just God and a Saviour; *there is* none beside me. ²² Look unto me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth: for I *am* God, and *there is* none else.

Isa. 46. 9. Remember the former things of old: for I *am* God, and *there is* none else; I *am* God, and *there is* none like me.

B. C. 710.] 2 Kings 19. 15. Thou art the God, *even* thou alone, of all the kingdoms of the earth.

B. C. 690.] Joel 2. 27. And ye shall know that I *am* in the midst of Israel, and *that* I *am* the Lord your God, and none else: and my people shall never be ashamed.

B. C. 587.] Zech. 14. 9. And the Lord shall be king over all the earth: in that day shall there be one Lord, and his name one.

A. D. 29.] Mark 12. 29. And Jesus answered him, The first of all the commandments *is*, Hear, O Israel; The Lord our God is one Lord. ³² And the scribe said unto him, Well, Master, thou hast said the truth: for there is one God; and there is none other but he.

A. D. 29.] John 17. 3. And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 3. 20. Now a mediator is not a *mediator* of one, but God is one.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 8. 4. We know that an idol *is* nothing in the world, and that *there is* none other God but one.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 3. 29. *Is he* the God of the Jews only? *is he* not also of the Gentiles? Yes, of the Gentiles also: ³⁰ Seeing *it is* one God, which shall justify the circumcision by faith, and uncircumcision through faith.

A. D. 61.] Jam. 2. 19. Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 2. 5. For *there is* one God, and one Mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus.

§ 3. God is Invisible.

B. C. 1520.] Job 9. 11. Lo, he goeth by me, and I see *him* not: he passeth on also, but I perceive him not.

Job 23. 8. Behold, I go forward, but he *is* not *there*; and backward, but I cannot perceive him: ⁹ On the left hand, where he doth work, but I cannot behold *him*: he hideth himself on the right hand, that I cannot see *him*.

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 33. 20. And he said, Thou canst not see my face: for there shall no man see me, and live.

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 4. 12. And the Lord spake unto you out of the midst of the fire: ye heard the voice of the words, but saw no similitude; only *ye heard* a voice.

A. D. 26.] John 1. 18. No man hath seen God at any time; the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared *him*.

A. D. 27.] John 5. 37. Ye have neither heard his voice at any time, nor seen his shape.

A. D. 28.] John 6. 46. Not that any man hath seen the Father, save he which is of God, he hath seen the Father.

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 15. Who is the image of the invisible God.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 11. 27. For he endured, as seeing him who is invisible.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 6. 16. Whom no man hath seen, nor can see.

§ 4. *God is Eternal, Immortal.*

B. C. 1886.] Gen. 21. 33. And *Abraham* planted a grove in Beersheba, and called there on the name of the Lord, the everlasting God.

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 32. 40. For I lift up my hand to heaven, and say, I live for ever.

Deut. 33. 27. The eternal God *is thy* refuge, and underneath *are* the everlasting arms.

B. C. 1489.] Psa. 90. 1. Lord, thou hast been our dwelling-place in all generations. ² Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever thou hadst formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting, thou art God.

B. C. 1042.] Psa. 9. 7. But the Lord shall endure for ever.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 40. 28. Hast thou not heard, *that* the everlasting God, the Lord, the Creator of the ends of the earth, fainteth not, neither is weary?

B. C. 712.] Isa. 41. 4. Who hath wrought and done *it*, calling the generations from the beginning? I, the Lord, the first, and with the last; *I am* he.

Isa. 57. 15. For thus saith the high and lofty One that inhabiteth eternity.

B. C. 604.] Jer. 10. 10. But the Lord *is* the true God, he *is* the living God, and an everlasting king.

B. C. 600.] Hab. 3. 6. His ways *are* everlasting.

B. C. 588.] Lam. 5. 19. Thou, O Lord, remainest for ever; thy throne from generation to generation.

B. C. 570.] Dan. 4. 3. His kingdom *is* an everlasting kingdom, and his dominion *is* from generation to generation.

B. C. 537.] Dan. 6. 26. For he *is* the living God, and stead-

fast for ever, and his kingdom *that* which shall not be destroyed, and his dominion *shall be even* unto the end.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 16. 26. According to the commandment of the everlasting God.

§ 5. *God only has Immortality.*

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 6. 15. The blessed and only Potentate, the King of kings, and Lord of lords; ¹⁶ Who only hath immortality.

§ 6. *God is the First and the Last.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 41. 4. Who hath wrought and done *it*, calling the generations from the beginning? I the Lord, the first, and with the last; I *am* he.

Isa. 44. 6. Thus saith the Lord the King of Israel, and his Redeemer the Lord of hosts; I *am* the first, and I *am* the last; and beside me *there is* no God.

Isa. 48. 12. Hearken unto me, O Jacob and Israel, my called; I *am* he; I *am* the first, I also *am* the last.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 21. 6. And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. ⁷ He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son.

§ 7. *God cannot be Contained in the Heavens.*

B. C. 1015.] 2 Chron. 2. 6. But who is able to build him a house, seeing the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain him?

B. C. 1004.] 1 Kings 8. 27. But will God indeed dwell on the earth? behold, the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain thee; how much less this house that I have builded?

§ 8. *God is in Heaven and in Earth.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 66. 1. Thus saith the Lord, The heaven *is* my throne, and the earth *is* my footstool: where *is* the house that ye build unto me? and where *is* the place of my rest?

B. C. 598.] Jer. 23. 24. Do not I fill heaven and earth? saith the Lord.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 34. But I say unto you, Swear not at all; neither by heaven; for it is God's throne: ³⁵ Nor by the earth; for it is his footstool.

Matt. 23. 22. And he that shall swear by heaven, sweareth by the throne of God, and by him that sitteth thereon.

A. D. 31.] Acts 7. 48. Howbeit the Most High dwelleth not in temples made with hands; as saith the prophet, ⁴⁹ Heaven

is my throne, and earth *is* my footstool: what house will ye build me? saith the Lord: or what *is* the place of my rest?

§ 9. *God is near to Every One of Us.*

B. C. 598.] Jer. 23. 23. *Am* I a God at hand, saith the Lord, and not a God afar off?

A. D. 54.] Acts 17. 27. That they should seek the Lord, if haply they might feel after him, and find him, though he be not far from every one of us.

§ 10. *None can hide from the Presence of God.*

B. C. 1015.] Psa. 139. 7. Whither shall I go from thy spirit? or whither shall I flee from thy presence? ⁸ If I ascend up into heaven, thou *art* there: if I make my bed in hell, behold, thou *art there*. ⁹ If I take the wings of the morning, and dwell in the uttermost parts of the sea; ¹⁰ Even there shall thy hand lead me, and thy right hand shall hold me. ¹¹ If I say, Surely the darkness shall cover me; even the night shall be light about me. ¹² Yea, the darkness hideth not from thee; but the night shineth as the day: the darkness and the light *are* both alike to thee.

B. C. 787.] Amos 9. 1. I saw the Lord standing upon the altar: and he said, Smite the lintel of the door, that the post may shake: and cut them in the head, all of them; and I will slay the last of them with the sword: he that fleeth of them shall not flee away, and he that escapeth of them shall not be delivered. ² Though they dig into hell, thence shall mine hand take them; though they climb up to heaven, thence will I bring them down: ³ And though they hide themselves in the top of Carmel, I will search and take them out thence; and though they be hid from my sight in the bottom of the sea, thence will I command the serpent, and he shall bite them: ⁴ And though they go into captivity before their enemies, thence will I command the sword, and it shall slay them: and I will set mine eyes upon them for evil, and not for good.

B. C. 598.] Jer. 23. 24. Can any hide himself in secret places that I shall not see him? saith the Lord.

§ 11. *God Sees and Hears Every Thing.*

B. C. 4004.] Gen. 1. 31. And God saw every thing that he had made, and, behold, *it was* very good.

B. C. 1520.] Job 28. 10. And his eye seeth every precious thing. ²⁴ For he looketh to the ends of the earth, and seeth under the whole heaven.

B. C. 1034.] Psa. 33. 13. The Lord looketh from heaven; he

beholdeth all the sons of men. ¹⁴ From the place of his habitation he looketh upon all the inhabitants of the earth.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 15. 3. The eyes of the Lord *are* in every place, beholding the evil and the good.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 59. 1. Behold, the Lord's hand is not shortened, that it cannot save; neither his ear heavy, that it cannot hear.

B. c. 589.] Jer. 32. 19. For thine eyes *are* open upon all the ways of the sons of men, to give every one according to his ways, and according to the fruit of his doings.

B. c. 588.] Psa. 94. 9. He that planted the ear, shall he not hear? he that formed the eye, shall he not see?

B. c. 534.] Psa. 66. 7. His eyes behold the nations: let not the rebellious exalt themselves.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 4. 13. Neither is there any creature that is not manifest in his sight: but all things *are* naked and opened unto the eyes of him with whom we have to do.

§ 12. *God is Unchangeable.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 23. 13. But he *is* in one *mind*, and who can turn him? and *what* his soul desireth, even *that* he doeth.

B. c. 397.] Mal. 3. 6. For I *am* the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

A. D. 61.] James 1. 17. Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh down from the Father of lights, with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning.

§ 13. *God is Infinite in Wisdom and Understanding.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 9. 4. *He is* wise in heart, and mighty in strength.

Job 12. 13. With him *is* wisdom and strength, he hath counsel and understanding. ¹⁶ With him *is* strength and wisdom.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 8. 14. Counsel *is* mine, and sound wisdom: *I am* understanding; I have strength.

B. c. 713.] Isa. 31. 2. Yet he also *is* wise.

B. c. 603.] Dan. 2. 20. Daniel answered and said, Blessed be the name of God for ever and ever: for wisdom and might are his.

B. c. 515.] Psa. 147. 5. Great *is* our Lord, and of great power: his understanding *is* infinite.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 11. 33. O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! how unsearchable *are* his judgments, and his ways past finding out!

Rom. 16. 27. To God only wise, *be* glory through Jesus Christ for ever.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 1. 17. Now unto the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only wise God, *be* honor and glory forever and ever.

Jude 25. To the only wise God our Saviour *be* glory and majesty, dominion and power, both now and ever.

§ 14. *God has done all things in Wisdom.*

B. C. 1015.] Psa. 104. 24. O Lord, how manifold are thy works! in wisdom hast thou made them all.

B. C. 1004.] Psa. 136. 5. To him that by wisdom made the heavens.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 3. 19. The Lord by wisdom hath founded the earth; by understanding hath he established the heavens.

B. C. 607.] Jer. 10. 12. He hath made the earth by his power, he hath established the world by his wisdom, and hath stretched out the heavens by his discretion.

§ 15. *God is the giver of Wisdom and Understanding to Men.*

B. C. 1044.] Psa. 51. 6. Behold, thou desirest truth in the inward parts: and in the hidden *part* thou shalt make me to know wisdom.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 2. 6. For the Lord giveth wisdom: out of his mouth *cometh* knowledge and understanding.

B. C. 977.] Eccl. 2. 26. For *God* giveth to a man that *is* good in his sight, wisdom, and knowledge, and joy.

B. C. 603.] Dan. 2. 20. Daniel answered and said, Blessed be the name of God for ever and ever: for wisdom and might are his: ²¹ And he changeth the times and the seasons: he removeth kings and setteth up kings: he giveth wisdom unto the wise, and knowledge to them that know understanding: ²² He revealeth the deep and secret things: he knoweth what is in the darkness, and the light dwelleth with him. ²³ I thank thee, and praise thee, O thou God of my fathers, who hast given me wisdom and might, and hast made known unto me now what we desired of thee: for thou hast *now* made known unto us the king's matter.

A. D. 31.] Acts 7. 9. And the patriarchs, moved with envy, sold Joseph into Egypt: but God was with him, ¹⁰ And delivered him out of all his afflictions, and gave him favour and wisdom in the sight of Pharaoh king of Egypt.

A. D. 61.] James 1. 5. If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all *men* liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him.

§ 16. *God is the giver of Judicial Wisdom.*

B. c. 1014.] 1 Kings 3. 5. In Gibeon the Lord appeared to Solomon in a dream by night: and God said, Ask what I shall give thee. ⁶ And Solomon said, Thou hast showed unto thy servant David my father great mercy, according as he walked before thee in truth, and in righteousness, and in uprightness of heart with thee; and thou hast kept for him this great kindness, that thou hast given him a son to sit on his throne, as *it is* this day. ⁷ And now, O Lord my God, thou hast made thy servant king instead of David my father: and I *am* but a little child: I know not *how* to go out or come in. ⁸ And thy servant *is* in the midst of thy people which thou hast chosen, a great people, that cannot be numbered nor counted for multitude. ⁹ Give therefore thy servant an understanding heart to judge thy people, that I may discern between good and bad: for who is able to judge this thy so great a people? ¹⁰ And the speech pleased the Lord, that Solomon had asked this thing. ¹¹ And God said unto him, Because thou hast asked this thing, and hast not asked for thyself long life; neither hast asked riches for thyself, nor hast asked the life of thine enemies; but hast asked for thyself understanding to discern judgment; ¹² Behold, I have done according to thy word: lo, I have given thee a wise and understanding heart; so that there was none like thee before thee, neither after thee shall any arise like unto thee. ¹³ And I have also given thee that which thou hast not asked, both riches, and honour: so that there shall not be any among the kings like unto thee all thy days. ¹⁴ And if thou wilt walk in my ways, to keep my statutes and my commandments, as thy father David did walk, then I will lengthen thy days. ¹⁵ And Solomon awoke; and, behold, *it was* a dream. And he came to Jerusalem, and stood before the ark of the covenant of the Lord, and offered up burnt offerings, and offered peace offerings, and made a feast to all his servants. ¹⁶ Then came there two women, *that were* harlots, unto the king, and stood before him. ¹⁷ And the one woman said, O my lord, I and this woman dwell in one house; and I was delivered of a child with her in the house. ¹⁸ And it came to pass the third day after that I was delivered, that this woman was delivered also: and we *were* together; *there was* no stranger with us in the house, save we two in the house. ¹⁹ And this woman's child died in the night; because she overlaid it. ²⁰ And she arose at midnight, and took my son from beside me, while thine handmaid slept, and laid it in her bosom, and laid her dead child in my bosom. ²¹ And when I rose in the morning to give my child suck, behold, it was dead: but when I had considered it in the morning; behold, it was not my son, which I did

bear. ²² And the other woman said, Nay; but the living *is* my son, and the dead *is* thy son. And this said, No; but the dead *is* thy son, and the living *is* my son. Thus they spake before the king. ²³ Then said the king, The one saith, This *is* my son that liveth, and thy son *is* the dead: and the other saith, Nay; but thy son *is* the dead, and my son *is* the living. ²⁴ And the king said, Bring me a sword. And they brought a sword before the king. ²⁵ And the king said, Divide the living child in two, and give half to the one, and half to the other. ²⁶ The spake the woman whose the living child *was* unto the king, for her bowels yearned upon her son, and she said, O my lord, give her the living child, and in no wise slay it. But the other said, Let it be neither mine nor thine, *but* divide *it*. ²⁷ Then the king answered and said, Give her the living child, and in no wise slay it: she *is* the mother thereof. ²⁸ And all Israel heard of the judgment which the king had judged; and they feared the king: for they saw that the wisdom of God *was* in him to do judgment.

§ 17. *God is the giver of Wisdom, Understanding, and Skill in Arts, Sciences, and Poetry.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 31. 1. And the Lord spake unto Moses, saying, ² See, I have called by name Bezaleel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah: ³ And I have filled him with the spirit of God, in wisdom, and in understanding, and in knowledge, and in all manner of workmanship, ⁴ To devise cunning works, to work in gold, and in silver, and in brass, ⁵ And in cutting of stones, to set *them*, and in carving of timber, to work in all manner of workmanship. ⁶ And I, behold, I have given with him Aholiab, the son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan: and in the hearts of all that are wise hearted I have put wisdom, that they may make all that I have commanded thee; ⁷ The tabernacle of the congregation, and the ark of the testimony, and the mercyseat that *is* thereupon, and all the furniture of the tabernacle, ⁸ And the table and his furniture, and the pure candlestick with all his furniture, and the altar of incense, ⁹ And the altar of burnt offering with all his furniture, and the laver and his foot, ¹⁰ And the clothes of service, and the holy garments for Aaron the priest, and the garments of his sons, to minister in the priest's office, ¹¹ And the anointing oil, and sweet incense for the holy *place*: according to all that I have commanded thee shall they do.

B. C. 1490.] Exod. 36. 1. Then wrought Bezaleel and Aholiab, and every wise hearted man, in whom the Lord put wisdom and understanding to know how to work all manner of work for the service of the sanctuary, according to all that the Lord had commanded. ² And Moses called Bezaleel and

Aholiab, and every wise-hearted man, in whose heart the Lord had put wisdom, *even* every one whose heart stirred him up to come unto the work to do it: ³ And they received of Moses all the offering, which the children of Israel had brought for the work of the service of the sanctuary, to make it *withal*. And they brought yet unto him free offerings every morning. ⁴ And all the wise men, that wrought all the work of the sanctuary, came every man from his work which they made.

B. c. 975.] 1 Kings 4. 29. And God gave Solomon wisdom and understanding exceeding much, and largeness of heart, even as the sand that *is* on the sea shore. ³⁰ And Solomon's wisdom excelled the wisdom of all the children of the east, country, and all the wisdom of Egypt. ³¹ For he was wiser than all men; than Ethan the Ezrahite, and Heman, and Chalcol, and Darda, the sons of Mahol: and his fame was in all nations round about. ³² And he spake three thousand proverbs: and his songs were a thousand and five. ³³ And he spake of trees, from the cedar tree that *is* in Lebanon even unto the hyssop that springeth out of the wall: he spake also of beasts, and of fowl, and of creeping things, and of fishes. ³⁴ And there came of all people to hear the wisdom of Solomon, from all kings of the earth, which had heard of his wisdom.

B. c. 606.] Dan. 1. 17. As for these four children, God gave them knowledge and skill in all learning and wisdom: and Daniel had understanding in all visions and dreams. ¹⁹ And the king communed with them; and among them all was found none like Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah: therefore stood they before the king. ²⁰ And in all matters of wisdom *and* understanding, that the king inquired of them, he found them ten times better than all the magicians *and* astrologers that *were* in all his realm.

§ 18. *God is Perfect in Knowledge.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 36. 4. He that is perfect in knowledge *is* with thee.

Job 37. 16. Dost thou know the balancings of the clouds, the wondrous works of him which is perfect in knowledge?

A. D. 52.] Acts 15. 18. Known unto God are all his works, from the beginning of the world.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 3. 20. For if our heart condemn us, God is greater than our heart, and knoweth all things.

§ 19. *God knows and understands the Thoughts and Actions of Men.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 23. 10. But he knoweth the way that I take.

B. c. 1520.] Job 42. 2. I know that thou canst do every *thing*, and *that* no thought can be withholden from thee.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 31. 21. For I know their imagination which they go about.

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 139. 1. O Lord, thou hast searched me, and known *me*. ²Thou knowest my downsitting and mine uprising; thou understandest my thought afar off. ³Thou compassest my path and my lying down, and art acquainted *with* all my ways. ⁴For *there is* not a word in my tongue, *but*, lo, O Lord, thou knowest it altogether. ⁵Thou hast beset me behind and before, and laid thine hand upon me. ⁶*Such* knowledge *is* too wonderful for me; it is high, I cannot attain unto it.

B. c. 1015.] 1 Chron. 28. 9. For the Lord searcheth all hearts, and understandeth all the imaginations of the thoughts.

B. c. 710.] Psa. 44. 21. Shall not God search this out? for he knoweth the secrets of the heart.

B. c. 594.] Ezek. 11. 5. And the Spirit of the Lord fell upon me, and said unto me, Speak; Thus saith the Lord; Thus have ye said, O house of Israel: for I know the things that come into your mind, *every one of* them.

B. c. 588.] Psa. 94. 11. The Lord knoweth the thoughts of man, that they *are* vanity.

§ 20. *God knows the Hearts of Men.*

B. c. 1817.] Gen. 20. 6. Yea, I know that thou didst this in the integrity of thy heart.

B. c. 1053.] 1 Sam. 16. 7. For *the* Lord *seeth* not as man seeth; for man looketh on the outward appearance, but the Lord looketh on the heart.

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 139. 23. Search me, O God, and know my heart: try me, and know my thoughts.

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 19. 14. Let the words of my mouth, and the meditation of my heart, be acceptable in thy sight, O Lord, my strength, and my redeemer.

B. c. 598.] Jer. 12. 3. But thou, O Lord, knowest me: thou hast seen me, and tried mine heart toward thee.

A. D. 29.] Luke 16. 15. And he said unto them, Ye are they which justify yourselves before men; but God knoweth your hearts.

§ 21. *God knows them that Love and Trust Him.*

B. c. 1032.] 2 Sam. 7. 20. And what can David say more unto thee? for thou, Lord God, knowest thy servant.

B. c. 713.] Nah. 1. 7. The Lord *is* good, a strong hold in the day of trouble; and he knoweth them that trust in him.

B. C. 444.] Psa. 1. 6. For the Lord knoweth the way of the righteous.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 4. 9. But now, after that ye have known God, or rather are known of God, how turn ye again to the weak and beggarly elements, whereunto ye desire again to be in bondage?

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 8. 3. But if any man love God, the same is known of him.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 2. 19. Nevertheless the foundation of God standeth sure, having this seal, The Lord knoweth them that are his.

§ 22. *God knows who will Teach their Children to Keep His Ways.*

B. C. 1897.] Gen. 18. 17. And the Lord said, Shall I hide from Abraham that thing which I do; ¹⁸ Seeing that Abraham shall surely become a great and mighty nation, and all the nations of the earth shall be blessed in him? ¹⁹ For I know him, that he will command his children and his household after him, and they shall keep the way of the Lord, to do justice and judgment; that the Lord may bring upon Abraham that which he hath spoken of him.

§ 23. *God knows what we Need.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 6. 8. For your Father knoweth what things ye have need of, before ye ask him. ³¹ Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed? ³² (For after all these things do the Gentiles seek:) for your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things.

§ 24. *God knows how to Deliver the Godly and Reserve the Unjust to be Punished.*

A. D. 60.] 2 Pet. 2. 9. The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly out of temptation, and to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be punished.

§ 25. *God only knows what will Be, and the End from the Beginning.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 42. 9. Behold, the former things are come to pass, and new things do I declare: before they spring forth I tell you of them.

Isa. 44. 7. And who, as I, shall call, and shall declare it, and set it in order for me, since I appointed the ancient peo-

ple? and the things that are coming, and shall come, let them show unto them. ⁸ Fear ye not, neither be afraid: have not I told thee from that time, and have declared *it*?

B. C. 712.] Isa. 45. 21. Tell ye, and bring *them* near; yea, let them take counsel together: who hath declared this from ancient time? *who* hath told it from that time? *have* not I the Lord?

Isa. 46. 9. Remember the former things of old: for I *am* God, and *there is* none else; I *am* God, and *there is* none like me, ¹⁰ Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times *the things* that are not *yet* done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 24. 36. But of that day and hour knoweth no *man*, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only.

Mark 13. 32. But of that day and *that* hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels which are in heaven, neither the Son, but the Father. ³³ Take ye heed, watch and pray; for ye know not when the time is.

Acts 1. 7. And he said unto them, It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in his own power.

§ 26. *God Remembers the Righteousness of Nations and of Individuals.*

B. C. 1063.] Psa. 9. 11. Sing praises to the Lord, which dwelleth in Zion: declare among the people his doings. ¹² When he maketh inquisition for blood, he remembereth them: he forgetteth not the cry of the humble.

B. C. 629.] Jer. 2. 2. Go and cry in the ears of Jerusalem, saying, Thus saith the Lord; I remember thee, the kindness of thy youth, the love of thine espousals, when thou wentest after me in the wilderness, in a land *that was* not sown.

B. C. 587.] Jer. 30. 10. Therefore fear thou not, O my servant Jacob, saith the Lord; neither be dismayed, O Israel: for, lo, I will save thee from afar, and thy seed from the land of their captivity; and Jacob shall return, and shall be in rest, and be quiet, and none shall make *him* afraid. ²⁰ Their children also shall be as aforetime, and their congregation shall be established before me, and I will punish all that oppress them.

B. C. 536.] Psa. 112. 6. Surely he shall not be moved for ever: the righteous shall be in everlasting remembrance.

B. C. 397.] Mal. 3. 16. Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another: and the Lord hearkened, and heard *it*, and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name. ¹⁷ And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them, as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

A. D. 31.] Acts 10. 30. And Cornelius said, Four days ago I was fasting until this hour; and at the ninth hour I prayed in my house, and, behold, a man stood before me in bright clothing, ³¹ And said, Cornelius, thy prayer is heard, and thine alms are had in remembrance in the sight of God.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 6. 10. For God *is* not unrighteous to forget your work and labor of love, which ye have showed toward his name, in that ye have ministered to the saints, and do minister.

§ 27. *God Remembers the Wickedness of Nations.*

B. C. 1079.] 1 Sam. 15. 2. Thus saith the Lord of hosts, I remember *that* which Amalek did to Israel, how he laid *wait* for him in the way, when he came up from Egypt.

B. C. 780.] Hos. 7. 2. And they consider not in their hearts *that* I remember all their wickedness: now their own doings have beset them about; they are before my face.

Hos. 8. 12. I have written to him the great things of my law, *but* they were counted as a strange thing. ¹³ They sacrifice flesh *for* the sacrifices of mine offerings, and eat it; *but* the Lord accepteth them not; now will he remember their iniquity, and visit their sins: they shall return to Egypt.

Hos. 9. 9. They have deeply corrupted *themselves*, as in the days of Gibeah: *therefore* he will remember their iniquity, he will visit their sins.

B. C. 605.] Jer. 14. 10. Thus saith the Lord unto this people, Thus have they loved to wander, they have not refrained their feet, therefore the Lord doth not accept them; he will now remember their iniquity, and visit their sins.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 18. 2. And he cried mightily with a strong voice, saying, Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen, and is become the habitation of devils, and the hold of every foul spirit, and a cage of every unclean and hateful bird. ³ For all nations have drunk of the wine of the wrath of her fornication, and the kings of the earth have committed fornication with her, and the merchants of the earth are waxed rich through the abundance of her delicacies. ⁴ And I heard another voice from heaven, saying, Come out of her, my people, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues. ⁵ For her sins have reached unto heaven, and God hath remembered her iniquities.

§ 28. *God Remembers Individuals.*

B. C. 2348.] Gen. 8. 1. And God remembered Noah, and every living thing, and all the cattle that *was* with him in the ark.

B. C. 1894.] Gen. 19. 29. And it came to pass, when God destroyed the cities of the plain, that God remembered Abraham, and sent Lot out of the midst of the overthrow, when he overthrew the cities in the which Lot dwelt.

B. C. 1746.] Gen. 30. 22. And God remembered Rachel, and God hearkened to her, and opened her womb.

B. C. 1171.] 1 Sam. 1. 1. Now there was a certain man of Ramathaim-zophim, of mount Ephraim, and his name was Elkanah: ² And he had two wives; the name of the one *was* Hannah, and the name of the other Peninnah: and Peninnah had children, but Hannah had no children. ¹⁰ And she *was* in bitterness of soul, and prayed unto the Lord and wept sore. ¹⁹ And Elkanah knew Hannah his wife; and the Lord remembered her. ²⁰ Wherefore it came to pass, when the time was come about after Hannah had conceived, that she bare a son, and called his name Samuel, *saying*, Because I have asked him of the Lord.

§ 29. *God Remembers his Covenants.*

B. C. 2347.] Gen. 9. 15. And I will remember my covenant, which *is* between me and you and every living creature of all flesh.

B. C. 1500.] Exod. 2. 24. And God remembered his covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob. ²⁵ And God looked upon the children of Israel, and God had respect unto *them*.

B. C. 1591.] Exod. 6. 2. And God spake unto Moses, and said unto him, *I am* the Lord: ⁵ And I have remembered my covenant. ⁶ Wherefore say unto the children of Israel, *I am* the Lord, and I will bring you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians.

B. C. 1590.] Lev. 26. 42. Then will I remember my covenant with Jacob, and also my covenant with Isaac, and also my covenant with Abraham will I remember.

B. C. 1041.] Psa. 105. 8. He hath remembered his covenant forever, the word *which* he commanded to a thousand generations.

B. C. 594.] Ezek. 16. 60. Nevertheless, I will remember my covenant with thee in the days of thy youth, and I will establish unto thee an everlasting covenant.

B. C. 536.] Psa. 106. 45. And he remembered for them his covenant, and repented according to the multitude of his mercies.

B. C. 5.] Luke 1. 68. Blessed *be* the Lord God of Israel; for he hath visited and redeemed his people, ⁷² To perform the mercy *promised* to our fathers, and to remember his holy covenant.

§ 30. *God is Almighty.*

B. c. 1897.] Gen. 17. 1. And when Abram was ninety years old and nine, the Lord appeared to Abram, and said unto him, *I am* the Almighty God; walk before me, and be thou perfect.

B. c. 1738.] Gen. 35. 11. And God said unto him, *I am* God Almighty.

B. c. 1689.] Gen. 48. 3. And Jacob said unto Joseph, God Almighty appeared unto me at Luz in the land of Canaan, and blessed me.

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 6. 2. And God spake unto Moses, and said unto him, *I am* the Lord: ³And I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, by *the name of* God Almighty; but by my name JEHOVAH was I not known to them.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 11. 16. And the four and twenty elders, which sat before God on their seats, fell upon their faces, and worshipped God, ¹⁷Saying, We give thee thanks, O Lord God Almighty, which art, and wast, and art to come; because thou hast taken to thee thy great power, and hast reigned.

§ 31. *With God all Things are Possible.*

B. c. 1897.] Gen. 18. 14. Is any thing too hard for the Lord?

B. c. 1520.] Job 5. 8. I would seek unto God, and unto God would I commit my cause: ⁹Which doeth great things and unsearchable; marvellous things without number.

Job 9. 10. Which doeth great things past finding out; yea, and wonders without number.

Job 37. 5. God thundereth marvellously with his voice; great things doeth he, which we cannot comprehend.

Job 42. 2. I know that thou canst do every *thing*, and *that* no thought can be withholden from thee.

B. c. 1015.] Psal. 72. 18. Blessed *be* the Lord God, the God of Israel, who only doeth wondrous things.

Psal. 86. 10. For thou *art* great, and doest wondrous things; thou *art* God alone.

B. c. 1004.] Psal. 136. 4. To him who alone doeth great wonders: for his mercy *endureth* for ever.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 45. 7. I form the light, and create darkness: I make peace, and create evil: I the Lord do all these *things*.

B. c. 589.] Jer. 32. 17. Ah Lord God! behold, thou hast made the heaven and the earth by thy great power and stretched out arm, *and* there is nothing too hard for thee. ²⁷Behold, *I am* the Lord, the God of all flesh: is there any thing too hard for me?

B. C. 580.] Dan. 3. 17. Our God whom we serve is able to deliver us from the burning fiery furnace, and he will deliver *us* out of thine hand, O king.

B. C. 547.] Dan. 6. 19. Then the king arose very early in the morning, and went in haste unto the den of lions. ²⁰ And when he came to the den, he cried with a lamentable voice unto Daniel: *and* the king spake and said to Daniel, O Daniel, servant of the living God, is thy God, whom thou servest continually, able to deliver thee from the lions? ²¹ Then said Daniel unto the king, O king, live for ever. ²² My God hath sent his angel, and hath shut the lions' mouths, that they have not hurt me: forasmuch as before him innocency was found in me; and also before thee, O king, have I done no hurt.

B. C. 5.] Luke 1. 37. For with God nothing shall be impossible.

A. D. 26.] Matt. 3. 9. And think not to say within yourselves, We have Abraham to *our* father: for I say unto you, that God is able of these stones to raise up children unto Abraham.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 10. 28. And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 19. 26. But Jesus beheld *them*, and said unto them, With men this is impossible; but with God all things are possible.

Luke 18. 27. And he said, The things which are impossible with men are possible with God.

§ 32. *God is able to Perform what he has Promised.*

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 9. 8. And God *is* able to make all grace abound toward you; that ye, always having all sufficiency in all *things*, may abound to every good work.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 4. 21. And being fully persuaded, that what he had promised, he was able also to perform.

Rom. 11. 23. And they also, if they abide not still in unbelief, shall be grafted in: for God is able to graff them in again.

Rom. 14. 4. Who art thou that judgest another man's servant? to his own master he standeth or falleth; yea, he shall be holden up: for God is able to make him stand.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 3. 20. Now unto him that is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think, according to the power that worketh in us.

James 4. 12. There is one lawgiver, who is able to save and to destroy.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 1. 12. For the which cause I also suffer

these things: nevertheless I am not ashamed; for I know whom I have believed, and am persuaded that he is able to keep that which I have committed unto him against that day.

A. D. 65.] Jude 24. Now unto him that is able to keep you from falling, and to present *you* faultless before the presence of his glory with exceeding joy, ²⁵ To the only wise God our Saviour, *be* glory and majesty, dominion and power, both now and ever. Amen.

§ 33. *God does what he Pleases and Wills.*

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 32. 39. See now that I, *even* I, *am* he, and *there is* no god with me: I kill, and I make alive; I wound, and I heal: neither *is there any* that can deliver out of my hand.

B. C. 1004.] Psa. 135. 6. Whatsoever the Lord pleased, *that* did he in heaven, and in earth, in the seas, and all deep places.

B. C. 896.] Psa. 115. 3. But our God *is* in the heavens: he hath done whatsoever he hath pleased.

B. C. 896.] 2 Chron. 20. 6. And said, O Lord God of our fathers, *art* not thou God in heaven? and rulest *not* thou over all the kingdoms of the heathen? and in thine hand *is there* not power and might, so that none is able to withstand thee?

B. C. 712.] Isa. 43. 13. Yea, before the day *was* I *am* he; and *there is* none that can deliver out of my hand: I will work, and who shall let it?

B. C. 570.] Dan. 4. 35. And all the inhabitants of the earth *are* reputed as nothing: and he doeth according to his will in the army of heaven, and *among* the inhabitants of the earth: and none can stay his hand, or say unto him, What doest thou?

A. D. 42.] Acts 11. 17. Forasmuch then as God gave them the like gift as *he did* unto us, who believed on the Lord Jesus Christ, what was I, that I could withstand God?

§ 34. *Power belongs unto God.*

B. C. 1023.] Psa. 62. 11. God hath spoken once; twice have I heard this; that power *belongeth* unto God.

B. C. 1015.] 1 Chron. 29. 11. Thine, O Lord, *is* the greatness, and the power, and the glory, and the victory, and the majesty: for all *that is* in the heaven and in the earth *is thine*; thine *is* the kingdom, O Lord, and thou art exalted as head above all.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 19. 1. And after these things I heard a great voice of much people in heaven, saying, Alleluia; Salvation, and glory, and honour, and power, unto the Lord our God.

§ 35. *God is the giver of Strength and Power unto Men.*

B. C. 1045.] Psa. 68. 35. O God, *thou art* terrible out of thy holy places: the God of Israel *is* he that giveth strength and power unto *his* people. Blessed *be* God.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 40. 29. He giveth power to the faint; and to *them that have* no might he increaseth strength.

B. C. 503.] Dan. 2. 37. Thou, O king, *art* a king of kings: for the God of heaven hath given thee a kingdom, power, and strength, and glory. ³⁸ And wheresoever the children of men dwell, the beasts of the field and the fowls of the heaven hath he given into thine hand, and hath made thee ruler over them all.

A. D. 29.] John 19. 10. Then saith Pilate unto him, Speak-est thou not unto me? knowest thou not that I have power to crucify thee, and have power to release thee? ¹¹ Jesus answered, Thou couldest have no power *at all* against me, except it were given thee from above: therefore he that delivered me unto thee hath the greater sin.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 13. 10. Therefore I write these things being absent, lest being present I should use sharpness, according to the power which the Lord hath given me to edification, and not to destruction.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 1. 7. For God hath not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind.

§ 36. *God is Good.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 33. 19. And he said, I will make all my goodness pass before thee, and I will proclaim the name of the Lord before thee; and will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and will show mercy on whom I will show mercy.

Exod. 34. 6. And the Lord passed by before him, and proclaimed, The Lord, The Lord God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abundant in goodness and truth.

B. C. 1060.] Psa. 34. 8. O taste and see that the Lord *is* good: blessed *is* the man *that* trusteth in him.

Psa. 52. 1. Why boastest thou thyself in mischief, O mighty man? the goodness of God *endureth* continually.

B. C. 1044.] Psa. 118. 1. O give thanks unto the Lord; for *he is* good; because his mercy *endureth* for ever.

B. C. 1034.] Psa. 33. 5. He loveth righteousness and judgment: the earth is full of the goodness of the Lord.

B. C. 1015.] Psa. 86. 5. For thou, Lord, *art* good, and ready to forgive; and plenteous in mercy unto all them that call upon thee.

Psa. 145. 9. The Lord *is* good to all: and his tender mercies are over all his works.

B. c. 1004.] Psa. 136. 1. O give thanks unto the Lord; for *he is good*: for his mercy *endureth* for ever.

2 Chron. 5. 13. It came even to pass, as the trumpeters and singers *were* as one, to make one sound to be heard in praising and thanking the Lord; and when they lifted up *their* voice with the trumpet and cymbals and instruments of music, and praised the Lord, *saying*, For *he is good*; for his mercy *endureth* for ever; that *then* the house was filled with a cloud, *even* the house of the Lord.

B. c. 710.] Psa. 73. 1. Truly God *is* good to Israel, *even* to such as are of a clean heart.

B. c. 587.] Jer. 31. 14. And my people shall be satisfied with my goodness, saith the Lord.

Zech. 9. 17. For how great *is* his goodness, and how great *is* his beauty!

B. c. 539.] Psa. 25. 7. Remember not the sins of my youth, nor my transgressions: according to thy mercy remember thou me for thy goodness' sake, O Lord. ⁸ Good and upright *is* the Lord: therefore will he teach sinners in the way.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 19. 17. And he said unto him, Why callest thou me good? *there is* none good but one, *that is*, God.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 2. 4. Or despisest thou the riches of his goodness and forbearance and longsuffering; not knowing that the goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance?

§ 37. *God is Holy.*

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 15. 11. Who *is* like unto thee, O Lord, among the gods? who *is* like thee, glorious in holiness, fearful *in* praises, doing wonders?

B. c. 1490.] Lev. 11. 44. For *I am* the Lord your God: ye shall therefore sanctify yourselves, and ye shall be holy; for *I am* holy: neither shall ye defile yourselves with any manner of creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. ⁴⁵ For *I am* the Lord that bringeth you up out of the land of Egypt, to be your God: ye shall therefore be holy, for *I am* holy.

Lev. 19. 2. Speak unto all the congregation of the children of Israel, and say unto them, Ye shall be holy: for *I* the Lord your God *am* holy.

Lev. 20. 26. And ye shall be holy unto me: for *I* the Lord *am* holy, and have severed you from *other* people, that ye should be mine.

Lev. 21. 8. Thou shalt sanctify him therefore; for he offereth the bread of thy God: he shall be holy unto thee: for *I* the Lord, which sanctify you, *am* holy.

B. c. 1433.] Josh. 24. 19. And Joshua said unto the people, Ye cannot serve the Lord: for *he is* a holy God.

B. c. 1044.] Psal. 22. 3. But thou *art* holy, O *thou* that inhabitest the praises of Israel.

B. c. 1023.] Psal. 71. 22. I will also praise thee with the psaltery, *even* thy truth, O my God: unto thee will I sing with the harp, O thou Holy One of Israel.

B. c. 1015.] Psal. 89. 18. For the Lord *is* our defence; and the Holy One of Israel *is* our king.

B. c. 1004.] Psal. 97. 12. Rejoice in the Lord, ye righteous; and give thanks at the remembrance of his holiness.

Psal. 99. 3. Let them praise thy great and terrible name; *for it is* holy. ⁵ Exalt ye the Lord our God, and worship at his footstool; *for he is* holy.

B. c. 740.] Hosea 11. 9. I will not execute the fierceness of mine anger, I will not return to destroy Ephraim: for I *am* God, and not man; the Holy One in the midst of thee: and I will not enter into the city.

A. D. 29.] John 17. 11. Holy Father, keep through thine own name those whom thou hast given me, that they may be one, as we *are*.

B. c. 60.] 1 Pet. 1. 16. Because it is written, Be ye holy; for I am holy.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 4. 8. And the four beasts had each of them six wings about *him*; and *they were* full of eyes within: and they rest not day and night, saying, Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come.

§ 38. *God is Pure.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 4. 17. Shall a man be more pure than his Maker?

B. c. 1015.] Psal. 12. 6. The words of the Lord *are* pure words: *as* silver tried in a furnace of earth, purified seven times.

Psal. 19. 8. The commandment of the Lord *is* pure, enlightening the eyes.

B. c. 700.] Prov. 30. 5. Every word of God *is* pure.

B. c. 600.] Hab. 1. 13. *Thou art* of purer eyes than to behold evil, and canst not look on iniquity.

B. c. 444.] Psal. 119. 140. Thy word *is* very pure: therefore thy servant loveth it.

§ 39. *God is Righteous.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 36. 3. I will fetch my knowledge from afar, and will ascribe righteousness to my Maker.

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 9. 27. And Pharaoh sent, and called for Moses and Aaron, and said unto them, I have sinned this time: the Lord *is* righteous, and I and my people *are* wicked.

B. c. 1062.] Psa. 11. 7. For the righteous Lord loveth righteousness: his countenance doth behold the upright.

B. c. 1023.] Psa. 71. 19. Thy righteousness also, O God, *is* very high, who hast done great things: O God, who *is* like unto thee!

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 145. 17. The Lord is righteous in all his ways, and holy in all his works.

B. c. 610.] Jer. 9. 24. But let him that glorieth glory in this, that he understandeth and knoweth me, that I *am* the Lord which exercise lovingkindness, judgment, and righteousness, in the earth: for in these *things* I delight, saith the Lord.

B. c. 598.] Jer. 12. 1. Righteous *art* thou, O Lord, when I plead with thee.

B. c. 539.] Psa. 36. 6. Thy righteousness *is* like the great mountains.

Psa. 92. 15. To show that the Lord *is* upright: *he is* my rock, and *there is* no unrighteousness in him.

B. c. 538.] Dan. 9. 7. O Lord, righteousness *belongeth* unto thee.

B. c. 536.] Psa. 111. 3. His work is honourable and glorious: and his righteousness endureth for ever.

B. c. 444.] Psa. 119. 137. Righteous *art* thou, O Lord, and upright *are* thy judgments. ¹⁴² Thy righteousness *is* an everlasting righteousness, and thy law *is* the truth.

A. D. 29.] John 17. 25. O righteous Father, the world hath not known thee.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 4. 8. Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 16. 5. And I heard the angel of the waters say, Thou art righteous, O Lord, which art, and wast, and shalt be, because thou hast judged thus. ⁷ And I heard another out of the altar say, Even so, Lord God Almighty, true and righteous *are* thy judgments.

§ 40. *God is Just.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 4. 17. Shall mortal man be more just than God? shall a man be more pure than his Maker?

Job 8. 3. Doth God pervert judgment? or doth the Almighty pervert justice?

Job 37. 23. *Touching* the Almighty, we cannot find him out: *he is* excellent in power, and in judgment, and in plenty of justice: he will not afflict.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 32. 4. *He is* the Rock, his work *is* perfect; for all his ways *are* judgment: a God of truth and without iniquity, just and right *is* he.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 45. 21. A just God and a Saviour: *there is* none beside me.

B. c. 630.] Zeph. 3. 5. The just Lord *is* in the midst thereof; he will not do iniquity: every morning doth he bring his judgment to light, he faileth not.

B. c. 595.] Jer. 50. 7. They have sinned against the Lord, the habitation of justice, even the Lord, the hope of their fathers.

B. c. 539.] Psa. 89. 14. Justice and judgment *are* the habitation of thy throne: mercy and truth shall go before thy face.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 1. 9. If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 15. 3. Just and true *are* thy ways, thou King of saints.

§ 41. *God is True.*

B. c. 1591.] Exod. 34. 6. And the Lord passed by before him, and proclaimed, the Lord, The Lord God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abundant in goodness and truth.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 32. 4. *He is* the Rock, his work *is* perfect; for all his ways *are* judgment: a God of truth, and without iniquity, just and right *is* he.

B. c. 1061.] Psa. 96. 13. He shall judge the world with righteousness, and the people with his truth.

B. c. 1060.] Psa. 31. 5. Thou hast redeemed me, O Lord God of truth,

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 86. 15. But thou, O Lord, *art* a God full of compassion, and gracious, longsuffering, and plenteous in mercy and truth.

Psa. 91. 4. His truth *shall be thy* shield and buckler.

B. c. 1004.] Psa. 100. 5. For the Lord *is* good; his mercy *is* everlasting, and his truth *endureth* to all generations.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 25. 1. *Thy* counsels of old *are* faithfulness *and* truth.

B. c. 570.] Dan. 4. 37. Now I Nebuchadnezzar praise and extol and honor the King of heaven, all whose works *are* truth.

B. c. 539.] Psa. 89. 14. Justice and judgment *are* the habitation of thy throne: mercy and truth shall go before thy face.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 15. 3. Just and true *are* thy ways, thou King of saints.

§ 42. *God is Faithful.*

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 17. 9. Know therefore that the Lord thy God, he *is* God, the faithful God, which keepeth covenant and mercy with them that love him and keep his commandments to a thousand generations.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 49. 7. The Lord that is faithful,

B. C. 588.] Lam. 3. 32. Great *is* thy faithfulness.

B. C. 539.] Psal. 36. 5. Thy mercy, O Lord, *is* in the heavens; *and* thy faithfulness *reacheth* unto the clouds.

B. C. 444.] Psal. 119. 90. Thy faithfulness *is* unto all generations.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 24. Faithful *is* he that calleth you, who also will do *it*.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 4. 19. Wherefore, let them that suffer according to the will of God commit the keeping of their souls to *him* in well doing, as unto a faithful Creator.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 10. 23. Let us hold fast the profession of *our* faith without wavering; for he *is* faithful that promised.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 1. 9. If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

§ 43. *God is Compassionate and Merciful.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 34. 6. And the Lord passed by before him, and proclaimed, The Lord, The Lord God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abundant in goodness and truth. ⁷ Keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin.

B. C. 1490.] Num. 14. 18. The Lord *is* longsuffering, and of great mercy, forgiving iniquity and transgression, and by no means clearing *the guilty*, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth *generation*.

B. C. 1034.] Psal. 103. 8. The Lord *is* merciful and gracious, slow to anger, and plenteous in mercy. ¹³ Like as a father pitieth *his* children, so the Lord pitieth them that fear him.

B. C. 1023.] Psal. 62. 12. Also unto thee, O Lord, belongeth mercy: for thou renderest to every man according to his work.

B. C. 1015.] Psal. 86. 15. But thou, O Lord, *art* a God full of compassion, and gracious, longsuffering, and plenteous in mercy and truth.

Psal. 145. 8. The Lord is gracious, and full of compassion; slow to anger, and of great mercy.

B. C. 862.] Jonah 4. 2. Thou *art* a gracious God, and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repentest thee of the evil.

B. C. 710.] Micah 7. 18. Who *is* a God like unto thee, that pardoneth iniquity, and passeth by the transgression of the remnant of his heritage? he retaineth not his anger for ever, because he delighteth *in* mercy.

B. C. 588.] Lam. 3. 22. *It is of* the Lord's mercies that we are not consumed, because his compassions fail not. ³² But though he cause grief, yet will he have compassion according to the multitude of his mercies.

B. c. 539.] Psa. 116. 5. Gracious *is* the Lord, and righteous; yea, our God *is* merciful.

B. c. 538.] Dan. 9. 9. To the Lord our God *belong* mercies, and forgiveness, though we have rebelled against him.

B. c. 445.] Neh. 9. 17. But thou *art* a God ready to pardon, gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and forsookest them not.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 1. 3. Blessed *be* God, even the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of mercies, and the God of all comfort.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 2. 4. God, who is rich in mercy.

James 5. 11. The Lord is very pitiful, and of tender mercy.

§ 44. *God is the Creator of all Things.*

B. c. 712.] Isa. 44. 24. Thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, and he that formed thee from the womb, I *am* the Lord that maketh all *things*; that stretcheth forth the heavens alone; that spreadeth abroad the earth by myself.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 3. 9. God, who created all things by Jesus Christ.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 3. 4. He that built all things *is* God.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 4. 11. Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.

§ 45. *God is the King, Governor, and Lawgiver of all.*

B. c. 1044.] Psa. 22. 28. For the kingdom *is* the Lord's: and he *is* the governor among the nations.

Psa. 45. 6. Thy throne, O God, *is* for ever and ever: the sceptre of thy kingdom *is* a right sceptre.

B. c. 1034.] Psa. 103. 19. The Lord hath prepared his throne in the heavens; and his kingdom ruleth over all.

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 95. 3. For the Lord *is* a great God, and a great king above all gods.

1 Chron. 29. 11. Thine, O Lord, *is* the greatness, and the power, and the glory, and the victory, and the majesty: for all *that is* in the heaven and in the earth *is thine*; thine *is* the kingdom, O Lord, and thou art exalted as head above all.

B. c. 1004.] Psa. 47. 2. For the Lord most high *is* terrible; *he is* a great King over all the earth. ⁷ For God *is* the King of all the earth: sing ye praise with understanding. ⁸ God reigneth over the heathen: God sitteth upon the throne of his holiness.

B. c. 713.] Isa. 33. 22. For the Lord *is* our judge, the Lord *is* our lawgiver, the Lord *is* our king; he will save us.

B. c. 710.] Isa. 37. 16. O Lord of hosts, God of Israel, that

dwellest *between* the cherubim, thou *art* the God, *even* thou alone, of all the kingdoms of the earth: thou hast made heaven and earth.

B. C. 607.] Jer. 10. 10. But the Lord *is* the true God, he *is* the living God, and an everlasting king: at his wrath the earth shall tremble, and the nations shall not be able to abide his indignation.

B. C. 570.] Dan. 4. 3. How great *are* his signs! and how mighty *are* his wonders! his kingdom *is* an everlasting kingdom, and his dominion *is* from generation to generation.

A. D. 61.] James 4. 12. There is one lawgiver, who is able to save and to destroy.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 6. 15. The blessed and only Potentate, the King of kings, and Lord of lords.

§ 46. *God is Judge.*

B. C. 1897.] Gen. 18. 25. Shall not the Judge of all the earth do right?

B. C. 1441.] Deut. 32. 36. The Lord shall judge his people.

B. C. 1165.] 1 Sam. 2. 10. The adversaries of the Lord shall be broken to pieces; out of heaven shall he thunder upon them: the Lord shall judge the ends of the earth.

B. C. 1063.] Psal. 9. 4. For thou hast maintained my right and my cause; thou satest in the throne judging right.

B. C. 1061.] Psal. 96. 13. He shall judge the world with righteousness, and the people with his truth.

B. C. 1058.] Psal. 58. 11. So that a man shall say, Verily *there* is a reward for the righteous: verily he is a God that judgeth in the earth.

B. C. 1045.] Psal. 68. 5. A father of the fatherless, and a judge of the widows, *is* God in his holy habitation.

B. C. 1023.] Psal. 7. 11. God judgeth the righteous, and God is angry *with the wicked* every day.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 12. 23. God the judge of all.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 4. 8. The Lord, the righteous judge.

§ 47. *God is Angry with the Wicked.*

B. C. 1520.] Job 21. 17. How oft is the candle of the wicked put out! and *how oft* cometh their destruction upon them! *God* distributeth sorrows in his anger.

B. C. 1451.] Num. 32. 14. And, behold, ye are risen up in your fathers' stead, an increase of sinful men, to augment yet the fierce anger of the Lord toward Israel.

Deut. 29. 19. And it come to pass, when he heareth the words of this curse, that he bless himself in his heart, saying, I shall have peace, though I walk in the imagination of mine heart, to add drunkenness to thirst: ²⁰The Lord will not

spare him, but then the anger of the Lord and his jealousy shall smoke against that man, and all the curses that are written in this book shall lie upon him, and the Lord shall blot out his name from under heaven. ²⁸ And the Lord rooted them out of their land in anger, and in wrath, and in great indignation, and cast them into another land, as *it is* this day.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 32. 21. They have moved me to jealousy with *that which is* not God: they have provoked me to anger with their vanities. •

B. c. 1023.] Psal. 7. 11. God judgeth the righteous, and God is angry *with the wicked* every day.

§ 48. *God will render Wrath, Indignation, and Fury against the Wicked.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 20. 23. *When* he is about to fill his belly, God shall cast the fury of his wrath upon him, and shall rain *it* upon him while he is eating.

B. c. 740.] Isa. 9. 19. Through the wrath of the Lord of hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire: no man shall spare his brother.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 59. 18. According to *their* deeds, accordingly he will repay, fury to his adversaries, recompense to his enemies; to the islands he will repay recompense.

B. c. 612.] Jer. 4. 4. Circumcise yourselves to the Lord, and take away the foreskins of your heart, ye men of Judah and inhabitants of Jerusalem; lest my fury come forth like fire, and burn that none can quench *it*, because of the evil of your doings.

Jer. 10. 10. But the Lord *is* the true God, he *is* the living God, and an everlasting king: at his wrath the earth shall tremble, and the nations shall not be able to abide his indignation.

B. c. 594.] Ezek. 5. 14. Moreover I will make thee waste, and a reproach among the nations that *are* round about thee, in the sight of all that pass by. ¹⁵ So it shall be a reproach and a taunt, an instruction and an astonishment unto the nations that *are* round about thee, when I shall execute judgments in thee in anger and in fury and in furious rebukes. I the Lord have spoken *it*.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 1. 18. For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hold the truth in unrighteousness.

Rom. 2. 8. But unto them that are contentious, and do not obey the truth, but obey unrighteousness, indignation and wrath.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 5. 6. Let no man deceive you with vain

words: for because of these things cometh the wrath of God upon the children of disobedience.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 6. For which things' sake the wrath of God cometh on the children of disobedience.

§ 49. *God will render Vengeance to his Enemies.*

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 32. 35. To me *belongeth* vengeance, and recompense; their foot shall slide in *due* time: for the day of their calamity *is* at hand, and the things that shall come upon them make haste.

B. C. 713.] Nah. 1. 2. God *is* jealous, and the Lord revengeth; the Lord revengeth, and *is* furious; the Lord will take vengeance on his adversaries, and he reserveth *wrath* for his enemies.

B. C. 588.] Psa. 94. 1. O Lord God, to whom vengeance belongeth; O God, to whom vengeance belongeth, show thyself.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 3. 5. But if our unrighteousness commend the righteousness of God, what shall we say? *Is* God unrighteous who taketh vengeance? I speak as a man.

Rom. 12. 19. Dearly beloved, avenge not yourselves, but *rather* give place unto wrath: for it is written, Vengeance *is* mine; I will repay, saith the Lord.

§ 50. *God is Longsuffering, Kind, and Gracious.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 22. 27. It shall come to pass, when he crieth unto me, that I will hear; for I *am* gracious.

Exod. 33. 19. And will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and will show mercy on whom I will show mercy.

Exod. 34. 6. And the Lord passed by before him, and proclaimed, The Lord, The Lord God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abundant in goodness and truth.

B. C. 1023.] Psa. 42. 8. *Yet* the Lord will command his lovingkindness in the daytime, and in the night his song *shall be* with me, *and* my prayer unto the God of my life.

B. C. 1015.] Psa. 86. 15. But thou, O Lord, *art* a God full of compassion, and gracious, longsuffering, and plenteous in mercy and truth.

B. C. 862.] Jonah 4. 2. And he prayed unto the Lord, and said, I pray thee, O Lord, *was* not this my saying, when I was yet in my country? Therefore I fled before unto Tarsish: for I knew that thou *art* a gracious God, and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repentest thee of the evil.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 54. 8. In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment; but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer. ¹⁰ For the

mountains shall depart, and the hills be removed: but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.

B. c. 690.] Joel 2. 13. And rend your heart, and not your garments, and turn unto the Lord your God: for he *is* gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repenteth him of the evil.

B. c. 610.] Jer. 9. 24. But let him that glorieth glory in this, that he understandeth and knoweth me, that I *am* the Lord which exercise lovingkindness, judgment, and righteousness, in the earth: for in these *things* I delight, saith the Lord.

Jer. 32. 18. Thou showest lovingkindness unto thousands, and recompensest the iniquity of the fathers into the bosom of their children after them.

A. D. 29.] Luke 6. 35. For he is kind unto the unthankful and to the evil.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 2. 4. Or despisest thou the riches of his goodness and forbearance and longsuffering; not knowing that the goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance.

Rom. 9. 22. *What* if God, willing to show *his* wrath, and to make his power known, endured with much longsuffering the vessels of wrath fitted to destruction: ²³ And that he might make known the riches of his glory on the vessels of mercy, which he had afore prepared unto glory.

A. D. 60.] 2 Pet. 3. 9. The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to usward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance?

A. D. 65.] Titus 3. 4. But after that the kindness and love of God our Saviour toward man appeared, ⁵ Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost.

§ 51. *God is the Redeemer.*

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 6. 6. Wherefore say unto the children of Israel, I *am* the Lord, and I will bring you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians, and I will rid you out of their bondage, and I will redeem you with a stretched out arm, and with great judgments.

Exod. 15. 13. Thou in thy mercy hast led forth the people *which* thou hast redeemed.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 21. 8. Be merciful, O Lord, unto thy people Israel, whom thou hast redeemed.

B. c. 1041.] Psal. 106. 10. And he saved them from the

hand of him that hated *them*, and redeemed them from the hand of the enemy.

B. c. 785.] Hos. 13. 14. I will ransom them from the power of the grave; I will redeem them from death: O death, I will be thy plagues; O grave, I will be thy destruction: repentance shall be hid from mine eyes.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 44. 23. The Lord hath redeemed Jacob, and glorified himself in Israel. ²⁴ Thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer.

Isa. 52. 3. For thus saith the Lord, Ye have sold yourselves for nought; and ye shall be redeemed without money.

§ 52. *God is the Deliverer.*

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 3. 7. And the Lord said, I have surely seen the affliction of my people which *are* in Egypt, and have heard their cry by reason of their taskmasters; for I know their sorrows. ⁸ And I am come down to deliver them out of the hand of the Egyptians, and to bring them up out of that land unto a good land and a large, unto a land flowing with milk and honey.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 23. 14. For the Lord thy God walketh in the midst of thy camp, to deliver thee, and to give up thine enemies before thee; therefore shall thy camp be holy: that he see no unclean thing in thee, and turn away from thee.

B. c. 1063.] 1 Sam. 17. 37. David said moreover, The Lord that delivered me out of the paw of the lion, and out of the paw of the bear, he will deliver me out of the hand of this Philistine. And Saul said unto David, Go, and the Lord be with thee.

B. c. 1060.] Psal. 56. 13. For thou hast delivered my soul from death: *wilt* not *thou deliver* my feet from falling, that I may walk before God in the light of the living?

B. c. 1044.] Psal. 22. 4. Our fathers trusted in thee: they trusted, and thou didst deliver them.

B. c. 1019.] Psal. 18. 2. The Lord *is* my rock, and my fortress, and my deliverer; my God, my strength, in whom I will trust; my buckler, and the horn of my salvation, and my high tower.

B. c. 713.] Isa. 33. 17. Thine eyes shall see the king in his beauty: they shall behold the land that is very far off.

B. c. 547.] Dan. 6. 27. He delivereth and rescueth, and he worketh signs and wonders in heaven and in earth, who hath delivered Daniel from the power of the lions.

A. d. 31.] Acts 7. 9. And the patriarchs, moved with envy, sold Joseph into Egypt: but God was with him, ¹⁰ And delivered him out of all his afflictions, and gave him favour and

wisdom in the sight of Pharaoh king of Egypt; and he made him governor over Egypt and all his house.

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 12. Giving thanks unto the Father, which hath made us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light: ¹³ Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated *us* into the kingdom of his dear Son.

§ 53. *God is the Saviour.*

B. C. 1041.] Psa. 106. 21. They forgot God their Saviour, which had done great things in Egypt.

B. C. 1036.] Psa. 20. 6. Now know I that the Lord saveth his anointed; he will hear him from his holy heaven with the saving strength of his right hand.

B. C. 1023.] Psa. 3. 8. Salvation *belongeth* unto the Lord: thy blessing *is* upon thy people.

Psa. 62. 7. In God *is* my salvation and my glory: the rock of my strength, *and* my refuge, *is* in God.

B. C. 713.] Isa. 12. 2. Behold, God *is* my salvation: I will trust, and not be afraid: for the Lord JEHOVAH *is* my strength and *my* song; he also is become my salvation.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 25. 9. And it shall be said in that day, Lo, this *is* our God; we have waited for him, and he will save us: this *is* the Lord; we have waited for him, we will be glad and rejoice in his salvation.

Isa. 35. 4. Say to them *that are* of a fearful heart, Be strong, fear not: behold, your God will come *with* vengeance, *even* God *with* a recompense; he will come and save you.

Isa. 43. 3. For I *am* the Lord thy God, the Holy One of Israel, thy Saviour: I gave Egypt *for* thy ransom, Ethiopia and Seba for thee. ¹¹ I, *even* I, am the Lord: and beside me *there is* no Saviour.

Isa. 49. 26. All flesh shall know that I the Lord *am* thy Saviour and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

B. C. 4.] Luke 1. 47. And my spirit hath rejoiced in God my Saviour.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 2. 3. For this *is* good and acceptable in the sight of God our Saviour; ⁴ Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth.

1 Tim. 4. 10. For therefore we both labour and suffer reproach, because we trust in the living God, who is the Saviour of all men, especially of those that believe.

Jude 25. To the only wise God our Saviour, *be* glory and majesty, dominion and power, both now and ever. Amen.

§ 54. *God Defends the Righteous.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 22. 25. Yea, the Almighty shall be thy defence.

B. c. 1061.] Psal. 59. 1. Deliver me from mine enemies, O my God: defend me from them that rise up against me.
⁹ *Because of his strength will I wait upon thee: for God is my defence.* ¹⁶ But I will sing of thy power; yea; I will sing aloud of thy mercy in the morning: for thou hast been my defence and refuge in the day of my trouble.

B. c. 1060.] Psal. 31. 2. Bow down thine ear to me: deliver me speedily: be thou my strong rock, for a house of defence to save me.

B. c. 1036.] Psal. 20. 1. The Lord hear thee in the day of trouble: the name of the God of Jacob defend thee;

B. c. 1023.] Psal. 5. 11. But let all those that put their trust in thee rejoice: let them ever shout for joy, because thou defendest them: let them also that love thy name be joyful in thee.

Psal. 7. 10. My defence *is* of God, which saveth the upright in heart.

B. c. 713.] Isa. 31. 5. As birds flying, so will the Lord of hosts defend Jerusalem; defending also he will deliver *it*; and passing over he will preserve it.

Isa. 33. 15. He that walketh righteously, and speaketh uprightly; he that despiseth the gain of oppressions, that shaketh his hands from holding of bribes, that stoppeth his ears from hearing of blood, and shutteth his eyes from seeing evil; ¹⁶ He shall dwell on high; his place of defence *shall be* the munitions of rocks: bread shall be given him; his waters *shall be* sure.

Zech. 12. 8. In that day shall the Lord defend the inhabitants of Jerusalem; and he that is feeble among them at that day shall be as David; and the house of David *shall be* as God, as the angel of the Lord before them.

§ 55. *God Upholds the Righteous.*

B. c. 1060.] Psal. 17. 5. Hold up my goings in thy paths, *that* my footsteps slip not.

B. c. 1058.] Psal. 63. 8. My soul followeth hard after thee: thy right hand upholdeth me.

B. c. 1044.] Psal. 51. 12. Restore unto me the joy of thy salvation; and uphold me *with thy* free Spirit.

B. c. 1015.] Psal. 145. 14. The Lord upholdeth all that fall, and raiseth up all *those that be* bowed down.

B. c. 539.] Psal. 37. 17. For the arms of the wicked shall be broken: but the Lord upholdeth the righteous. ²⁴ Though

he fall, he shall not be utterly cast down: for the Lord upholdeth *him with* his hand.

B. c. 535.] Psa. 66. 8. Oh bless our God, ye people, and make the voice of his praise to be heard: ⁹ Which holdeth our soul in life, and suffereth not our feet to be moved.

B. c. 444.] Psa. 119. 116. Uphold me according unto thy word, that I may live: and let me not be ashamed of my hope. ¹¹⁷ Hold thou me up, and I shall be safe: and I will have respect unto thy statutes continually.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 14. 4. Who art thou that judgest another man's servant? to his own master he standeth or falleth; yea, he shall be holden up: for God is able to make him stand.

§ 56. *God Helps the Righteous.*

B. c. 1689.] Gen. 49. 25. *Even* by the God of thy father, who shall help thee; and by the Almighty, who shall bless thee with blessings of heaven.

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 18. 4. For the God of my father; *said he*, was mine help, and delivered me from the sword of Pharaoh.

B. c. 1120.] 1 Sam. 7. 12. Then Samuel took a stone, and set *it* between Mizpeh and Shen, and called the name of it Eben-ezer, saying, Hitherto hath the Lord helped us.

B. c. 1058.] 1 Chron. 12. 18. Then the Spirit came upon Amasai, *who was* chief of the captains, and *he said*, Thine are we, David, and on thy side, thou son of Jesse: peace, peace be unto thee, and peace *be* to thine helpers; for thy God helpeth thee. Then David received them, and made them captains of the band.

Psa. 63. 7. Because thou hast been my help, therefore in the shadow of thy wings will I rejoice.

B. c. 1044.] Psa. 118. 7. The Lord taketh my part with them that help me: therefore shall I see *my desire* upon them that hate me.

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 28. 7. The Lord *is* my strength and my shield; my heart trusted in him, and I am helped: therefore my heart greatly rejoiceth; and with my song will I praise him.

Psa. 72. 12. For he shall deliver the needy when he crieth; the poor also, and *him* that hath no helper.

Psa. 121. 1. I will lift up mine eyes unto the hills, from whence cometh my help. ² My help *cometh* from the Lord, which made heaven and earth.

Psa. 124. 8. Our help *is* in the name of the Lord, who made heaven and earth.

B. c. 896.] Psa. 115. 9. O Israel, trust thou in the Lord: he *is* their help and their shield.

B. c. 880.] Psa. 46. 1. God *is* our refuge and strength, a

very present help in trouble. ⁵ God *is* in the midst of her; she shall not be moved: God shall help her, *and that* right early.

B. c. 725.] Hosea 13. 9. O Israel, thou hast destroyed thyself: but in me *is* thy help.

B. c. 713.] 2 Chron. 32. 7. Be strong and courageous, be not afraid nor dismayed for the king of Assyria, nor for all the multitude that *is* with him: for *there be* more with us than with him. ⁸ With him *is* an arm of flesh; but with us *is* the Lord our God to help us, and to fight our battles. And the people rested themselves upon the words of Hezekiah king of Judah.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 41. 10. Fear thou not; for I *am* with thee: be not dismayed; for I *am* thy God: I will strengthen thee; yea, I will help thee; yea, I will uphold thee with the right hand of my righteousness. ¹³ For I the Lord thy God will hold thy right hand, saying unto thee, Fear not; I will help thee.

B. c. 539.] Psal. 10. 14. Thou hast seen *it*; for thou beholdest mischief and spite, to requite *it* with thy hand: the poor committeth himself unto thee; thou art the helper of the fatherless.

Psal. 27. 9. Hide not thy face *far* from me; put not thy servant away in anger: thou hast been my help; leave me not, neither forsake me, O God of my salvation.

Psal. 37. 39. But the salvation of the righteous *is* of the Lord: *he is* their strength in the time of trouble. ⁴⁰ And the Lord shall help them, and deliver them: he shall deliver them from the wicked, and save them, because they trust in him.

B. c. 536.] Psal. 116. 6. The Lord preserveth the simple: I was brought low, and he helped me.

B. c. 515.] Psal. 146. 5. Happy *is he* that *hath* the God of Jacob for his help, whose hope is in the Lord his God.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 4. 16. Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need.

Heb. 13. 6. So that we may boldly say, The Lord *is* my helper, and I will not fear what man shall do unto me.

§ 57. God Keeps the Righteous.

B. c. 1779.] Gen. 28. 15. And, behold, I *am* with thee, and will keep thee in all *places* whither thou goest, and will bring thee again into this land; for I will not leave thee, until I have done *that* which I have spoken to thee of.

B. c. 1520.] Job 33. 18. He keepeth back his soul from the pit, and his life from perishing by the sword.

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 23. 20. Behold, I send an Angel before thee, to keep thee in the way, and to bring thee into the place which I have prepared.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 32. 10. He found him in a desert land, and in the waste howling wilderness; he led him about, he instructed him, he kept him as the apple of his eye.

B. c. 1444.] Josh. 14. 10. And now, behold, the Lord hath kept me alive, as he said, these forty and five years, even since the Lord spake this word unto Moses, while *the children of Israel* wandered in the wilderness: and now, lo, *I am* this day fourscore and five years old.

B. c. 1175.] 1 Sam. 2. 9. He will keep the feet of his saints, and the wicked shall be silent in darkness; for by strength shall no man prevail.

B. c. 1060.] Psal. 17. 8. Keep me as the apple of the eye; hide me under the shadow of thy wings.

Psal. 140. 4. Keep me, O Lord, from the hands of the wicked; preserve me from the violent man; who have purposed to overthrow my goings.

B. c. 1055.] Psal. 141. 3. Set a watch, O Lord, before my mouth; keep the door of my lips.

B. c. 1034.] Psal. 33. 18. Behold, the eye of the Lord *is* upon them that fear him, upon them that hope in his mercy; ¹⁹ To deliver their soul from death, and to keep them alive in famine.

B. c. 1017.] Psal. 30. 3. O Lord, thou hast brought up my soul from the grave: thou hast kept me alive, that I should not go down to the pit.

B. c. 1015.] Psal. 12. 7. Thou shalt keep them, O Lord, thou shalt preserve them from this generation for ever.

Psal. 91. 11. For he shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways.

Psal. 121. 3. He will not suffer thy foot to be moved: he that keepeth thee will not slumber. ⁴ Behold, he that keepeth Israel shall neither slumber nor sleep. ⁵ The Lord *is* thy keeper: the Lord *is* thy shade upon thy right hand.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 3. 25. Be not afraid of sudden fear, neither of the desolation of the wicked, when it cometh. ²⁶ For the Lord shall be thy confidence, and shall keep thy foot from being taken.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 26. 3. Thou wilt keep *him* in perfect peace, *whose mind is stayed on thee*: because he trusteth in thee.

Isa. 27. 3. I the Lord *do* keep it; I will water it every moment: lest *any* hurt it, I will keep it night and day.

A. D. 29.] John 17. 11. Holy Father, keep through thine own name those whom thou hast given me, that they may be one, as we are. ¹⁵ I pray not that thou shouldest take them out of the world, but that thou shouldest keep them from the evil.

A. D. 52.] 2 Thess. 3. 3. But the Lord is faithful, who shall establish you, and keep *you* from evil.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 1. 5. Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.

1 Pet. 4. 19. Wherefore, let them that suffer according to the will of God commit the keeping of their souls *to him* in well doing, as unto a faithful Creator.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 1. 12. For I know whom I have believed, and am persuaded that he is able to keep that which I have committed unto him against that day.

Jude 24. Now unto him that is able to keep you from falling, and to present *you* faultless before the presence of his glory with exceeding joy, ²⁶ To the only wise God our Saviour, *be* glory and majesty, dominion and power, both now and ever. Amen.

§ 58. *God Preserves the Righteous.*

B. C. 1707.] Gen. 45. 7. And God sent me before you to preserve you a posterity in the earth, and to save your lives by a great deliverance.

B. C. 1520.] Job 7. 20. I have sinned; what shall I do unto thee, O thou preserver of men?

Job 10. 12. Thou hast granted me life and favour, and thy visitation hath preserved my spirit.

Job 29. 2. Oh that I were as in months past, as *in* the days *when* God preserved me.

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 6. 24. And the Lord commanded us to do all these statutes, to fear the Lord our God, for our good always, that he might preserve us alive, as *it is* at this day.

B. C. 1443.] Josh. 24. 17. For the Lord our God, he *it is* that brought us up and our fathers out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage, and which did those great signs in our sight, and preserved us in all the way wherein we went, and among all the people through whom we passed.

B. C. 1060.] Psa. 31. 23. Oh love the Lord, all ye his saints: for the Lord preserveth the faithful, and plentifully rewardeth the proud doer.

Psa. 64. 1. Hear my voice, O God, in my prayer: preserve my life from fear of the enemy.

B. C. 1044.] Psa. 16. 1. Preserve me, O God: for in thee do I put my trust.

B. C. 1040.] 2 Sam. 8. 6. And the Lord preserved David whithersoever he went.

B. C. 1034.] Psa. 32. 7. Thou *art* my hiding place; thou shalt preserve me from trouble; thou shalt compass me about with songs of deliverance.

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 41. 2. The Lord will preserve him, and keep him alive.

Psa. 86. 2. Preserve my soul; for I *am* holy: O thou my God, save thy servant that trusteth in thee.

Psa. 121. 7. The Lord shall preserve thee from all evil: he shall preserve thy soul.

Psa. 145. 20. The Lord preserveth all them that love him: but all the wicked will he destroy.

B. c. 1004.] Psa. 97. 10. Ye that love the Lord, hate evil: he preserveth the souls of his saints; he delivereth them out of the hand of the wicked.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 2. 8. He keepeth the paths of judgment, and preserveth the way of his saints.

B. c. 539.] Psa. 36. 6. O Lord, thou preservest man and beast.

Psa. 37. 28. For the Lord loveth judgment, and forsaketh not his saints; they are preserved forever.

B. c. 536.] Psa. 116. 6. The Lord preserveth the simple: I was brought low, and he helped me.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 23. And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and *I pray God* your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

§ 59. *God Leads and Teaches the Righteous.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 34. 32. *That which* I see not teach thou me: if I have done iniquity, I will do no more.

Job 35. 11. Who teacheth us more than the beasts of the earth, and maketh us wiser than the fowls of heaven?

Job 36. 22. Behold, God exalteth by his power: who teacheth like him?

B. c. 1489.] Psa. 90. 12. So teach *us* to number our days, that we may apply *our* hearts unto wisdom.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 32. 12. *So* the Lord alone did lead him, and *there was* no strange god with him.

B. c. 1060.] Psa. 31. 3. For thy name's sake lead me, and guide me.

B. c. 1048.] Psa. 139. 24. Lead me in the way everlasting.

B. c. 1044.] Psa. 16. 7. I will bless the Lord, who hath given me counsel: my reins also instruct me in the night seasons.

B. c. 1034.] Psa. 32. 8. I will instruct thee and teach thee in the way which thou shalt go: I will guide thee with mine eye.

B. c. 1023.] Psa. 5. 8. Lead me, O Lord, in thy righteousness because of mine enemies; make thy way straight before my face.

B. c. 1023.] Psal. 43. 3. Oh send out thy light and thy truth: let them lead me; let them bring me unto thy holy hill, and to thy tabernacles.

Psal. 71. 17. O God, thou hast taught me from my youth: and hitherto have I declared thy wondrous works.

Psal. 143. 10. Teach me to do thy will; for thou *art* my God: thy Spirit *is* good; lead me into the land of uprightness.

B. c. 1015.] Psal. 23. 2. He leadeth me beside the still waters. ^a He leadeth me in the paths of righteousness for his name's sake.

Psal. 61. 2. From the end of the earth will I cry unto thee, when my heart is overwhelmed: lead me to the rock *that* is higher than I.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 3. 5. Trust in the Lord with all thine heart; and lean not unto thine own understanding. ^e In all thy ways acknowledge him, and he shall direct thy paths.

B. c. 741.] Isa. 8. 11. For the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people.

B. c. 713.] Isa. 30. 21. And thine ears shall hear a word behind thee, saying, This *is* the way, walk ye in it, when ye turn to the right hand, and when ye turn to the left.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 42. 16. And I will bring the blind by a way *that* they knew not; I will lead them in paths *that* they have not known: I will make darkness light before them, and crooked things straight. These things will I do unto them, and not forsake them.

Isa. 48. 17. Thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I *am* the Lord thy God which teacheth thee to profit, which leadeth thee by the way *that* thou shouldest go.

Isa. 61. 8. For I the Lord love judgment, I hate robbery for burnt offering; and I will direct their work in truth, and I will make an everlasting covenant with them.

B. c. 710.] Psal. 73. 24. Thou shalt guide me with thy counsel, and afterward receive me *to* glory.

B. c. 539.] Psal. 37. 23. The steps of a *good* man are ordered by the Lord: and he delighteth in his way.

B. c. 515.] Psal. 48. 14. For this God *is* our God for ever and ever: he will be our guide *even* unto death.

§ 60. *God Favours and Blesses the Righteous.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 10. 12. Thou hast granted me life and favour, and thy visitation hath preserved my spirit.

Job 33. 26. He shall pray unto God, and he will be favourable unto him: and he shall see his face with joy; for he will render unto man his righteousness.

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 20. 24. In all places where I record my name I will come unto thee, and I will bless thee.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 26. 15. Look down from thy holy habitation, from heaven, and bless thy people Israel, and the land which thou hast given us, as thou swarest unto our fathers, a land that floweth with milk and honey.

B. c. 1023.] Psal. 3. 8. Thy blessing *is* upon thy people.

Psal. 5. 12. For thou, Lord, wilt bless the righteous; with favour wilt thou compass him as *with* a shield.

B. c. 1017.] Psal. 30. 5. In his favour is life. ⁷ Lord, by thy favour thou hast made my mountain to stand strong.

B. c. 1015.] Psal. 29. 11. The Lord will give strength unto his people; the Lord will bless his people with peace.

Psal. 41. 11. By this I know that thou favourest me, because mine enemy doth not triumph over me.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 3. 3. Let not mercy and truth forsake thee: bind them about thy neck; write them upon the table of thine heart: ⁴ So shalt thou find favour and good understanding in the sight of God and man. ³³ The curse of the Lord *is* in the house of the wicked: but he blesseth the habitation of the just.

Prov. 8. 35. For whoso findeth me findeth life, and shall obtain favour of the Lord.

Prov. 12. 2. A good *man* obtaineth favour of the Lord: but a man of wicked devices will he condemn.

B. c. 720.] Psal. 44. 3. For they got not the land in possession by their own sword, neither did their own arm save them: but thy right hand, and thine arm, and the light of thy countenance, because thou hadst a favour unto them.

B. c. 593.] Psal. 67. 1. God be merciful unto us, and bless us; *and* cause his face to shine upon us.

B. c. 539.] Psal. 89. 17. For thou *art* the glory of their strength: and in thy favour our horn shall be exalted.

B. c. 536.] Psal. 85. 1. Lord, thou hast been favourable unto thy land: thou hast brought back the captivity of Jacob.

B. c. 5.] Luke 1. 28. And the angel came in unto her, and said, Hail, *thou that art* highly favoured, the Lord *is* with thee: blessed *art* thou among women. ³⁰ And the angel said unto her, Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God.

§ 61. *God is the Refuge and Strength of the Righteous.*

B. c. 1015.] Psal. 28. 7. The Lord *is* my strength and my shield; my heart trusted in him, and I am helped: therefore my heart greatly rejoiceth; and with my song will I praise him. ⁸ The Lord *is* their strength, and he *is* the saving strength of his anointed.

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 29. 11. The Lord will give strength unto his people; the Lord will bless his people with peace.

B. c. 890.] Psa. 46. 1. God *is* our refuge and strength, a very present help in trouble. ⁷ The Lord of hosts *is* with us; the God of Jacob *is* our refuge.

B. c. 539.] Psa. 27. 1. The Lord *is* my light and my salvation; whom shall I fear? the Lord *is* the strength of my life: of whom shall I be afraid? ² When the wicked, *even* mine enemies and my foes, came upon me to eat up my flesh, they stumbled and fell. ³ Though a host should encamp against me, my heart shall not fear: though war should rise against me, in this *will* I *be* confident. ¹⁴ Wait on the Lord: be of good courage, and he shall strengthen thine heart: wait, I say, on the Lord.

§ 62. *God is the Father of the Righteous.*

B. c. 712.] Isa. 63. 16. Doubtless thou *art* our Father, though Abraham be ignorant of us, and Israel acknowledge us not: thou, O Lord, *art* our Father, our Redeemer; thy name *is* from everlasting.

Isa. 64. 8. But now, O Lord, thou *art* our Father; we *are* the clay, and thou our potter; and we all *are* the work of thy hand.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 16. Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven. ⁴⁴ But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you; ⁴⁵ That ye may be the children of your Father which is in heaven: for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust.

Matt. 6. 4. That thine alms may be in secret: and thy Father, which seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.

⁶ But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father which is in secret; and thy Father which seeth in secret shall reward thee openly.

⁷ But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen *do*: for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking. ⁸ Be not ye therefore like unto them: for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of, before ye ask him.

⁹ Our Father which art in heaven. ¹⁴ For if ye forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you:

¹⁵ But if ye forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

Matt. 10. 29. Are not two sparrows sold for a farthing? and one of them shall not fall on the ground without your Father.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 13. 43. Then shall the righteous shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father. Who hath ears to hear, let him hear.

Matt. 18. 14. Even so it is not the will of your Father which is in heaven, that one of these little ones should perish.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 23. 9. And call no *man* your father upon the earth: for one is your Father, which is in heaven.

Luke 12. 32. Fear not, little flock; for it is your Father's good pleasure to give you the kingdom.

John 20. 17. Jesus said unto her, Touch me not; for I am not yet ascended to my Father: but go to my brethren, and say unto them, I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and to my God, and your God.

A. D. 52.] 2 Thess. 2. 16. God, even our Father, which hath loved us, and hath given *us* everlasting consolation and good hope through grace.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 8. 6. But to us *there is but* one God, the Father, of whom *are* all things, and we in him: and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom *are* all things, and we by him.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 6. 18. And will be a Father unto you, and ye shall be my sons and daughters, saith the Lord Almighty.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 1. 7. Grace to you, and peace, from God our Father.

Rom. 8. 15. For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 4. 6. One God and Father of all, who *is* above all, and through all, and in you all.

§ 63. *God is Love.*

A. D. 69.] 1 John 4. 8. He that loveth not, knoweth not God; for God is love. ¹⁶ And we have known and believed the love that God hath to us. God is love; and he that dwelleth in love dwelleth in God, and God in him. ¹⁷ Herein is our love made perfect, that we may have boldness in the day of judgment: because as he is, so are we in this world.

§ 64. *Our Existence is in God.*

A. D. 54.] Act 17. 28. In him we live, and move, and have our being.

§ 65. *God is the God and Father of Jesus Christ.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 27. 46. And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani?

that is to say, My God, My God, why hast thou forsaken me?

A. D. 29.] John 20. 17. I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and *to* my God, and your God.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 1. 3. Blessed *be* the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly *places* in Christ. ¹⁷ That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him.

CHAPTER II.

JESUS CHRIST.

§ 66. *A Blessing Promised to all the Families of the Earth.*

B. c. 1921.] Gen. 12. 1. Now the Lord said unto Abram, Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father's house, unto a land that I will show thee : ² And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee and make thy name great; and thou shalt be a blessing: ³ And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed.

B. c. 1897.] Gen. 18. 18. Seeing that Abraham shall surely become a great and mighty nation, and all the nations of the earth shall be blessed in him.

B. c. 1863.] Gen. 22. 18. And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

§ 67. *A Prophet like unto Moses Promised.*

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 18. 15. The Lord thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken : ¹⁶ According to all that thou desiredst of the Lord thy God in Horeb in the day of the assembly, saying, Let me not hear again the voice of the Lord my God, neither let me see this great fire any more, that I die not. ¹⁷ And the Lord said unto me, They have well *spoken that* which they have spoken. ¹⁸ I will raise them up a Prophet from among their brethren, like unto thee, and will put my words in his mouth; and he shall speak unto them all that I shall command him. ¹⁹ And it shall come to pass, *that* whosoever will not hearken unto my words which he shall speak in my name, I will require *it* of him.

§ 68. *The Promises of a Blessing and Prophet, Fulfilled in Jesus Christ.*

A. D. 29.] Acts 3. 19. Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord; ²⁰ And he shall send Jesus Christ, which before was preached unto

you, ²¹ Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which God hath spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began. ²² For Moses truly said unto the fathers, A Prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. ²³ And it shall come to pass, *that* every soul, which will not hear that Prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people. ²⁴ Yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have likewise foretold of these days. ²⁵ Ye are the children of the prophets, and of the covenant which God made with our fathers, saying unto Abraham, And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed. ²⁶ Unto you first, God having raised up his Son Jesus, sent him to bless you, in turning away every one of you from his iniquities.

§ 69. *He was Before Abraham.*

A. D. 29.] John 8. 57. Then said the Jews unto him, Thou art not yet fifty years old, and hast thou seen Abraham? ⁵⁸ Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I am.

§ 70. *He was with God in the Beginning before the World was.*

B. C. 710.] Micah 5. 2. But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, *though* thou be little among the thousands of Judah, *yet* out of thee shall he come forth unto me *that is* to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth *have been* from of old, from everlasting.

A. D. 29.] John 1. 1. In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. ² The same was in the beginning with God.

John 17. 5. And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine ownself with the glory which I had with thee before the world was.

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 17. And he is before all things, and by him all things consist.

§ 71. *He is the Firstborn and the Beginning of the Creation of God.*

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 15. Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature,

A. D. 96.] Rev. 3. 14. And unto the angel of the church of the Laodiceans write; These things saith the Amen, the

faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation of God.

§ 72. *He is the First and the Last.*

A. D. 96.] Rev. 1. 10. I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and heard behind me a great voice, as of a trumpet, ¹¹ Saying, I am Alpha and Omega, the first and the last: and, What thou seest write in a book, and send *it* unto the seven churches which are in Asia; unto Ephesus, and unto Smyrna, and unto Pergamos, and unto Thyatira, and unto Sardis, and unto Philadelphia, and unto Laodicea. ¹² And I turned to see the voice that spake with me. And being turned, I saw seven golden candlesticks; ¹³ And in the midst of the seven candlesticks *one* like unto the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle. ¹⁷ And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last: ¹⁸ *I am* he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death.

Rev. 2. 8. And unto the angel of the church in Smyrna write; These things saith the first and the last, which was dead, and is alive.

Rev. 22. 13. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last. ¹⁶ I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, *and* the bright and morning star.

§ 73. *He is the Word of God, and the Word was made flesh.*

A. D. 29.] John 1. 1. In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. ¹⁴ And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth. ¹⁵ John bare witness of him, and cried saying, This was he of whom I spake, He that cometh after me is preferred before me; for he was before me. ¹⁶ And of his fulness have all we received, and grace for grace. ¹⁷ For the law was given by Moses, *but* grace and truth came by Jesus Christ.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 1. 1. That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life; ² For the life was manifested, and we have seen *it*, and bear witness, and show unto you that eter-

nal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us; ³ That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, that ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship *is* with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.

§ 74. *He was in the Form of God, but was made in the Likeness of Men.*

B. C. 4.] John 1. 14. And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only-begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 4. 4. But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 8. 3. For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh.

A. D. 62.] Phil. 2. 6. Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: ⁷ But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: ⁸ And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 2. 14. Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil; ¹⁵ And deliver them, who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage. ¹⁶ For verily he took not on *him* the nature of angels; but he took on *him* the seed of Abraham.

§ 75. *He was Begotten of the Holy Ghost and Born of a Virgin.*

B. C. 742.] Isa. 7. 14. Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

B. C. 5.] Luke 1. 26. And in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God unto a city of Galilee, named Nazareth, ²⁷ To a virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph, of the house of David: and the virgin's name *was* Mary. ²⁸ And the angel came in unto her, and said, Hail, *thou that art* highly favoured, the Lord *is* with thee: blessed *art* thou among women. ²⁹ And when she saw *him*, she was troubled at his saying, and cast in her mind what manner of salutation this should be. ³⁰ And the angel said unto her, Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God. ³¹ And, behold,

thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name JESUS. ³² He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest; and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David: ³³ And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end. ³⁴ Then said Mary unto the angel, How shall this be, seeing I know not a man? ³⁵ And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.

B. C. 5.] Matt. 1. 18. Now the birth of Jesus Christ was on this wise: When as his mother Mary was espoused to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Ghost. ¹⁹ Then Joseph her husband, being a just *man*, and not willing to make her a public example, was minded to put her away privily. ²⁰ But while he thought on these things, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a dream, saying, Joseph, thou son of David, fear not to take unto thee Mary thy wife: for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Ghost. ²¹ And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name JESUS: for he shall save his people from their sins. ²² Now all this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet saying, ²³ Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us. ²⁴ Then Joseph being raised from sleep did as the angel of the Lord had bidden him, and took unto him his wife: ²⁵ And knew her not till she had brought forth her firstborn son: and he called his name JESUS.

B. C. 4.] Luke 2. 4. And Joseph also went up from Galilee, out of the city of Nazareth, into Judea, unto the city of David, which is called Bethlehem, (because he was of the house and lineage of David,) ⁵ To be taxed with Mary his espoused wife, being great with child. ⁶ And so it was, that, while they were there, the days were accomplished that she should be delivered. ⁷ And she brought forth her first-born son, and wrapped him in swaddling clothes, and laid him in a manger; because there was no room for them in the inn,

§ 76. *God Declares Him his Son.*

B. C. 1044.] Psal. 2. 7. I will declare the decree: the Lord hath said unto me, Thou *art* my Son; this day have I begotten thee.

A. D. 45.] Acts 13. 32. And we declare unto you glad tidings, how that the promise which was made unto the fathers, ³³ God has fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he

hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the second psalm, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 3. 17. And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Matt. 17. 5. While he yet spake, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them: and behold a voice out of the cloud, which said, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased: hear ye him.

A. D. 60.] 2 Pet. 1. 16. For we have not followed cunningly devised fables, when we made known unto you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, but were eyewitnesses of his majesty. ¹⁷ For he received from God the Father honour and glory, when there came such a voice to him from the excellent glory: This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. ¹⁸ And this voice which came from heaven we heard, when we were with him in the holy mount.

§ 77. *He Declares Himself the Son of God.*

A. D. 27.] John 5. 17. But Jesus answered them, My Father worketh hitherto, and I work. ¹⁸ Therefore the Jews sought the more to kill him, because he not only had broken the sabbath, but said also that God was his Father, making himself equal with God.

John 9. 35. Jesus heard that they had cast him out; and when he had found him, he said unto him, Dost thou believe on the Son of God? ³⁶ He answered and said, Who is he, Lord, that I might believe on him? ³⁷ And Jesus said unto him, Thou hast both seen him, and it is he that talketh with thee.

A. D. 27.] John 10. 36. Say ye of him, whom the Father hath sanctified, and sent into the world, Thou blasphemest; because I said, I am the Son of God?

A. D. 29.] Luke 22. 70. Then said they all, Art thou then the Son of God? And he said unto them, Ye say that I am. ⁷¹ And they said, What need we any further witness? for we ourselves have heard of his own mouth.

§ 78. *John the Baptist Declares Him the Son of God.*

A. D. 27.] John 1. 29. The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world! ³⁰ This is he of whom I said, After me cometh a man which is preferred before me; for he was before me. ³¹ And I knew him not: but that he should be made manifest to Israel, therefore am I come baptizing with water. ³² And John bare record, saying, I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon him. ³³ And I knew him not; but he that sent me to baptize with

water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost. ³⁴ And I saw, and bare record that this is the Son of God. ³⁵ Again the next day after, John stood, and two of his disciples; ³⁶ And looking upon Jesus as he walked, he saith, Behold the Lamb of God!

§ 79. *The Apostles and others declare Him the Son of God.*

A. D. 26.] Mark 1. 1. The beginning of the gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

John 1. 49. Nathanael answered and saith unto him, Rabbi, thou art the Son of God; thou art the King of Israel.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 14. 33. Then they that were in the ship came and worshipped him, saying, Of a truth thou art the Son of God.

Matt. 16. 15. He saith unto them, But whom say ye that I am? ¹⁶ And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

A. D. 29.] John 20. 30. And many other signs truly did Jesus in the presence of his disciples, which are not written in this book: ³¹ But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

A. D. 33.] Acts 9. 19. Then was Saul certain days with the disciples which were at Damascus. ²⁰ And straightway he preached Christ in the synagogues, that he is the Son of God.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 1. 3. Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was made of the seed of David according to the flesh; ⁴ And declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the Spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 4. 14. Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast *our* profession.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 4. 15. Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God.

§ 80. *Devils declare Him the Son of God.*

A. D. 27.] Mark 1. 23. And there was in their synagogue a man with an unclean spirit; and he cried out, ²⁴ Saying, Let us alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? Art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art, the Holy One of God. ²⁵ And Jesus rebuked him, saying, Hold thy peace, and come out of him.

Mark 3. 11. And unclean spirits, when they saw him, fell down before him, and cried, saying, Thou art the Son of God.

A. D. 27.] Luke 4. 41. And devils also came out of many, crying out, and saying, Thou art Christ the Son of God. And he rebuking *them* suffered them not to speak: for they knew that he was Christ.

A. D. 28.] Luke 8. 28. When he saw Jesus, he cried out, and fell down before him, and with a loud voice said, What have I to do with thee, Jesus, *thou* Son of God most high? I beseech thee, torment me not.

§ 81. *He is the Only Begotten Son of God.*

B. C. 4.] John 1. 14. And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth. ¹⁸No man hath seen God at any time; the only begotten son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared *him*.

A. D. 27.] John 3. 16. For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. ¹⁸He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 4. 9. In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him.

§ 82. *He is the Son of Man.**

A. D. 27.] Matt. 8. 20. And Jesus saith unto him, The foxes have holes, and the birds of the air *have* nests; but the Son of man hath not where to lay *his* head.

Matt. 9. 6. But that ye may know that the Son of man hath power on earth to forgive sins, (then saith he to the sick of the palsy,) Arise, take up thy bed, and go unto thine house.

Matt. 13. 37. He that soweth the good seed is the Son of man.

Matt. 16. 13. When Jesus came into the coasts of Cesarea Philippi, he asked his disciples, saying, Whom do men say that I, the Son of man, am?

§ 83. *He was born in Bethlehem.*

B. C. 710.] Mic. 5. 2. But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, *though* thou be little among the thousands of Judah, *yet* out of thee shall he come forth unto me *that* is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth *have been* from of old, from everlasting.

B. C. 4.] Matt. 2. 1. Now when Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, behold, there came wise men from the east to Jerusalem, ²Saying, Where is he

* He is called the Son of man more than sixty times.

that is born King of the Jews? for we have seen his star in the east, and are come to worship him. ³ When Herod the king had heard *these things*, he was troubled, and all Jerusalem with him. ⁴ And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born. ⁵ And they said unto him, In Bethlehem of Judea: for thus it is written by the prophet, ⁶ And thou Bethlehem, *in the land of Judah*, art not the least among the princes of Judah: for out of thee shall come a Governor, that shall rule my people Israel.

§ 84. *He grew in Stature and Wisdom, and in Favour with God and Man.*

A. D. 8.] Luke 2. 40. And the child grew, and waxed strong in spirit, filled with wisdom; and the grace of God was upon him. ⁶² And Jesus increased in wisdom and stature, and in favour with God and man.

§ 85. *He was Circumcised and Baptized.*

B. C. 4.] Luke 2. 21. And when eight days were accomplished for the circumcising of the child, his name was called JESUS, which was so named of the angel before he was conceived in the womb.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 3. 13. Then cometh Jesus from Galilee to Jordan unto John, to be baptized of him. ¹⁴ But John forbade him, saying, I have need to be baptized of thee, and comest thou to me? ¹⁵ And Jesus answering said unto him, Suffer *it to be so* now: for thus it becometh us to fulfil all righteousness. Then he suffered him. ¹⁶ And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water.

§ 86. *He was Tempted.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 4. 1. Then was Jesus led up of the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil. ² And when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, he was afterward a hungered. ³ And when the tempter came to him, he said, If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread. ⁴ But he answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God. ⁵ Then the devil taketh him up into the holy city, and setteth him on a pinnacle of the temple; ⁶ And saith unto him, If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down: for it is written, He shall give his angels charge concerning thee: and in *their* hands they shall bear thee up, lest at any time thou dash thy foot against a stone. ⁷ Jesus said unto him, It is written again, Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God. ⁸ Again, the devil taketh him up

into an exceeding high mountain, and sheweth him all the kingdoms of the world, and the glory of them; ⁹ And saith unto him, All these things will I give thee, if thou wilt fall down and worship me. ¹⁰ Then saith Jesus unto him, Get thee hence, Satan: for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve. ¹¹ Then the devil leaveth him, and, behold, angels came and ministered unto him.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 22. 18. But Jesus perceived their wickedness, and said, Why tempt ye me, *ye hypocrites*?

A. D. 63.] Heb. 2. 18. He himself hath suffered being tempted.

Heb. 4. 15. Was in all points tempted like as *we are*.

§ 87. *He Fasted, Hungered and Thirsted.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 4. 2. And when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, he was afterward ahungered.

John 4. 7. There cometh a woman of Samaria to draw water: Jesus saith unto her, Give me to drink.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 21. 18. Now in the morning, as he returned into the city, he hungered.

John 19. 28. After this, Jesus knowing that all things were now accomplished, that the Scripture might be fulfilled, saith, I thirst.

§ 88. *He was Weary and Slept.*

A. D. 27.] John 4. 6. Now Jacob's well was there. Jesus therefore, being wearied with *his* journey, sat thus on the well: *and* it was about the sixth hour.

Matt. 8. 24. *And, behold, there arose a great tempest in the sea, inso much that the ship was covered with the waves: but he was asleep. ²⁵ And his disciples came to *him*, and awoke him, saying, Lord, save us: we perish.

§ 89. *He was Grieved and Troubled.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 53. 3. He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief: and we hid as it were *our* faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

A. D. 27.] Mark 3. 5. Being grieved for the hardness of their hearts.

A. D. 29.] John 12. 27. Now is my soul troubled.

Matt. 26. 37. And he took with him Peter and the two sons of Zebedee, and began to be sorrowful and very heavy. ³⁸ Then saith he unto them, My soul is exceeding sorrowful, even unto death: tarry ye here, and watch with me.

§ 90. *He Prayed.*

A. D. 26.] Luke 3. 21. Now when all the people were baptized, it came to pass, that Jesus also being baptized, and praying, the heaven was opened.

A. D. 27.] Mark 1. 35. And in the morning, rising up a great while before day, he went out, and departed into a solitary place, and there prayed.

Matt. 14. 23. And when he had sent the multitudes away, he went up into a mountain apart to pray: and when the evening was come, he was there alone.

A. D. 28.] Luke 9. 18. And it came to pass, as he was alone praying, his disciples were with him.

A. D. 29.] Luke 22. 41. And he was withdrawn from them about a stone's cast, and kneeled down, and prayed, ⁴² Saying, Father, if thou be willing remove this cup from me: nevertheless, not my will, but thine, be done, ⁴³ And there appeared an angel unto him from heaven, strengthening him. ⁴⁴ And being in an agony he prayed more earnestly: and his sweat was as it were great drops of blood falling down to the ground. [See John, chap. 17.]

§ 91. *He Gave Thanks.*

A. D. 28.] Matt. 15. 36. And he took the seven loaves and the fishes, and gave thanks, and brake *them*, and gave to his disciples, and the disciples to the multitude.

A. D. 29.] John 11. 41. And Jesus lifted up *his* eyes, and said, Father, I thank thee that thou hast heard me.

Luke 22. 19. And he took bread, and gave thanks, and brake *it*, and gave unto them, saying, This is my body which is given for you: this do in remembrance of me.

§ 92. *He is our Brother.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 28. 10. Then said Jesus unto them, Be not afraid: go tell my brethren that they go into Galilee, and there shall they see me.

John. 20. 17. Jesus saith unto her, Touch me not: for I am not yet ascended to my Father: but go to my brethren, and say unto them, I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and to my God, and your God.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 8. 29. For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate *to be* conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren.

Heb. 2. 11. For both he that sanctifieth and they who are sanctified *are* all of one: for which cause he is not ashamed

to call them brethren, ¹² Saying, I will declare thy name unto my brethren; in the midst of the church will I sing praise unto thee.

§ 93. *He is our Example.*

A. D. 29.] John 13. 15. For I have given you an example, that ye should do as I have done to you.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 2. 21. Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example, that ye should follow his steps.

§ 94. *He is Messiah the Christ.*

B. C. 538.] Dan. 9. 24. Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy. ²⁵ Know therefore and understand, *that* from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem, unto the Messiah the Prince, *shall be* seven weeks, and three score and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times. ²⁶ And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off but not for himself: and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof *shall be* with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined.

B. C. 4.] Luke 2. 10. And the angel said unto them, Fear not: for, behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people. ¹¹ For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.

A. D. 26.] John 1. 40. One of the two which heard John *speak*, and followed him, was Andrew, Simon Peter's brother. ⁴¹ He first findeth his own brother Simon, and saith unto him, We have found the Messias, which is, being interpreted, the Christ. ⁴² And he brought him to Jesus.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 2. 22. Who is a liar but he that denieth that Jesus is the Christ? He is antichrist, that denieth the Father and the Son.

§ 95. *God kept and helped Him, and gave Him for a Covenant.*

A. D. 712.] Isa. 42. 5. Thus saith God the Lord, he that created the heavens, and stretched them out: he that spread forth the earth, and that which cometh out of it; he that giveth breath unto the people upon it, and spirit to them that walk therein: ⁶ I the Lord have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee

for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles; ⁷ To open the blind eyes, to bring out the prisoners from the prison, *and* them that sit in darkness out of the prison house. ⁸ *I am* the Lord; that *is* my name: and my glory will I not give to another, neither my praise to graven images.

A. D. 712.] Isa. 49. 7. Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, *and* his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nation abhorreth, to a servant of rulers, kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful, *and* the Holy One of Israel, and he shall choose thee. ⁸ Thus saith the Lord, In an acceptable time have I heard thee, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee: and I will preserve thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages; ⁹ That thou mayest say to the prisoners, Go forth; to them that *are* in darkness, Show yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures *shall be* in all high places.

§ 96. *On Him the Holy Spirit descended and remained.*

B. C. 740.] Isa. 11. 1. And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots: ² And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord; ³ And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears: ⁴ But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked. ⁵ And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

A. D. 26.] Matt. 3. 16. And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him.

Luke 3. 22. And the Holy Ghost descended in a bodily shape like a dove upon him.

John 1. 32. And John bare record, saying, I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon him. ³³ And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost.

A. D. 27.] Luke 4. 17. And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written, ¹⁸ The

Spirit of the Lord *is* upon me. ²¹ And he began to say unto them, This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears.

§ 97. *He was Led by the Spirit.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 4. 1. Then was Jesus led up of the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil.

Mark 1. 12. And immediately the Spirit driveth him into the wilderness.

Luke 4. 1. And Jesus being full of the Holy Ghost returned from Jordan, and was led by the Spirit into the wilderness.

§ 98. *He is Anointed (1,) to preach the Gospel, (2,) to bind up the Broken-hearted, (3,) to proclaim Liberty, (4,) to proclaim the Day of Vengeance, (5,) to comfort all that Mourn, (6,) to give Beauty, Joy, and the spirit of Praise.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 61. 1. The Spirit of the Lord God *is* upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the broken-hearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to *them that are bound*; ² To proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn; ³ To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called Trees of righteousness, The planting of the Lord, that he might be glorified.

A. D. 27.] Luke 4. 16. And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read. ¹⁷ And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written, ¹⁸ The Spirit of the Lord *is* upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the broken-hearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised, ¹⁹ To preach the acceptable year of the Lord. ²⁰ And he closed the book, and he gave *it* again to the minister, and sat down. And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on him. ²¹ And he began to say unto them, This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears. ²² And all bare him witness, and wondered at the gracious words which proceeded out of his mouth. And they said, Is not this Joseph's son?

§ 99. *He Preached and Taught.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 4. 17. From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.
²⁸ And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom.

Matt. 7. 29. For he taught them as *one* having authority, and not as the scribes.

Mark 1. 14. Now after that John was put in prison, Jesus came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of the kingdom of God, ³⁸ And he said unto them, Let us go into the next towns, that I may preach there also: for therefore came I forth.
³⁹ And he preached in their synagogues throughout all Galilee, and cast out devils.

Luke 3. 18. And many other things in his exhortation preached he unto the people.

Luke 4. 44. And he preached in the synagogues of Galilee.

§ 100. *The Doctrine and Word was not His Own, but the Father's.*

A. D. 29.] John 7. 16. Jesus answered them, and said, My doctrine is not mine, but his that sent me.

John 14. 24. He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings: and the word which ye hear is not mine, but the Father's which sent me.

§ 101. *He spoke and did as Taught and Commanded by the Father.*

A. D. 29.] John 8. 28. Then said Jesus unto them, When ye have lifted up the Son of man, then shall ye know that I am *he*, and *that* I do nothing of myself; but as my Father hath taught me, I speak these things.

John 12. 49. For I have not spoken of myself; but the Father which sent me, he gave me a commandment, what I should say, and what I should speak. ⁵⁰ And I know that his commandment is life everlasting: whatsoever I speak therefore, even as the Father said unto me, so I speak.

John 14. 31. But that the world may know that I love the Father; and as the Father gave me commandment, even so I do.

§ 102. *He makes known what he has Heard.*

A. D. 29.] John 3. 32. And what he hath seen and heard, that he testifieth; and no man receiveth his testimony.

John 8. 26. I have many things to say and to judge of you: but he that sent me is true; and I speak to the world those things which I have heard of him.

§ 103. *He made known all that he Heard of the Father.*

A. D. 29.] John 15. 15. Henceforth I call you not servants; for the servant knoweth not what his lord doeth: but I have called you friends; for all things that I have heard of my Father I have made known unto you.

§ 104. *He was a Prophet.*

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 18. 18. I will raise them up a Prophet from among their brethren, like unto thee, and will put my words in his mouth; and he shall speak unto them all that I shall command him. ¹⁹ And it shall come to pass, *that* whosoever will not hearken unto my words which he shall speak in my name, I will require *it* of him.

A. D. 27.] John 6. 14. Then those men, when they had seen the miracle that Jesus did, said, This is of a truth that Prophet that should come into the world.

John 7. 40. Many of the people therefore, when they heard this saying, said, Of a truth this is the Prophet.

Luke 7. 16. And there came a fear on all: and they glorified God, saying, That a great prophet is risen up among us: and, That God hath visited his people.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 21. 11. And the multitude said, This is Jesus, the prophet of Nazareth of Galilee.

§ 105. *He foretold the destruction of Jerusalem, with the circumstances, and the scattering of the Jews among all Nations.*

A. D. 29.] Luke 19. 41. And when he was come near, he beheld the city, and wept over it, ⁴² Saying, If thou hadst known, even thou, at least in this thy day, the things *which* belong unto thy peace! but now they are hid from thine eyes. ⁴³ For the days shall come upon thee, that thine enemies shall cast a trench about thee, and compass thee round, and keep thee in on every side. ⁴⁴ And shall lay thee even with the ground, and thy children within thee; and they shall not leave in thee one stone upon another; because thou knewest not the time of thy visitation.

Luke 21. 5. And as some spake of the temple, how it was adorned with goodly stones and gifts, he said, ⁶ *As for* these things which ye behold, the days will come, in the which there shall not be left one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down. ²⁰ And when ye shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies, then know that the desolation thereof is nigh. ²¹ Then let them which are in Judea flee to the mountains; and let them which are in the midst of it depart out;

and let not them that are in the countries enter thereinto. ²²For these be the days of vengeance, that all things which are written may be fulfilled. ²³But woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give suck, in those days! for there shall be great distress in the land, and wrath upon this people. ³²Verily I say unto you, This generation shall not pass away, till all be fulfilled. [See also Matt. 24 and Mark 13.]

§ 106. *He foretold what Signs should follow them which Believed.*

A. D. 29.] Mark 16. 17. And these signs shall follow them that believe: In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; ¹⁸They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.

§ 107. *He foretold the circumstances of his own Death, and that he would rise again the Third Day.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 16. 21. From that time forth began Jesus to show unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day.

Matt. 20. 17. And Jesus going up to Jerusalem took the twelve disciples apart in the way, and said unto them, ¹⁸Behold, we go up to Jerusalem; and the Son of man shall be betrayed unto the chief priests and unto the scribes, and they shall condemn him to death, ¹⁹And shall deliver him to the Gentiles to mock, and to scourge, and to crucify him: and the third day he shall rise again.

Matt. 26. 31. Then saith Jesus unto them, All ye shall be offended because of me this night: for it is written, I will smite the Shepherd, and the sheep of the flock shall be scattered abroad. ³²But after I am risen again, I will go before you into Galilee.

§ 108. *He foretold the gift of the Comforter.*

A. D. 29.] John 14. 16. And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever; ¹⁷Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.

John 16. 7. Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you.

§ 109. *He knows the Father.*

A. D. 29.] John 8. 54. It is my Father that honoureth me; of whom ye say, that he is your God: ⁵⁵ Yet ye have not known him; but I know him: and if I should say, I know him not, I shall be a liar like unto you: but I know him, and keep his saying.

John 10. 15. As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father.

§ 110. *Only Christ and those to whom He reveals Him, know the Father.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 11. 27. All things are delivered unto me of my Father: and no man knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither knoweth any man the Father, save the Son, and *he* to whomsoever the Son will reveal *him*.

§ 111. *The Spirit of God made Him of quick Understanding.*

B. C. 713.] Isa. 11. 1. And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots: ² And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord; ³ And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears: ⁴ But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth.

§ 112. *He knows all Men and their Thoughts.*

A. D. 27.] John 1. 47. Jesus saw Nathanael coming to him, and saith of him, Behold an Israelite indeed, in whom is no guile! ⁴⁸ Nathanael saith unto him, Whence knowest thou me? Jesus answered and said unto him, Before that Philip called thee, when thou wast under the fig tree, I saw thee.

John 2. 24. But Jesus did not commit himself unto them, because he knew all *men*, ²⁵ And needed not that any should testify of man; for he knew what was in man.

Matt. 9. 4. And Jesus knowing their thoughts said, Wherefore think ye evil in your hearts?

Matt. 12. 25. And Jesus knew their thoughts.

Mark 12. 15. But he, knowing their hypocrisy, said unto them, Why tempt ye me?

Luke 5. 22. But when Jesus perceived their thoughts, he answering said unto them, What reason ye in your hearts?

§ 113. *He knows his Own.*

A. D. 29.] John 10. 14. I am the good shepherd, and know my *sheep*, and am known of mine. ²⁷ My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 2. 19. Nevertheless the foundation of God standeth sure, having this seal, The Lord knoweth them that are his. And, Let every one that nameth the name of Christ depart from iniquity.

§ 114. *He knew who should betray Him.*

A. D. 29.] John 6. 64. But there are some of you that believe not. For Jesus knew from the beginning who they were that believed not, and who should betray him.

John 13. 11. For he knew who should betray him; therefore said he, Ye are not all clean. ¹⁸ I speak not of you all: I know whom I have chosen: but that the Scripture may be fulfilled, He that eateth bread with me hath lifted up his heel against me. ²⁵ He then lying on Jesus' breast saith unto him, Lord, who is it? ²⁶ Jesus answered, He it is, to whom I shall give a sop, when I have dipped *it*. And when he had dipped the sop, he gave *it* to Judas Iscariot.

§ 115. *He did not know the Day nor Hour when the end of the World should be.*

A. D. 29.] Mark 13. 31. Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away. ³² But of that day and *that* hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels which are in heaven, neither the Son, but the Father.

§ 116. *All things were delivered unto him by the Father.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 11. 27. All things are delivered unto me of my Father.

John 3. 35. The Father loveth the Son, and hath given all things into his hand.

John 13. 3. Jesus knowing that the Father had given all things into his hands, and that he was come from God, and went to God.

§ 117. *All Power was given to him by God.*

A. D. 29.] John 17. 2. Thou hast given him power over all flesh.

Matt. 28. 18. And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying. All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

Acts 10. 38. God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power.

§ 118. *He is Equal with God.*

A. D. 28.] John 5. 17. But Jesus answered them, My Father worketh hitherto, and I work. ¹⁸ Therefore the Jews sought the more to kill him, because he not only had broken the sabbath, but said also that God was his Father, making himself equal with God. ¹⁹ Then answered Jesus and said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, The Son can do nothing of himself, but what he seeth the Father do: for what things soever he doeth, these also doeth the Son likewise.

A. D. 62:] Phil. 2. 6. Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God.

§ 119. *He received from the Father power to lay down His Life and to take it again.*

A. D. 29.] John 10. 17. Therefore doth my Father love me, because I lay down my life, that I might take it again. ¹⁸ No man taketh it from me, but I lay it down of myself. I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again. This commandment have I received of my Father.

§ 120. *He gave his Disciples power over unclean Spirits and to heal Sickness.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 10. 1. And when he had called unto him his twelve disciples, he gave them power *against* unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all manner of sickness and all manner of disease.

Mark 3. 14. And he ordained twelve, that they should be with him, and that he might send them forth to preach. ¹⁵ And to have power to heal sicknesses, and to cast out devils.

Mark 6. 7. And he called...the twelve,...and gave them power over unclean spirits.

§ 121. *He gives power to become the Sons of God.*

John 1. 12. But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, *even* to them that believe on his name.

§ 122. *He is able to succour them that are Tempted.*

A. D. 63.] Heb. 2. 18 For in that he himself hath suffered being tempted, he is able to succour them that are tempted.

§ 123. *He is able to save them that come unto God by Him.*

A. D. 63.] Heb. 7. 25. Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him.

§ 124. *He is able to subdue all things unto Himself.*

A. D. 62.] Phil. 3. 21. Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.

§ 125. *He performed Miracles.*

A. D. 27.] John 2. 11. This beginning of miracles did Jesus in Cana of Galilee, and manifested forth his glory; and his disciples believed on him. ²³ Now when he was in Jerusalem at the passover, in the feast *day*, many believed in his name, when they saw the miracles which he did.

A. D. 27.] John 3. 2. The same came to Jesus by night, and said unto him, Rabbi, we know that thou art a teacher come from God: for no man can do these miracles that thou doest, except God be with him.

John 6. 2. And a great multitude followed him, because they saw his miracles which he did on them that were diseased.

John 11. 47. Then gathered the chief priests and the Pharisees a council, and said, What do we? for this man doeth many miracles.

John 12. 37. But though he had done so many miracles before them, yet they believed not on him.

§ 126. *The Winds and the Sea obeyed Him.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 8. 26. Then he arose, and rebuked the winds and the sea; and there was a great calm. ²⁷ But the men marvelled, saying, What manner of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him!

§ 127. *He walked on the Water.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 14. 25. And in the fourth watch of the night Jesus went unto them, walking on the sea. ²⁶ And when the disciples saw him walking on the sea, they were troubled, saying, It is a spirit; and they cried out for fear. ²⁷ But straightway Jesus spake unto them, saying, Be of good cheer; it is I; be not afraid.

§ 128. *He turned Water into Wine.*

A. D. 27.] John 2. 6. And there were set there six waterpots of stone, after the manner of the purifying of the Jews, containing two or three firkins apiece. ⁷ Jesus saith unto them, Fill the waterpots with water. And they filled them up to the brim. ⁸ And he saith unto them, Draw out now, and

bear unto the governor of the feast. And they bare it.
⁹ When the ruler of the feast had tasted the water that was made wine, and knew not whence it was, (but the servants which drew the water knew,) the governor of the feast called the bridegroom, ¹⁰ And saith unto him, Every man at the beginning doth set forth good wine; and when men have well drunk, then that which is worse: *but* thou hast kept the good wine until now. ¹¹ This beginning of miracles did Jesus in Cana of Galilee, and manifested forth his glory; and his disciples believed on him.

§ 129. *At His Word the Fig-tree Withered away.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 21. 19. And when he saw a fig tree in the way, he came to it, and found nothing thereon, but leaves only, and said unto it, Let no fruit grow on thee henceforward for ever. And presently the fig tree withered away. ²⁰ And when the disciples saw *it*, they marveled, saying, How soon is the fig tree withered away.

§ 130. *He Fed the Multitude.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 14. 15. And when it was evening, his disciples came to him, saying, This is a desert place, and the time is now past; send the multitude away, that they may go into the villages, and buy themselves victuals. ¹⁶ But Jesus said unto them, They need not depart; give ye them to eat. ¹⁷ And they say unto him, We have here but five loaves, and two fishes. ¹⁸ He said, Bring them hither to me. ¹⁹ And he commanded the multitude to sit down on the grass, and took the five loaves, and the two fishes, and looking up to heaven, he blessed, and brake, and gave the loaves to *his* disciples, and the disciples to the multitude. ²⁰ And they did all eat, and were filled: and they took up of the fragments that remained twelve baskets full. ²¹ And they that had eaten were about five thousand men, beside women and children.

Matt. 15. 32. Then Jesus called his disciples *unto him*, and said, I have compassion on the multitude, because they continue with me now three days, and have nothing to eat: and I will not send them away fasting, lest they faint in the way. ³³ And his disciples say unto him, Whence should we have so much bread in the wilderness, as to fill so great a multitude? ³⁴ And Jesus saith unto them, How many loaves have ye? And they said, Seven, and a few little fishes. ³⁵ And he commanded the multitude to sit down on the ground. ³⁶ And he took the seven loaves and the fishes, and gave thanks, and brake *them*, and gave to his disciples, and the disciples to the multitude. ³⁷ And they did all eat, and were filled: and they took up of the broken *meat* that was left seven baskets full.

³⁸ And they that did eat were four thousand men, beside women and children.

§ 131. *He Healed the Blind, the Dumb, and the Maimed.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 9. 27. And when Jesus departed thence, two blind men followed him, crying, and saying, *Thou Son of David*, have mercy on us. ²⁸ And when he was come into the house, the blind men came to him: and Jesus saith unto them, Believe ye that I am able to do this? They said unto him, Yea, Lord. ²⁹ Then touched he their eyes, saying, According to your faith be it unto you. ³⁰ And their eyes were opened; and Jesus straitly charged them, saying, See *that* no man know *it*. ³² As they went out, behold, they brought to him a dumb man possessed with a devil. ³³ And when the devil was cast out, the dumb spake: and the multitudes marvelled, saying, It was never so seen in Israel.

A. D. 28.] Matt. 15. 30. And great multitudes came unto him, having with them *those that were* lame, blind, dumb, maimed, and many others, and cast them down at Jesus' feet; and he healed them: ³¹ Insomuch that the multitude wondered, when they saw the dumb to speak, the maimed to be whole, the lame to walk, and the blind to see: and they glorified the God of Israel.

§ 132. *He Healed the Sick, the Lunatic, and those Possessed of Devils.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 4. 23. And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease among the people. ²⁴ And his fame went throughout all Syria: and they brought unto him all sick people that were taken with divers diseases and torments, and those which were possessed with devils, and those which were lunatic, and those that had the palsy; and he healed them.

Matt. 8. 2. And, behold, there came a leper and worshipped him, saying, Lord, if thou wilt, thou canst make me clean. ³ And Jesus put forth *his* hand, and touched him, saying, I will; be thou clean. And immediately his leprosy was cleansed.

Matt. 8. 13. And Jesus said unto the centurion, Go thy way; and as thou hast believed, *so* be it done unto thee. And his servant was healed in the selfsame hour.

Matt. 12. 13. Then saith he to the man, Stretch forth thy hand, And he stretched *it* forth; and it was restored whole like as the other. ¹⁴ Then the Pharisees went out, and held

a council against him, how they might destroy him. ¹⁵ But when Jesus knew *it*, he withdrew himself from thence: and great multitudes followed him, and he healed them all. ²² Then was brought unto him one possessed with a devil, blind, and dumb: and he healed him, insomuch that the blind and dumb both spake and saw.

A. D. 27.] Mark 1. 34. And he healed many that were sick of divers diseases, and cast out many devils; and suffered not the devils to speak, because they knew him.

Luke 9. 11. And the people, when they knew *it*, followed him: and he received them, and spake unto them of the kingdom of God, and healed them that had need of healing. ⁴² And Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit, and healed the child, and delivered him again to his father.

§ 133. *He Cast out Devils by the Spirit of God.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 12. 28. But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God is come unto you.

§ 134. *He Raised the Dead to Life.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 9. 18. While he spake these things unto them, behold, there came a certain ruler, and worshipped him, saying, My daughter is even now dead: but come and lay thy hand upon her, and she shall live. ²⁵ But when the people were put forth, he went in, and took her by the hand, and the maid arose.

Luke 7. 12. Now when he came nigh to the gate of the city, behold, there was a dead man carried out, the only son of his mother, and she was a widow: and much people of the city was with her. ¹³ And when the Lord saw her, he had compassion on her, and said unto her, Weep not. ¹⁴ And he came and touched the bier: and they that bare *him* stood still. And he said, Young man, I say unto thee, Arise. ¹⁶ And he that was dead sat up, and began to speak. And he delivered him to his mother.

A. D. 29.] John 11. 14. Then said Jesus unto them plainly, Lazarus is dead. ¹⁷ Then when Jesus came, he found that he had *lain* in the grave four days already. ⁴¹ Then they took away the stone *from the place* where the dead was laid. ⁴³ He cried with a loud voice, Lazarus, *come forth*. ⁴⁴ And he that was dead came forth, bound hand and foot with grave clothes; and his face was bound about with a napkin. Jesus saith unto them, Loose him, and let him go.

John 12. 1. Then Jesus, six days before the passover, came to Bethany, where Lazarus was which had been dead, whom he raised from the dead.

§ 135. *He had Compassion.*

A. D. 27.] Luke 7. 12. Now when he came nigh to the gate of the city, behold, there was a dead man carried out, the only son of his mother, and she was a widow: and much people of the city was with her. ¹⁸ And when the Lord saw her, he had compassion on her, and said unto her, Weep not.

Matt. 15. 32 Then Jesus called his disciples *unto him*, and said, I have compassion on the multitude, because they continue with me now three days, and have nothing to eat: and I will not send them away fasting, lest they faint in the way.

Matt. 20. 30. And, behold, two blind men sitting by the way side, when they heard that Jesus passed by cried out, Saying, Have mercy on us, O Lord, *thou* Son of David. ³⁴ So Jesus had compassion *on them*, and touched their eyes: and immediately their eyes received sight, and they followed him.

§ 136. *He Groaned and Wept.*

A. D. 29.] John 11. 33. When Jesus therefore saw her weeping, and the Jews also weeping which came with her, he groaned in the spirit, and was troubled. ³⁵ Jesus wept.

Luke 19. 41. And when he was come near, he beheld the city, and wept over it.

§ 137. *He Rejoiced in Spirit.*

A. D. 29.] Luke 10. 21. In that hour Jesus rejoiced in spirit, and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes: even so, Father; for so it seemed good in thy sight.

§ 138. *He was without Sin.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 53. 9, He had done no violence, neither *was any* deceit in his mouth.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 5. 21. For he hath made him *to be* sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 2. 22. Who did no sin, neither was guile found in his mouth.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 7. 26. For such a high priest became us, *who is* holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners, and made higher than the heavens.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 3. 5. And ye know that he was manifested to take away our sins; and in him is no sin.

§ 139. *He challenged any to Convict Him of Sin.*

A. D. 29.] John 8. 46. Which of you convinceth me of sin ? And if I say the truth, why do ye not believe me ?

§ 140. *He was Meek and Lowly.*

B. C. 584.] Zech. 9. 9. Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion : shout, O daughter of Jerusalem : behold, thy King cometh unto thee : he *is* just, and having salvation : lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 11. 29. Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me ; for I am meek and lowly in heart : and ye shall find rest unto your souls.

§ 141. *He Washed the Disciples' Feet.*

A. D. 29.] John 13. 4. He riseth from supper, and laid aside his garments ; and took a towel, and girded himself. ⁵ After that he poureth water into a basin, and began to wash the disciples' feet, and to wipe *them* with the towel wherewith he was girded. ⁶ Then cometh he to Simon Peter : and Peter saith unto him, Lord, dost thou wash my feet ? ⁷ Jesus answered and said unto him, What I do thou knowest not now ; but thou shalt know hereafter. ⁸ Peter saith unto him, Thou shalt never wash my feet. Jesus answered him, If I wash thee not, thou hast no part with me. ⁹ Simon Peter saith unto him, Lord, not my feet only, but also *my* hands and my head. ¹⁰ Jesus saith to him, He that is washed needeth not save to wash *his* feet, but is clean every whit ; and ye are clean, but not all. ¹¹ For he knew who should betray him ; therefore said he, Ye are not all clean. ¹² So after he had washed their feet, and had taken his garments, and was set down again, he said unto them, Know ye what I have done to you ? ¹³ Ye call me Master and Lord : and ye say well ; for *so* I am. ¹⁴ If I then, *your* Lord and Master, have washed your feet ; ye also ought to wash one another's feet. ¹⁵ For I have given you an example, that ye should do as I have done to you. ¹⁶ Verily, verily, I say unto you, The servant is not greater than his Lord ; neither he that is sent greater than he that sent him.

§ 142. *He told the Truth and they sought to kill Him.*

A. D. 29.] John 8. 37. I know that ye are Abraham's seed ; but ye seek to kill me, because my word hath no place in you.

⁴⁰ But now ye seek to kill me, a man that hath told you the

truth, which I have heard of God: this did not Abraham.
⁴⁶ And because I tell *you* the truth, ye believe me not.

§ 143. *They endeavoured to catch Him in His Words.*

A. D. 29.] Luke 20. 19. And the chief priests and the scribes the same hour sought to lay hands on him; and they feared the people: for they perceived that he had spoken this parable against them. ²⁰ And they watched *him*, and sent forth spies, which should feign themselves just men, that they might take hold of his words, that so they might deliver him unto the power and authority of the governor. ²¹ And they asked him, saying, Master, we know that thou sayest and teachest rightly, neither acceptest thou the person *of any*, but teachest the way of God truly: ²² Is it lawful for us to give tribute unto Cesar, or no?

§ 144. *They took counsel against Him.*

B. C. 1044.] Psal. 2. 1. Why do the heathen rage, and the people imagine a vain thing? ² The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together, against the Lord, and against his anointed.

A. D. 29.] Acts 4. 24. And when they heard that, they lifted up their voice to God with one accord, and said, Lord, thou *art* God, which hast made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is. ²⁵ Who by the mouth of thy servant David hast said, Why did the heathen rage, and the people imagine vain things? ²⁶ The kings of the earth stood up, and the rulers were gathered together against the Lord, and against his Christ. ²⁷ For of a truth against thy holy child Jesus, whom thou hast anointed, both Herod, and Pontius Pilate, with the Gentiles, and the people of Israel, were gathered together, ²⁸ For to do whatsoever thy hand and thy counsel determined before to be done.

§ 145. *They hired Judas for thirty pieces of silver to betray Him.*

B. C. 587.] Zech. 11. 12. And I said unto them, If ye think good, give *me* my price; and if not, forbear. So they weighed for my price thirty pieces of silver.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 26. 14. Then one of the twelve, called Judas Iscariot, went unto the chief priests; ¹⁵ And said *unto them*, What will ye give me, and I will deliver him unto you? And they covenanted with him for thirty pieces of silver. ¹⁶ And from that time he sought opportunity to betray him.

§ 146. *The Potter's Field bought with the price of Jesus.*

B. c. 587.] Zech. 11. 13. And the Lord said unto me, Cast it unto the potter: a goodly price that I was prized at of them. And I took the thirty *pieces* of silver, and cast them to the potter in the house of the Lord.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 27. 3. Then Judas, which had betrayed him, when he saw that he was condemned, repented himself, and brought again the thirty pieces of silver to the chief priests and elders, ⁴ Saying, I have sinned in that I have betrayed the innocent blood. And they said, What *is that* to us? see thou *to that*. ⁵ And he cast down the pieces of silver in the temple, and departed, and went and hanged himself. ⁶ And the chief priests took the silver pieces, and said, It is not lawful for to put them into the treasury, because it is the price of blood. ⁷ And they took counsel, and bought with them the potter's field to bury strangers in. ⁸ Wherefore that field was called, The field of blood, unto this day. ⁹ Then was fulfilled that which was spoken by Jeremy the prophet, saying, And they took the thirty pieces of silver, the price of him that was valued, whom they of the children of Israel did value; ¹⁰ And gave them for the potter's field, as the Lord appointed me.

§ 147. *He gave no answer to the False Accusations made against Him.*

B. c. 712.] Isa. 53. 7. He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth. ⁸ He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation?

A. D. 29.] Matt. 26. 57. And they that had laid hold on Jesus led *him* away to Caiaphas the high priest, where the scribes and the elders were assembled. ⁵⁹ And all the council sought false witness against Jesus, to put him to death; ⁶⁰ But found none: yea, though many false witnesses came, *yet* found they none. At the last came two false witnesses, ⁶¹ And said, This *fellow* said, I am able to destroy the temple of God, and to build it in three days. ⁶² And the high priest arose, and said unto him, Answerest thou nothing? what *is it which* these witness against thee? ⁶³ But Jesus held his peace.

Matt. 27. 12. And when he was accused of the chief priests and elders, he answered nothing. ¹³ Then said Pilate unto him, Hearest thou not how many things they witness against thee? ¹⁴ And he answered him to never a word; insomuch that the governor marvelled greatly.

Luke 23. 8. And when Herod saw Jesus, he was exceeding

glad: for he was desirous to see him of a long *season*, because he had heard many things of him; and he hoped to have seen some miracle done by him. ⁹ Then he questioned with him in many words: but he answered him nothing.

§ 148. *He was Mocked and Scourged.*

A. D. 29.] Luke 23. 11. And Herod with his men of war set him at nought, and mocked *him*, and arrayed him in a gorgeous robe, and sent him again to Pilate.

Mark 15. 15. And *so* Pilate, willing to content the people, released Barabbas unto them, and delivered Jesus, when he had scourged *him*, to be crucified. ¹⁶ And the soldiers led him away into the hall called Pretorium; and they called together the whole band. ¹⁷ And they clothed him with purple, and platted a crown of thorns, and put it about his *head*, ¹⁸ And began to salute him, Hail, King of the Jews! ¹⁹ And they smote him on the head with a reed, and did spit upon him, and bowing *their* knees, worshipped him. ²⁰ And when they had mocked him, they took off the purple from him, and put his own clothes on him, and led him out to crucify him.

§ 149. *He was Crucified.*

A. D. 29.] Luke 23. 33. And when they were come to the place which is called Calvary, there they crucified him, and the malefactors, one on the right hand, and the other on the left.

§ 150. *He felt Himself Forsaken of God.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 27. 46. And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani? that is to say, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?

§ 151. *He was numbered among Transgressors.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 53. 12. And he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Luke 22. 37. For I say unto you, that this that is written must yet be accomplished in me, And he was reckoned among the transgressors: for the things concerning me have an end.

Mark 15. 27. And with him they crucify two thieves; the one on his right hand, and the other on his left. ²⁸ And the Scripture was fulfilled, which saith, And he was numbered with the transgressors.

§ 152. *They parted His Garments among them, and cast lots for his Coat.*

B. C. 1044.] Psa. 22. 18. They part my garments among them, and cast lots upon my vesture.

A. D. 29.] John 19. 23. Then the soldiers, when they had crucified Jesus, took his garments, and made four parts, to every soldier a part; and also *his* coat: now the coat was without seam, woven from the top throughout. ²⁴ They said therefore among themselves, Let us not rend it, but cast lots for it, whose it shall be: that the Scripture might be fulfilled, which saith, They parted my raiment among them, and for my vesture they did cast lots. These things therefore the soldiers did.

Matt. 27. 35. And they crucified him, and parted his garments, casting lots; that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, They parted my garments among them, and upon my vesture did they cast lots.

§ 153. *They gave Him Vinegar to drink, mingled with Gall.*

B. C. 1015.] Psa. 69. 21. They gave me also gall for my meat; and in my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink.

A. D. 29.] John 19. 28. After this, Jesus knowing that all things were now accomplished, that the scripture might be fulfilled, saith, I thirst. ²⁹ Now there was set a vessel full of vinegar: and they filled a sponge with vinegar, and put *it* upon hyssop, and put *it* to his mouth. ³⁰ When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

§ 154. *They reviled and mocked Him for trusting in God.*

A. D. 1060.] Psa. 109. 25. I became also a reproach unto them: *when* they looked upon me they shook their heads.

B. C. 1044.] Psa. 22. 7. All they that see me laugh me to scorn: they shoot out the lip, they shake the head, *saying*, ⁸ He trusted on the Lord *that* he would deliver him: let him deliver him, seeing he delighted in him.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 27. 39. And they that passed by reviled him, wagging their heads, ⁴⁰ And saying, Thou that destroyest the temple, and buildest *it* in three days, save thyself. If thou be the Son of God, come down from the cross. ⁴¹ Likewise also the chief priests mocking *him*, with the scribes and elders, said, ⁴² He saved others; himself he cannot save. If he be the King of Israel, let him now come down from the

cross, and we will believe him. ⁴³ He trusted in God; let him deliver him now, if he will have him: for he said, I am the Son of God. ⁴⁴ The thieves also, which were crucified with him, cast the same in his teeth.

§ 155. *They pierced Him.*

B. C. 1044.] Psa. 22. 16. For dogs have compassed me: the assembly of the wicked have enclosed me: they pierced my hands and my feet.

B. C. 587.] Zech. 12. 10. And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for *his* only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for *his* firstborn.

A. D. 29.] John 19. 34. But one of the soldiers with a spear pierced his side, and forthwith came thereout blood and water. ³⁵ And he that saw *it* bare record, and his record is true; and he knoweth that he saith true, that ye might believe. ³⁶ For these things were done, that the scripture should be fulfilled, A bone of him shall not be broken. ³⁷ And again another scripture saith, They shall look on him whom they pierced.

§ 156. *He commended his spirit to God, and Died.*

A. D. 29.] Luke 23. 46. And when Jesus had cried with a loud voice, he said, Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit: and having said thus, he gave up the ghost.

§ 157. *He was laid in the Sepulchre.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 53. 9. And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither *was any* deceit in his mouth.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 27. 57. When the even was come, there came a rich man of Arimathea, named Joseph, who also himself was Jesus's disciple. ⁵⁸ He went to Pilate, and begged the body of Jesus. Then Pilate commanded the body to be delivered. ⁵⁹ And when Joseph had taken the body, he wrapped it in a clean linen cloth, ⁶⁰ And laid it in his *own* new tomb, which he had hewn out in the rock: and he rolled a great stone to the door of the sepulchre and departed.

§ 158. *He arose from the Dead the Third Day.*

B. C. 1044.] Psa. 16. 9. Therefore my heart is glad, and my glory rejoiceth: my flesh also shall rest in hope. ¹⁰ For thou

wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

A. D. 29.] Luke 24. 1. Now upon the first *day* of the week, very early in the morning, they came unto the sepulchre, bringing the spices which they had prepared, and certain *others* with them. ² And they found the stone rolled away from the sepulchre. ³ And they entered in, and found not the body of the Lord Jesus. ⁴ And it came to pass, as they were much perplexed thereabout, behold, two men stood by them in shining garments: ⁵ And as they were afraid, and bowed down *their* faces to the earth, they said unto them, Why seek ye the living among the dead? ⁶ He is not here, but is risen: remember how he spake unto you when he was yet in Galilee, ⁷ Saying, The Son of man must be delivered into the hands of sinful men, and be crucified, and the third day rise again. ⁸ And they remembered his words, ⁹ And returned from the sepulchre, and told all these things unto the eleven, and to all the rest. ¹⁰ It was Mary Magdalene, and Joanna, and Mary *the mother* of James, and other *women that were* with them, which told these things unto the apostles. ¹¹ And their words seemed to them as idle tales, and they believed them not. ¹² Then arose Peter, and ran unto the sepulchre; and stooping down, he beheld the linen clothes laid by themselves, and departed, wondering in himself at that which was come to pass.

§ 159. *He appeared unto His Disciples after His Resurrection, and ate with them.*

A. D. 29.] John 20. 11. But Mary stood without at the sepulchre weeping: and as she wept, she stooped down, *and looked* into the sepulchre, ¹² And seeth two angels in white sitting, the one at the head, and the other at the feet, where the body of Jesus had lain. ¹³ And they say unto her, Woman, why weepest thou? She saith unto them, Because they have taken away my Lord, and I know not where they have laid him. ¹⁴ And when she had thus said, she turned herself back, and saw Jesus standing, and knew not that it was Jesus. ¹⁵ Jesus saith unto her, Woman, why weepest thou? whom seekest thou? She, supposing him to be the gardener, saith unto him, Sir, if thou have borne him hence, tell me where thou hast laid him, and I will take him away. ¹⁶ Jesus saith unto her, Mary. She turned herself, and saith unto him, Rabboni; which is to say, Master. ¹⁷ Jesus saith unto her, Touch me not; for I am not yet ascended to my Father: but go to my brethren, and say unto them, I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and *to* my God, and your God. ¹⁸ Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples that she

had seen the Lord, and *that* he had spoken these things unto her.

A. D. 29.] Luke 20. 13. And, behold, two of them went that same day to a village called Emmaus, which was from Jerusalem *about* threescore furlongs. ¹⁴ And they talked together of all these things which had happened. ¹⁵ And it came to pass, that, while they communed *together* and reasoned, Jesus himself drew near, and went with them. ¹⁶ But their eyes were holden that they should not know him. ¹⁷ And he said unto them, What manner of communications *are* these that ye have one to another, as ye walk, and are sad? ¹⁸ And the one of them, whose name was Cleopas, answering said unto him, Art thou only a stranger in Jerusalem, and hast not known the things which are come to pass there in these days? ¹⁹ And he said unto them, What things? And they said unto him, Concerning Jesus of Nazareth, which was a prophet mighty in deed and word before God and all the people: ²⁰ And how the chief priests and our rulers delivered him to be condemned to death, and have crucified him. ²¹ But we trusted that it had been he which should have redeemed Israel: and besides all this, to day is the third day since these things were done. ²² Yea, and certain women also of our company made us astonished, which were early at the sepulchre; ²³ And when they found not his body, they came, saying, that they had also seen a vision of angels, which said that he was alive. ²⁴ And certain of them which were with us went to the sepulchre, and found *it* even so as the woman had said: but him they saw not. ²⁵ Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken: ²⁶ Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory? ²⁷ And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the Scriptures the things concerning himself. ²⁸ And they drew nigh unto the village, whither they went: and he made as though he would have gone further. ²⁹ But they constrained him, saying, Abide with us; for it is toward evening, and the day is far spent. And he went in to tarry with them. ³⁰ And it came to pass, as he sat at meat with them, he took bread, and blessed *it*, and brake, and gave to them. ³¹ And their eyes were opened, and they knew him; and he vanished out of their sight. ³² And they said one to another, Did not our heart burn within us, while he talked with us by the way, and while he opened to us the Scriptures? ³³ And they rose up the same hour, and returned to Jerusalem, and found the eleven gathered together, and them that were with them, ³⁴ Saying, The Lord is risen indeed, and hath appeared to Simon. ³⁵ And they told what things *were done* in the way, and how he was known of them in breaking of bread. ³⁶ And as they thus spake, Jesus himself stood in the

midst of them, and saith unto them, Peace *be* unto you. ³⁷ But they were terrified and affrighted, and supposed that they had seen a spirit. ³⁸ And he said unto them, Why are ye troubled? and why do thoughts arise in your hearts? ³⁹ Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me, and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have. ⁴⁰ And when he had thus spoken, he showed them *his* hands and *his* feet. ⁴¹ And while they yet believed not for joy, and wondered, he said unto them, Have ye here any meat? ⁴² And they gave him a piece of a broiled fish, and of a honeycomb. ⁴³ And he took *it*, and did eat before them. ⁴⁴ And he said unto them, These *are* the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and *in* the prophets, and *in* the psalms, concerning me. ⁴⁵ Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the Scriptures, ⁴⁶ And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day: ⁴⁷ And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. ⁴⁸ And ye are witnesses of these things. ⁴⁹ And, behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high.

A. D. 29.] John 20. 21. Then said Jesus to them again, Peace *be* unto you: as *my* Father hath sent me, even so send I you. ²² And when he had said this, he breathed on *them*, and saith unto them, Receive ye the Holy Ghost. ²⁴ But Thomas, one of the twelve, called Didymus, was not with them when Jesus came. ²⁵ The other disciples therefore said unto him, We have seen the Lord. But he said unto them, Except I shall see in his hands the print of the nails, and put my finger into the print of the nails, and thrust my hand into his side, I will not believe. ²⁶ And after eight days again his disciples were within, and Thomas with them: *then* came Jesus, the doors being shut, and stood in the midst, and said, Peace *be* unto you. ²⁷ Then saith he to Thomas, Reach hither thy finger, and behold my hands; and reach hither thy hand, and thrust *it* into my side; and be not faithless, but believing. ²⁸ And Thomas answered and said unto him, My Lord and my God. ²⁹ Jesus saith unto him, Thomas, because thou hast seen me, thou hast believed: blessed *are* they that have not seen, and *yet* have believed.

John 21. 1. After these things Jesus showed himself again to the disciples at the sea of Tiberias; and on this wise showed he *himself*. ² There were together Simon Peter, and Thomas called Didymus, and Nathanael of Cana in Galilee, and the *sons* of Zebedee, and two other of his disciples. ³ Simon Peter saith unto them, I go a fishing. They say unto

him, We also go with thee. They went forth, and entered into a ship immediately; and that night they caught nothing. ⁴ But when the morning was now come, Jesus stood on the shore; but the disciples knew not that it was Jesus. ⁵ Then Jesus saith unto them, Children, have ye any meat? They answered him, No. ⁶ And he said unto them, Cast the net on the right side of the ship, and ye shall find. They cast therefore, and now they were not able to draw it for the multitude of fishes. ⁷ Therefore that disciple whom Jesus loved saith unto Peter, It is the Lord. Now when Simon Peter heard that it was the Lord, he girt *his* fishers' coat *unto him*, (for he was naked,) and did cast himself into the sea. ⁸ And the other disciples came in a little ship, (for they were not far from land, but as it were two hundred cubits,) dragging the net with fishes. ⁹ As soon then as they were come to land, they saw a fire of coals there, and fish laid thereon, and bread. ¹⁰ Jesus saith unto them, Bring of the fish which ye have now caught. ¹¹ Simon Peter went up, and drew the net to land full of great fishes, a hundred and fifty and three: and for all there were so many, yet was not the net broken. ¹² Jesus saith unto them, Come *and* dine. And none of the disciples durst ask him, Who art thou? knowing that it was the Lord. ¹³ Jesus then cometh, and taketh bread, and giveth them, and fish likewise. ¹⁴ This is now the third time that Jesus showed himself to his disciples, after that he was risen from the dead. ¹⁵ So when they had dined, Jesus saith to Simon Peter, Simon, *son* of Jonas, lovest thou me more than these? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee. He saith unto him, Feed my lambs. ¹⁶ He saith to him again the second time, Simon, *son* of Jonas, lovest thou me? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee. He saith unto him, Feed my sheep. ¹⁷ He saith unto him the third time, Simon, *son* of Jonas, lovest thou me? Peter was grieved because he said unto him the third time, Lovest thou me? And he said unto him, Lord, thou knowest all things; thou knowest that I love thee. Jesus saith unto him, Feed my sheep. ¹⁸ Verily, verily, I say unto thee, When thou wast young, thou girdedst thyself, and walkedst whither thou wouldest: but when thou shalt be old, thou shalt stretch forth thy hands, and another shall gird thee, and carry *thee* whither thou wouldest not. ¹⁹ This spake he, signifying by what death he should glorify God. And when he had spoken this, he saith unto him, Follow me. ²⁰ Then Peter, turning about, seeth the disciple whom Jesus loved following; which also leaned on his breast at supper, and said, Lord, which is he that betrayeth thee? ²¹ Peter seeing him saith to Jesus, Lord, and what *shall* this man *do*? ²² Jesus saith unto him, If I will that he tarry till

I come, what *is that* to thee? follow thou me. ²⁹ Then went this saying abroad among the brethren, that that disciple should not die: yet Jesus said not unto him, He shall not die; but, If I will that he tarry till I come, what *is that* to thee?

§ 160. *He was carried up into Heaven.*

A. D. 29.] Luke 24. 50. And he led them out as far as to Bethany, and he lifted up his hands, and blessed them. ⁵¹ And it came to pass, while he blessed them, he was parted from them, and carried up into heaven.

Mark 16. 19. So then, after the Lord had spoken unto them, he was received up into heaven, and sat on the right hand of God.

Acts 1. 9. And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a cloud received him out of their sight.

§ 161. *He shall Come Again.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 24. 30. And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

John 14. 2. I go to prepare a place for you. ³ And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, *there* ye may be also.

Acts 1. 10. And while they looked steadfastly toward heaven as he went up, behold, two men stood by them in white apparel. ¹¹ Which also said, Ye men of Galilee, why stand ye gazing up into heaven? this same Jesus, which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner as ye have seen him go into heaven.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 4. 16. For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God.

A. D. 65.] Titus 2. 11. For the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared to all men. ¹² Teaching us that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world. ¹³ Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.

§ 162. *He appeared to some after his Ascension.*

A. D. 31.] Acts 7. 55. But he, being full of the Holy Ghost, looked up steadfastly into heaven, and saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing on the right hand of God, ⁵⁶ And said, Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man standing on the right hand of God. ⁵⁷ Then they cried out with a

loud voice, and stopped their ears, and ran upon him with one accord.

A. D. 33.] Acts 9. 1. And Saul, yet breathing out threatenings and slaughter against the disciples of the Lord, went unto the high priest, ² And desired of him letters to Damascus to the synagogues, that if he found any of this way, whether they were men or women, he might bring them bound unto Jerusalem. ³ And as he journeyed, he came near Damascus: and suddenly there shined round about him a light from heaven: ⁴ And he fell to the earth, and heard a voice saying unto him, Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me? ⁵ And he said, Who art thou, Lord? And the Lord said, I am Jesus whom thou persecutest: *it is* hard for thee to kick against the pricks. ⁶ And he, trembling and astonished, said, Lord, what wilt thou have me to do? And the Lord *said* unto him, Arise, and go into the city, and it shall be told thee what thou must do. ⁷ And the men which journeyed with him stood speechless, hearing a voice, but seeing no man. ⁸ And Saul arose from the earth; and when his eyes were opened, he saw no man: but they led him by the hand, and brought *him* into Damascus. ⁹ And he was three days without sight, and neither did eat nor drink. ¹⁰ And there was a certain disciple at Damascus, named Ananias; and to him said the Lord in a vision, Ananias; And he said, Behold, I *am here*, Lord. ¹¹ And the Lord *said* unto him, Arise, and go into the street which is called Straight, and inquire in the house of Judas for *one* called Saul, of Tarsus: for, behold, he prayeth. ¹² And hath seen in a vision a man named Ananias, coming in, and putting *his* hand on him, that he might receive his sight. ¹³ Then Ananias answered, Lord, I have heard by many of this man, how much evil he hath done to thy saints at Jerusalem: ¹⁴ And here he hath authority from the chief priests to bind all that call on thy name. ¹⁵ But the Lord said unto him, Go thy way: for he is a chosen vessel unto me, to bear my name before the Gentiles, and kings, and the children of Israel: ¹⁶ For I will show him how great things he must suffer for my name's sake. ¹⁷ And Ananias went his way, and entered into the house; and putting his hands on him said, Brother Saul, the Lord, *even* Jesus, that appeared unto thee in the way as thou camest, hath sent me, that thou mightest receive thy sight, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

A. D. 60.] Acts 22. 17. And it came to pass, that, when I was come again to Jerusalem, even while I prayed in the temple, I was in a trance; ¹⁸ And saw him saying unto me, Make haste, and get thee quickly out of Jerusalem: for they will not receive thy testimony concerning me. ¹⁹ And I said, Lord, they know that I imprisoned and beat in every synagogue them that believed on thee. ²⁰ And when the blood of thy martyr

Stephen was shed, I also was standing by, and consenting unto his death, and kept the raiment of them that slew him. ²¹ And he said unto me, Depart: for I will send thee far hence unto the Gentiles.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 9. 1. Have I not seen Jesus Christ our Lord?

1 Cor. 15. 8. And last of all he was seen of me also, as of one born out of due time.

§ 163. *He is always with his Disciples.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 28. 20. Lo, I am with you alway, *even* unto the end of the world. Amen.

§ 164. *He is the Bread of Life.*

A. D. 28.] John 6. 30. They said therefore unto him, what sign showest thou then, that we may see, and believe thee? what dost thou work? ³¹ Our fathers did eat manna in the desert; as it is written, He gave them bread from heaven to eat. ³² Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Moses gave you not that bread from heaven; but my Father giveth you the true bread from heaven. ³³ For the bread of God is he which cometh down from heaven, and giveth life unto the world. ³⁴ Then said they unto him, Lord, evermore give us this bread. ³⁵ And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst. ⁴¹ The Jews then murmured at him, because he said, I am the bread which came down from heaven. ⁴³ Jesus therefore answered and said unto them, Murmur not among yourselves. ⁴⁸ I am that bread of life. ⁴⁹ Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness, and are dead. ⁵⁰ This is the bread which cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof, and not die. ⁵¹ I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world. ⁵⁸ This is that bread which came down from heaven: not as your fathers did eat manna, and are dead: he that eateth of this bread shall live for ever.

§ 165. *He is the Lamb of God, and was Slain.*

A. D. 27.] John 1. 29. The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world. ³⁶ And looking upon Jesus as he walked, he saith, Behold the Lamb of God!

A. D. 96.] Rev. 5. 6. And I beheld, and lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the el-

ders, stood a lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of God sent forth into all the earth. ⁷ And he came and took the book out of the right hand of him that sat upon the throne. ⁸ And when he had taken the book, the four beasts and four *and* twenty elders fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints. ⁹ And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood, out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation.

§ 166. *He gave Himself a Sacrifice for Us.*

A. D. 61.] Eph. 5. 2. And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweet smelling savour.

§ 167. *He was delivered for our Offences.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 53. 5. But he *was* wounded for our transgressions, *he was* bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace *was* upon him; and with his stripes we are healed. ⁶ All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 5. 7. For even Christ our passover is sacrificed for us:

A. D. 57.] Rom. 4. 25. Who was delivered for our offences.

§ 168. *He suffered and died for our Sins.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 53. 8. He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 15. 3. For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 3. 18. For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit.

§ 169. *He was offered once for all, and there is no more offering for Sin.*

A. D. 63.] Heb. 9. 24. For Christ is not entered into the holy places made with hands, *which are* the figures of the true; but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God

for us: ²⁵ Nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest entereth into the holy place every year with blood of others. ²⁶ For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself. ²⁷ And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment: ²⁸ So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and unto them that look for him shall he appear the second time without sin unto salvation.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 10. 10. By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once *for all*. ¹¹ And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins: ¹² But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins, for ever sat down on the right hand of God; ¹³ From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool. ¹⁴ For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified. ¹⁵ *Whereof* the Holy Ghost also is a witness to us: for after that he had said before, ¹⁶ This *is* the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them; ¹⁷ And their sins and iniquities will I remember no more. ¹⁸ Now where remission of these *is, there is* no more offering for sin.

§ 170. *He is the Propitiation of our Sins.*

A. D. 58.] Rom. 3. 24. Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus: ²⁵ Whom God hath set forth *to be* a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 2. 2. And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for *the sins of* the whole world.

1 John 4. 10. Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son *to be* the propitiation for our sins.

§ 171. *He is the Ransom.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 20. 27. And whosoever will be chief among you, let him be your servant: ²⁸ Even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 2. 6. Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time.

§ 172. *Through him is Reconciliation.*

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 5. 18. All things *are* of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation; ¹⁹ To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 5. 10. For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son; much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life. ¹¹ And not only *so*, but we also joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom we have now received the atonement.*

A. D. 61.] Eph. 2. 14. For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition *between us*; ¹⁵ Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, *even* the law of commandments *contained* in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, *so* making peace. ¹⁶ And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby: ¹⁷ And came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh. ¹⁸ For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father.

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 19. For it pleased *the Father* that in him should all fulness dwell; ²⁰ And, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, *I say*, whether *they be* things in earth, or things in heaven, ²¹ And you, that were sometimes alienated and enemies in *your* mind by wicked works, yet now hath he reconciled ²² In the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblameable and unreprieveable in his sight.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 2. 17. Wherefore in all things it behooved him to be made like unto *his* brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things *pertaining* to God, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people.

§ 173. *He is the Only Mediator between God and Man.*

A. D. 63.] Heb. 8. 6. He is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.

Heb. 9. 15. And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament.

Heb. 12. 24. Jesus the mediator of the new covenant.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 2. 5. For *there is* one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus.

* Or, reconciliation.

§ 174. *He is the Sinner's Intercessor and Advocate.*

A. D. 58.] Rom. 8. 34. Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 7. 25. Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 2. 1. My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous.

§ 175. *He is the High Priest.*

A. D. 63.] Heb. 3. 1. Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus.

Heb. 4. 14. Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast *our* profession.

Heb. 5. 6. As he saith also in another *place*, Thou *art* a priest for ever after the order of Melchizedek. ¹⁰ Called of God a high priest after the order of Melchizedek.

Heb. 6. 20. Whither the forerunner is for us entered, *even* Jesus, made a high priest for ever after the order of Melchizedek.

Heb. 7. 11. If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood, (for under it the people received the law,) what further need *was there* that another priest should rise after the order of Melchizedek, and not be called after the order of Aaron? ¹² For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law. ¹³ For he of whom these things are spoken pertaineth to another tribe, of which no man gave attendance at the altar. ¹⁴ For *it is* evident that our Lord sprang out of Judah; of which tribe Moses spake nothing concerning priesthood. ¹⁵ And it is yet far more evident: for that after the similitude of Melchizedek there ariseth another priest, ¹⁶ Who is made, not after the law of a carnal commandment, but after the power of an endless life. ¹⁷ For he testifieth, Thou *art* a priest for ever after the order of Melchizedek. ¹⁸ For there is verily a disannulling of the commandment going before for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof. ¹⁹ For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope *did*; by the which we draw nigh unto God. ²⁰ And inasmuch as not without an oath *he was made priest*: ²¹ (For those priests were made without an oath; but this with an oath by him that said unto him, The Lord swear and will not repent, Thou *art* a priest for ever after the order

of Melchizedek :) ²² By so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament.

§ 176. *He continues forever the same, and His Priesthood is Unchangeable.*

A. D. 63.] Heb. 1. 11. They shall perish, but thou remainest: and they all shall wax old as doth a garment; ¹² And as a vesture shalt thou fold them up, and they shall be changed: but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail.

Heb. 7. 23. And they truly were many priests, because they were not suffered to continue by reason of death: ²⁴ But this *man*, because he continueth ever, hath an unchangeable priesthood. ²⁵ Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.

Heb. 13. 8. Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever.

§ 177. *He is the Redeemer.*

A. D. 52.] Gal. 3. 13. Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 1. 30. But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 1. 18. Forasmuch as ye know that we were not redeemed with corruptible things, *as* silver and gold, from your vain conversation *received* by tradition from your fathers.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 9. 11. But Christ being come a high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building; ¹² Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption *for us*.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 5. 9. And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation.

§ 178. *He is the Deliverer.*

A. D. 52.] Gal. 1. 3. Grace *be* to you, and peace, from God the Father, and *from* our Lord Jesus Christ, ⁴ Who gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us from this present evil world, according to the will of God and our Father.

1 Thess. 1. 10. And to wait for his Son from heaven, whom he

raised from the dead, *even* Jesus, which delivered us from the wrath to come.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 2. 14. Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil; ¹⁶ And deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage.

§ 179. *He is the Saviour.*

B. C. 4.] Matt. 1. 21. And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shall call his name JESUS: for he shall save his people from their sins.

Luke 2. 10. And the angel said unto them, Fear not: for, behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people. ¹¹ For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.

A. D. 27.] John 3. 17. For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved.

A. D. 29.] Luke 19. 10. For the Son of man is come to seek and to save that which was lost.

A. D. 30.] Acts 5. 30. The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree. ³¹ Him hath God exalted with his right hand *to be* a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

A. D. 45.] Acts 13. 23. God, according to *his* promise, raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 9. For God hath not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 1. 15. This *is* a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptance, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 4. 14. And we have seen and do testify, that the Father sent the Son *to be* the Saviour of the world.

§ 180. *Salvation in no other Name.*

A. D. 29.] Acts 4. 12. Neither is there salvation in any other; for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

§ 181. *He is the good Shepherd and Bishop.*

B. C. 584.] Ezek. 34. 23. And I will set up one Shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, *even* my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd. ²⁴ And I

the Lord will be their God, and my servant David a prince among them; I the Lord have spoken *it*.

B. C. 584.] Ezek. 37. 24. And David my servant *shall be king* over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe my statutes, and do them.

A. D. 29.] John 10. 11. I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep. ¹⁴ I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine. ¹⁶ And other sheep I have, which are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice, and there shall be one fold, *and* one shepherd.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 2. 25. For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

1 Peter 5. 4. And when the chief Shepherd shall appear, ye shall receive a crown of glory that fadeth not away.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 13. 20. Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great Shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant, ²¹ Make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you that which is well pleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom *be* glory for ever and ever. Amen.

§ 182. *He is Touched with our Infirmities and bears our Grievs.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 53. 4. Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 4. 15. For we have not a high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as *we are*, yet without sin.

§ 183. *He gives Rest to the Weary.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 11. 28. Come unto me, all *ye* that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest. ²⁹ Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me; for I am meek and lowly in heart: and ye shall find rest unto your souls. ³⁰ For my yoke *is* easy, and my burden is light.

§ 184. *He receiveth sinners.*

A. D. 29.] Luke 11. 1. Then drew near unto him all the publicans and sinners for to hear him. ² And the Pharisees and scribes murmured, saying, This man receiveth sinners, and eateth with them.

§ 185. *He has power on the earth to forgive sins.*

A. D. 27.] Mark 2. 5. When Jesus saw their faith, he said unto the sick of the palsy, Son, thy sins be forgiven thee. ⁶ But there were certain of the scribes sitting there, and reasoning in their hearts, ⁷ Why doth this *man* thus speak blasphemies? who can forgive sins but God only? ⁸ And immediately, when Jesus perceived in his spirit that they so reasoned within themselves, he said unto them, Why reason ye these things in your hearts? ⁹ Whether is it easier to say to the sick of the palsy, *Thy* sins be forgiven thee; or to say, Arise, and take up thy bed, and walk? ¹⁰ But that ye may know that the Son of man hath power on earth to forgive sins, (he saith unto the sick of the palsy,) ¹¹ I say unto thee, Arise, and take up thy bed, and go thy way unto thine house.

§ 186. *He is the Judge.*

A. D. 28.] John 5. 22. For the Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment unto the Son: ²⁷ And hath given him authority to execute judgment also, because he is the Son of man. ³⁰ I can of mine ownself do nothing: as I hear, I judge: and my judgment is just; because I seek not mine own will, but the will of the Father which hath sent me.

A. D. 31.] Acts 10. 42. And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that it is he which was ordained of God *to be* the Judge of quick and dead.

A. D. 56.] Acts 17. 31. Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by *that* man whom he hath ordained; *whereof* he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 5. 9. Wherefore we labour, that, whether present or absent, we may be accepted of him. ¹⁰ For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things *done* in *his* body, according to that he hath done, whether *it be* good or bad.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 14. 10. But why dost thou judge thy brother? or why dost thou set at nought thy brother? for we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 4. 1. I charge *thee* therefore before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom.

§ 187. *He is Just and Holy.*

A. D. 29.] Act 3. 14. But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you.

Acts 4. 27. For of a truth against thy holy child Jesus,

whom thou hast anointed, both Herod and Pontius Pilate, with the Gentiles, and the people of Israel, were gathered together.

A. D. 31.] Acts 7. 52. Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them which showed before of the coming of the Just One; of whom ye have been now the betrayers and murderers.

A. D. 60.] Acts 22. 14. The God of our fathers hath chosen thee, that thou shouldst know his will, and see that Just One, and shouldst hear the voice of his mouth.

1 Pet. 3. 18. For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 1. 9. If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

§ 188. *He is the Giver of Grace.*

A. D. 26.] John 1. 16. And of his fulness have all we received, and grace for grace. ¹⁷ For the law was given by Moses, *but* grace and truth came by Jesus Christ.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 28. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with you. Amen.

2 Thess. 3. 18. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with you all. Amen.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 1. 4. I thank my God always on your behalf, for the grace of God which is given you by Jesus Christ.

1 Cor. 16. 23. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with you.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 13. 14. The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost *be* with you all. Amen.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 16. 20. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with you. Amen. ²⁴ The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with you all. Amen.

A. D. 98.] Rev. 22. 21. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with you all. Amen.

§ 189. *He is the Light of the World.*

B. C. 740.] Isa. 9. 1. Nevertheless the dimness *shall* not *be* such as *was* in her vexation, when at the first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun, and the land of Naphtali, and afterward did more grievously afflict *her by* the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, in Galilee of the nations. ² The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light: they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 4. 13. And leaving Nazareth, he came and dwelt in Capernaum, which is upon the sea coast, in the borders of Zebulun and Nephthalim: ¹⁴That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, ¹⁵The land of Zebulun, and the land of Nephthalim, *by* way of the sea, beyond Jordan, Galilee of the Gentiles; ¹⁶The people which sat in darkness saw great light; and to them which sat in the region and shadow of death light is sprung up.

A. D. 29.] John 8. 12. Then Jesus spake again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.

John 9. 5. As long as I am in the world, I am the light of the world.

John 12. 35. Then Jesus said unto them, Yet a little while is the light with you. Walk while ye have the light, lest darkness come upon you: for he that walketh in darkness knoweth not whither he goeth. ³⁶While ye have light, believe in the light, that ye may be the children of light. These things spake Jesus, and departed, and did hide himself from them. ⁴⁶I am come a light into the world, that whosoever believeth on me should not abide in darkness.

§ 190. *He is the Wisdom of God.*

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 1. 20. Where *is* the wise? where *is* the scribe? where *is* the disputer of this world? hath not God made foolish the wisdom of this world? ²¹For after that in the wisdom of God the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe. ²²For the Jews require a sign, and the Greeks seek after wisdom: ²³But we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumblingblock, and unto the Greeks foolishness; ²⁴But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

§ 191. *He is the Rock and Foundation of the Church.*

A. D. 28.] Matt. 16. 15. He saith unto them, But whom say ye that I am? ¹⁶And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God. ¹⁷And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Bar-jona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed *it* unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven. ¹⁸And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

1 Cor. 3. 9. For we are labourers together with God: ye are God's husbandry, *ye are* God's building. ¹⁰According to the grace of God which is given unto me, as a wise master-

builder, I have laid the foundation, and another buildeth thereon. But let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon. ¹¹ For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 2. 19. Now therefore ye are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellow citizens with the saints, and of the household of God; ²⁰ And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone; ²¹ In whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto a holy temple in the Lord: ²² In whom ye also are builded together for a habitation of God through the Spirit.

§ 192. *He is the Head of the Church.*

A. D. 61.] Eph. 1. 10. That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; *even* in him: ²² And hath put all *things* under his feet, and gave him *to be* the head over all *things* to the church.

Eph. 4. 14. That we *henceforth* be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the sleight of men, *and* cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive; ¹⁵ But speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, which is the head, *even* Christ: ¹⁶ From whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by that which every joint supplieth, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the body unto the edifying of itself in love.

Eph. 5. 23. Christ is the head of the church: and he is the Saviour of the body.

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 18. And he is the head of the body, the church.

§ 193. *He is Greater than the Prophets, or Moses, or Abraham.*

A. D. 63.] Heb. 1. 1. God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets, ² Hath in these last days spoken unto us by *his* Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds.

Heb. 3. 1. Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus; ² Who was faithful to him that appointed him, as also Moses *was faithful* in all his house. ³ For this *man* was counted worthy of more glory than Moses, inasmuch as he who hath builded the house hath more honour

than the house. ⁴ For every house is builded by some *man*; but he that built all things *is* God. ⁵ And Moses verily *was* faithful in all his house as a servant, for a testimony of those things which were to be spoken after; ⁶ But Christ as a Son over his own house; whose house are we, if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 7. 1. For this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of the most high God, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings, and blessed him; ² To whom also Abraham gave a tenth part of all; first being by interpretation king of righteousness, and after that also King of Salem, which is, King of peace. ³ Without father, without mother, without descent, having neither beginning of days, nor end of life; but made like unto the Son of God; abideth a priest continually. ⁴ Now consider how great this man *was*, unto whom even the patriarch Abraham gave the tenth of the spoils. ⁵ And verily they that are of the sons of Levi, who received the office of the priesthood, have a commandment to take tithes of the people according to the law, that is, of their brethren, though they come out of the loins of Abraham: ⁶ But he whose descent is not counted from them received tithes of Abraham, and blessed him that had the promises. ⁷ And without all contradiction the less is blessed of the better. ⁸ And here men that die received tithes; but there he *receiveth them*, of whom it is witnessed that he liveth. ⁹ And as I may so say, Levi also, who receiveth tithes, paid tithes in Abraham. ¹⁰ For he was yet in the loins of his father, when Melchizedek met him. ¹¹ If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood, (for under it the people received the law,) what further need *was there* that another priest should rise after the order of Melchizedek, and not be called after the order of Aaron? ¹² For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law. ¹³ For he of whom these things are spoken pertaineth to another tribe, of which no man gave attendance at the altar. ¹⁴ For *it is* evident that our Lord sprang out of Judah; of which tribe Moses spake nothing concerning priesthood. ¹⁵ And it is yet far more evident: for that after the similitude of Melchizedek there ariseth another priest, ¹⁶ Who is made, not after the law of a carnal commandment, but after the power of an endless life. ¹⁷ For he testifieth, Thou *art* a priest forever after the order of Melchizedek. ¹⁸ For there is verily a disannulling of the commandment going before, for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof. ¹⁹ For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope *did*; by the which we draw nigh unto God. ²⁰ And inasmuch as not without an oath *he was made priest*: ²¹ (For those priests were made

without an oath; but this with an oath by him that said unto him, The Lord sware and will not repent, Thou *art* a priest for ever after the order of Melchizedek:) ²² By so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament.

§ 194. *He is Greater than the Angels.*

A. D. 63.] Heb. 1. 4. Being made so much better than the angels, as he hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they. ⁵ For unto which of the angels said he at any time, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee? And again, I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son? ⁶ And again, when he bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of God worship him. ⁷ And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire. ⁸ But unto the Son *he saith*, Thy throne, O God, *is* for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness *is* the sceptre of thy kingdom. ⁹ Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity: therefore God, *even* thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows. ¹⁰ And, Thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth: and the heavens are the works of thine hands: ¹¹ They shall perish, but thou remainest: and they all shall wax old as doth a garment; ¹² And as a vesture shalt thou fold them up, and they shall be changed: but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail. ¹³ But to which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool? ¹⁴ Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?

§ 195. *He is above all Creatures.*

A. D. 27.] John 3. 31. He that cometh from above is above all: he that is of the earth is earthly, and speaketh of the earth: he that cometh from heaven is above all.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 3. 22. Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 1. 19. And what *is* the exceeding greatness of his power to us-ward who believe, according to the working of his mighty power, ²⁰ Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set *him* at his own right hand in the heavenly *places*, ²¹ Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come: ²² And hath put all *things* under his feet, and gave him *to be* the head over all *things* to the church.

A. D. 62.] Phil. 2. 9. Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name: ¹⁰ That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of *things* in heaven, and *things* in earth, and *things* under the earth; ¹¹ And *that* every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ *is* Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

A. D. 62.] Col. 2. 10. And ye are complete in him, which is the head of all principality and power.

§ 196. *The Father is Greater than Christ.*

A. D. 29.] John 14. 28. Ye have heard how I said unto you, I go away, and come *again* unto you. If ye loved me, ye would rejoice, because I said, I go unto the Father: for my Father is greater than I.

§ 197. *God is the Head of Christ.*

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 3. 23. And ye are Christ's: and Christ *is* God's.

1 Cor. 11. 3. But I would have you know, that the head of every man is Christ; and the head of the woman *is* the man; and the head of Christ *is* God.

§ 198. *He proceeded from the Father and returned to him.*

A. D. 29.] John 8. 42. Jesus said unto them, If God were your Father, ye would love me: for I proceeded forth and came from God; neither came I of myself, but he sent me.

John 16. 5. But now I go my way to him that sent me; and none of you asketh me, Whither goest thou? ¹⁶ A little while, and ye shall not see me: and again, a little while, and ye shall see me, because I go to the Father. ²⁷ For the Father himself loveth you, because ye have loved me, and have believed that I came out from God. ²⁸ I came forth from the Father, and am come into the world: again, I leave the world, and go to the Father.

§ 199. *He came from Heaven.*

A. D. 27.] John 3. 13. And no man hath ascended up to heaven, but he that came down from heaven, *even* the Son of man which is in heaven. ³¹ He that cometh from above is above all: he that is of the earth is earthly, and speaketh of the earth: he that cometh from heaven is above all.

John 6. 38. For I came down from heaven, not to do mine own will, but the will of him that sent me. ⁶¹ I am the living bread which came down from heaven: ⁶² *What* and if ye shall see the Son of man ascend up where he was before?

A. D. 27.] John 8. 23. And he said unto them, Ye are from beneath: I am from above: ye are of this world; I am not of this world.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 15. 47. The first man *is* of the earth, earthy: the second man *is* the Lord from heaven.

§ 200. *He came in the Father's name.*

A. D. 29.] John 5. 43. I am come in my Father's name, and ye receive me not: if another shall come in his own name, him ye will receive.

§ 201. *He should be honoured even as the Father.*

A. D. 29.] John 5. 22. For the Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment unto the Son: ²³ That all *men* should honour the Son, even as they honour the Father. He that honoureth not the Son honoureth not the Father which hath sent him.

§ 202. *He is honoured by the Father.*

A. D. 29.] John 8. 54. Jesus answered, If I honour myself, my honour is nothing: it is my Father that honoureth me; of whom ye say that he is your God.

John 17. 1. These words spake Jesus, and lifted up his eyes to heaven, and said, Father, the hour is come; glorify thy Son, that thy Son also may glorify thee.

Acts 3. 13. The God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob, the God of our fathers, hath glorified his Son Jesus, whom ye delivered up, and denied him in the presence of Pilate, when he was determined to let *him* go.

§ 203. *He is the Author of eternal Salvation and Faith.*

A. D. 30.] Acts 5. 31. Him hath God exalted with his right hand *to be* a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 2. 10. For it became him, for whom *are* all things, and by whom *are* all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings.

Heb. 5. 9. And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him.

Heb. 12. 2. Jesus, the author and finisher of our faith.

§ 204. *He has Life in himself—given by the Father.*

A. p. 21.] John 1. 4. In him was life; and the life was the light of men.

A. D. 21.] John 5. 26. For as the Father hath life in himself; so hath he given to the Son to have life in himself.

1 John 5. 11. And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. ¹² He that hath the Son hath life; *and* he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.

§ 205. *He is Life.*

A. D. 29.] John 11. 25. Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live.

John 14. 6. Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 4. When Christ, *who* is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

§ 206. *He has the words of eternal life.*

A. D. 29.] John 6. 68. Then Simon Peter answered him, Lord, to whom shall we go? thou hast the words of eternal life.

§ 207. *He gives eternal life.*

A. D. 29.] John 10. 27. My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me: ²⁸ And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any pluck them out of my hand.

John 17. 2. As thou hast given him power over all flesh, that he should give eternal life to as many as thou hast given him.

§ 208. *He quickeneth whom He will.*

A. D. 29.] John 5. 21. For as the Father raiseth up the dead, and quickeneth *them*; even so the Son quickeneth whom he will.

§ 209. *In Him is the fulness of God.*

B. C. 4.] John 1. 14. And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth.

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 19. For it pleased *the Father* that in him should all fulness dwell.

Col. 2. 3. In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge. ⁹ For in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily.

§ 210. *He is the Image of God.*

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 4. 3. But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost: ⁴ In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 15. Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 1. 3. Who being the brightness of *his* glory, and the express image of his person.

§ 211. *He is called Elohim* [God.]*

B. C. 1044.] Psal. 45. 6. Thy throne, O God, [Elohim,] *is* for ever and ever: the sceptre of thy kingdom *is* a right sceptre.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 1. 8. Unto the Son *he saith*, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness *is* the sceptre of thy kingdom. ⁹ Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore God, *even* thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.

§ 212. *He is called Adonai* [Lord.]*

B. C. 1044.] Psal. 110. 1. The LORD [Jehovah] said unto my Lord, [Adonai,] Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 22. 41. Jesus asked them, ⁴² Saying, What think ye of Christ? whose son is he? They say unto him, *The son* of David. ⁴³ He saith unto them, How then doth David in Spirit call him Lord, saying, ⁴⁴ The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, till I make thine enemies thy footstool? ⁴⁵ If David then call him Lord, how is he his son?

§ 213. *He is called Jehovah* [Lord.]*

B. C. 759.] Isa. 6. 1. In the year that king Uzziah died, I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple. ² Above it stood the sera-

* The words Elohim, Adonai, and Jehovah have each a meaning, and are descriptive of the beings to whom they are applied. Elohim and Adonai are applied to men and angels, though generally belonging to the Deity. Jehovah is descriptive only of Deity, and is therefore the incommunicable name. Inasmuch as the FULLNESS OF THE GODHEAD dwells in Jesus Christ the Son, and he is the EXPRESS IMAGE of the Father, any word descriptive of the Father (excepting only the appellation Father) is necessarily descriptive of the Son, and so belongs to him.

phim: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly. ³ And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, *is* the LORD [Jehovah] of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory. ⁵ Then said I, *Wo is me!* for I am undone; because I *am* a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the king, the LORD [Jehovah] of hosts. ⁸ Also I heard the voice of the LORD [Jehovah] saying, Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then said I, Here *am* I; send me. ⁹ And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear ye indeed, but understand not; and see ye indeed, but perceive not. ¹⁰ Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.

A. D. 29.] John 12. 37. But though he had done so many miracles before them, yet they believed not on him: ³⁸ That the saying of Esaias the prophet might be fulfilled, which he spake, Lord, who hath believed our report? and to whom hath the arm of the Lord been revealed? ³⁹ Therefore they could not believe, because that Esaias said again, ⁴⁰ He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their heart; that they should not see with *their* eyes, nor understand with *their* heart, and be converted, and I should heal them. ⁴¹ These things said Esaias when he saw his glory, and spake of him.

§ 214. *Whoever sees Christ sees the Father.*

A. D. 29.] John 12. 45. And he that seeth me seeth him that sent me.

John 14. 8. Philip saith unto him, Lord, show us the Father, and it sufficeth us. ⁹ Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou *then*, Show us the Father?

§ 215. *In Him God is with us Manifested in the Flesh.*

B. C. 742.] Isa. 7. 14. Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

B. C. 4.] Matt. 1. 22. Now all this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying, ²³ Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 3. 16. And, without controversy, great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, jus-

tified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory.

§ 216. *He is in the Father and abides in His Love.*

A. D. 29.] John 10. 38. The Father *is* in me, and I in him.

John 14. 11. Believe me that I *am* in the Father, and the Father in me.

John 15. 10. If ye keep my commandments, ye shall abide in my love; even as I have kept my Father's commandments, and abide in his love.

John 17. 21. That they all may be one; as thou, Father, *art* in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us: that the world may believe that thou hast sent me.

§ 217. *God is in Christ doing the Works and Reconciling the World to Himself.*

A. D. 29.] John 10. 37. If I do not the works of my Father, believe me not. ³⁸ But if I do, though ye believe not me, believe the works; that ye may know, and believe, that the Father *is* in me, and I in him.

John 14. 10. Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works. ¹¹ Believe me that I *am* in the Father, and the Father in me: or else believe me for the very works' sake.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 5. 19. God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself,

§ 218. *He and the Father are One, as his Disciples who abide in Him are One.*

A. D. 29.] John 10. 30. I and *my* Father are one.

John 17. 11. Holy Father, keep through thine own name those whom thou hast given me, that they may be one, as we *are*: ²⁰ Neither pray I for these alone, but for them also which shall believe on me through their word; ²¹ That they all may be one; as thou, Father, *art* in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us: that the world may believe thou hast sent me. ²² And the glory which thou gavest me I have given them; that they may be one, even as we are one.

§ 219. *By Him God Created all Things.*

B. C. 1015.] Psal. 33. 6. By the word of the Lord were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth.

B. C. 4.] John 1. 1. In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. ³ All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made. ¹⁰ He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 3. 9. God, who created all things by Jesus Christ.

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 16. For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether *they be* thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 1. 1. God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets, ² Hath in these last days spoken unto us by *his* Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds. ⁸ But unto the Son *he saith*, Thy throne, O God, *is* for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness *is* the sceptre of thy kingdom. ⁹ Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore God, *even* thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows. ¹⁰ And, thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth: and the heavens are the works of thine hands.

§ 220. *By Him all things Consist and are Upheld.*

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 17. And he is before all things, and by him all things consist.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 1. 3. Upholding all things by the word of his power.

§ 221. *He is exalted to the right hand of the Throne of God.*

B. C. 1044.] Psal. 110. 1. The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 52. 13. Behold, my servant shall deal prudently, he shall be exalted and extolled, and be very high.

A. D. 29.] Mark 16. 19. So then, after the Lord had spoken unto them, he was received up into heaven, and sat on the right hand of God.

A. D. 31.] Acts 7. 55. But he, being full of the Holy Ghost, looked up steadfastly into heaven, and saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing on the right hand of God. ⁵⁶ And said, Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man standing on the right hand of God.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 3. 22. Who is gone into heaven, and is on

the right hand of God: angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 1. 20. Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set *him* at his own right hand in the heavenly *places*.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 1. If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 1. 3. Who being the brightness of *his* glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high.

Heb. 8. 1. Now of the things which we have spoken *this is* the sum: We have such a high priest, who is set on the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens.

Heb. 10. 12. But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God.

Heb. 12. 2. Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of *our* faith; who, for the joy that was set before him, endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 3. 21. To him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne, even as I also overcame, and am set down with my Father in his throne.

§ 222. *He is Lord and Master.*

B. C. 4.] Luke 2. 11. For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 23. 10. Neither be ye called masters: for one is your Master, *even* Christ.

John 13. 13. Ye call me Master and Lord: and ye say well; for *so* I am. ¹⁴If I then, *your* Lord and Master, have washed your feet; ye also ought to wash one another's feet.

A. D. 31.] Acts 10. 36. The word which *God* sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all.)

A. D. 62.] Phil. 2. 11. And *that* every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ *is* Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

§ 223. *He is King.*

B. C. 587.] Zech. 9. 9. Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem; behold, thy King cometh unto thee; he *is* just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass.

A. D. 29.] John 12. 12. On the next day much people that were come to the feast, when they heard that Jesus was com-

ing to Jerusalem, ¹³Took branches of palm trees, and went forth to meet him, and cried, Hosanna! Blessed *is* the King of Israel that cometh in the name of the Lord. ¹⁴And Jesus, when he had found a young ass, sat thereon; as it is written, ¹⁵Fear not, daughter of Zion: behold, thy King cometh, sitting on an ass's colt. ¹⁶These things understood not his disciples at the first: but when Jesus was glorified, then remembered they that these things were written of him, and *that* they had done these things unto him.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 25. 31. When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory. ³⁴Then shall the King say unto them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.

John 18. 37. Pilate therefore said unto him, Art thou a king then? Jesus answered, Thou sayest that I am a king. To this end was I born, and for this cause came I into the world, that I should bear witness unto the truth. Every one that is of the truth heareth my voice.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 17. 14. These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him *are* called, and chosen, and faithful.

§ 224. *His Kingdom is not of [from] this World.*

A. D. 21.] John 18. 33. Then Pilate entered into the judgment hall again, and called Jesus, and said unto him, Art thou the King of the Jews? ³⁶Jesus answered, My kingdom is not of this world: if my kingdom were of this world, then would my servants fight, that I should not be delivered to the Jews: but now is my kingdom not from hence.

§ 225. *His Kingdom shall have no End.*

B. C. 740.] Isa. 9. 7. Of the increase of *his* government and peace *there shall be* no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice, from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this.

B. C. 755.] Dan. 7. 13. I saw in the night visions, and, behold, *one* like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him. ¹⁴And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion *is* an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom *that* which shall not be destroyed.

A. D. 4.] Luke 1. 33. And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever: and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

§ 226. *In the end he shall deliver up the kingdom to God the Father, and be himself subject, that God may be all in all.*

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 15. 22. For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive. ²³ But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ's at his coming. ²⁴ Then *cometh* the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule, and all authority and power. ²⁵ For he must reign, till he hath put all enemies under his feet. ²⁶ The last enemy *that* shall be destroyed *is* death. ²⁷ For he hath put all things under his feet. But when he saith, All things are put under *him*, *it is* manifest that he is excepted, which did put all things under him. ²⁸ And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also himself be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in all.

§ 227. *Jesus Christ, "the Son," is fully known and comprehended only by the Father.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 11. 27. No man knoweth the Son, but the Father.

CHAPTER III.

THE HOLY GHOST.

§ 228. *The Holy Spirit proceeds from the Father.*

A. D. 29.] John 15. 26. But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, *even* the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me.

§ 229. *The Holy Spirit is given by the Father.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 44. 3. For I will pour water upon him that is thirsty, and floods upon the dry ground: I will pour my Spirit upon thy seed, and my blessing upon thine offspring.

Isa. 59. 20. And the Redeemer shall come to Zion, and unto them that turn from transgression in Jacob, saith the Lord. ²¹ As for me, this *is* my covenant with them, saith the Lord; My Spirit that *is* upon thee, and my words which I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the Lord, from henceforth and for ever.

B. C. 445.] Neh. 9. 20. Thou gavest also thy good Spirit to instruct them, and withheldest not thy manna from their mouth, and gavest them water for their thirst.

A. D. 29.] Luke 11. 13. If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children; how much more shall *your* heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?

John 14. 16. And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever; ¹⁷ *Even* the Spirit of truth.

A. D. 30.] Acts 5. 32. The Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 4. 6. And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.

1 Thess. 4. 8. He therefore that despiseth, despiseth not man, but God, who hath also given unto us his Holy Spirit.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 5. 5. Now he that hath wrought us for the selfsame thing *is* God, who also hath given unto us the earnest of the Spirit.

A. D. 61.] Ephes. 1. 17. That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him.

§ 230. *The Holy Spirit is given by the Father in answer to the prayer of Jesus Christ.*

A. D. 29.] John 14. 15. If ye love me, keep my commandments. ¹⁶ And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever. ²⁶ But the Comforter, *which is* the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

§ 231. *The Holy Spirit is sent by Jesus Christ.*

A. D. 27.] John 1. 33. He which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost.

A. D. 21.] John 15. 26. But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, *even* the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me.

John 16. 7. I will send him unto you.

A. D. 29.] Luke 24. 49. And, behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high.

§ 232. *The Holy Spirit inspired the Prophets and Apostles.*

B. C. 1490.] Num. 11. 25. And the Lord came down in a cloud, and spake unto him, and took of the spirit that *was* upon him, and gave *it* unto the seventy elders: and it came to pass, that, when the spirit rested upon them, they prophesied, and did not cease.

B. C. 1451.] Num. 24. 2. And Balaam lifted up his eyes, and he saw Israel abiding *in his tents* according to their tribes; and the Spirit of God came upon him. ³ And he took up his parable, and said, Balaam the son of Beor hath said, and the man whose eyes are open hath said: ⁴ He hath said, *which* heard the words of God, which saw the vision of the Almighty, falling *into a trance*, but having his eyes open.

B. C. 1018.] 2 Sam. 23. 1. Now these *be* the last words of David. David the son of Jesse said, and the man *who was* raised up on high, the anointed of the God of Jacob, and the sweet psalmist of Israel, said, ² The Spirit of the Lord spake by me, and his word *was* in my tongue.

B. C. 896.] 2 Chron. 20. 14. Then upon Jahaziel... came the Spirit of the Lord in the midst of the congregation; ¹⁵ And he said, Harken ye, all Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem, and thou king Jehoshaphat, Thus saith the Lord unto you,

Be not afraid nor dismayed by reason of this great multitude; for the battle *is* not yours, but God's.

B. c. 710.] Micah 3. 8. But truly I am full of power by the Spirit of the Lord, and of judgment, and of might, to declare unto Jacob his transgression, and to Israel his sin.

B. c. 595.] Ezek. 2. 2. And the spirit entered into me when he spake unto me, and set me upon my feet, that I heard him that spake unto me.

Ezek. 3. 14. So the spirit lifted me up, and took me away, and I went in bitterness, in the heat of my spirit; but the hand of the Lord was strong upon me.

B. c. 594.] Ezek. 11. 5. And the Spirit of the Lord fell upon me, and said unto me, Speak; Thus saith the Lord; Thus have ye said, O house of Israel: for I know the things that come into your mind *every one* of them.

B. c. 518.] Zech. 7. 12. Yea, they made their hearts *as* an adamant stone, lest they should hear the law, and the words which the Lord of hosts hath sent in his spirit by the former prophets: therefore came a great wrath from the Lord of hosts.

B. c. 4.] Luke 1. 13. But the angel said unto him, Fear not, Zacharias: for thy prayer is heard; and thy wife Elisabeth shall bear thee a son, and thou shalt call his name John. ¹⁵ For he shall be great in the sight of the Lord, and shall drink neither wine nor strong drink; and he shall be filled with the Holy Ghost, even from his mother's womb. ⁴¹ And Elisabeth was filled with the Holy Ghost: ⁴² And she spake out with a loud voice, and said, Blessed *art* thou among women, and blessed *is* the fruit of thy womb. ⁶⁷ And his father Zacharias was filled with the Holy Ghost, and prophesied, saying, ⁷⁶ And thou, child, shalt be called the prophet of the Highest: for thou shalt go before the face of the Lord to prepare his ways.

Luke 2. 25. And, behold, there was a man in Jerusalem, whose name *was* Simeon; and the same man *was* just and devout, waiting for the consolation of Israel: and the Holy Ghost was upon him. ²⁶ And it was revealed unto him by the Holy Ghost, that he should not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ. ²⁷ And he came by the Spirit into the temple: and when the parents brought in the child Jesus, to do for him after the custom of the law, ²⁸ Then took he him up in his arms, and blessed God.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 22. 43. He saith unto them, How then doth David in spirit call him Lord?

Acts 1. 16. Men *and* brethren, this scripture must needs have been fulfilled, which the Holy Ghost by the mouth of David spake before concerning Judas, which was guide to them that took Jesus.

A. D. 43.] Acts 11. 27. And in these days came prophets from Jerusalem unto Antioch. ²⁸ And there stood up one of them named Agabus, and signified by the Spirit that there should be great dearth throughout all the world: which came to pass in the days of Claudius Cesar.

A. D. 60.] Acts 21. 11. And when he was come unto us, he took Paul's girdle, and bound his own hands and feet, and said, Thus saith the Holy Ghost, So shall the Jews at Jerusalem bind the man that owneth this girdle, and shall deliver *him* into the hands of the Gentiles.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 12. 8. For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom; to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 1. 10. Of which salvation the prophets have inquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace *that should come* unto you: ¹¹ Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow. ¹² Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us they did minister the things, which are now reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into.

2 Pet. 1. 21. For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake *as they were* moved by the Holy Ghost.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 3. 2. If ye have heard of the dispensation of the grace of God which is given me to you-ward: ³ How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery; as I wrote afore in few words; ⁴ Whereby, when ye read, ye may understand my knowledge in the mystery of Christ; ⁵ Which in other ages was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit; ⁷ Whereof I was made a minister, according to the gift of the grace of God given unto me by the effectual working of his power.

A. D. 63.] Acts 28. 25. And when they agreed not among themselves, they departed, after that Paul had spoken one word, Well spake the Holy Ghost by Esaias the prophet unto our fathers.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 4. 1. Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 1. 10. I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day.

§ 233. *The Holy Spirit begat Jesus Christ.*

B. c. 4.] Luke 1. 30. And the angel said unto her, Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God. ³¹ And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name JESUS. ³² He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest; and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David. ³⁴ Then said Mary unto the angel, How shall this be, seeing I know not a man? ³⁵ And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.

Matt. 1. 18. Now the birth of Jesus Christ was on this wise: When as his mother Mary was espoused to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Ghost. ¹⁹ Then Joseph her husband, being a just *man*, and not willing to make her a public example, was minded to put her away privily. ²⁰ But while he thought on these things, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a dream, saying, Joseph, thou son of David, fear not to take unto thee Mary thy wife: for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Ghost.

§ 234. *The Holy Spirit given to Jesus Christ.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 3. 16. And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him.

John 1. 32. And John bare record, saying, I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon him. ³³ And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost.

John 3. 34. For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God: for God giveth not the Spirit by measure unto him.

A. D. 31.] Acts x. 38. How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power.

§ 235. *By the Holy Spirit Jesus Christ had Wisdom, Understanding, and Knowledge.*

B. c. 713.] Isa. 11. 2. And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear

of the Lord; ³ And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears: ⁴ But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 42. 1. Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, *in whom* my soul delighteth; I have put my Spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.

§ 236. *By the Holy Spirit Jesus Christ was led through temptation.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 4. 1. Then was Jesus led up of the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil. ² And when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, he was afterward ahungered. ³ And when the tempter came to him, he said, If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread. ⁴ But he answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God. ⁵ Then the devil taketh him up into the holy city, and setteth him on a pinnacle of the temple, ⁶ And saith unto him, If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down: for it is written, He shall give his angels charge concerning thee: and in *their* hands they shall bear thee up, lest at any time thou dash thy foot against a stone. ⁷ Jesus said unto him, It is written again, Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God. ⁸ Again, the devil taketh him up into an exceeding high mountain, and showeth him all the kingdoms of the world, and the glory of them; ⁹ And saith unto him, All these things will I give thee, if thou wilt fall down and worship me. ¹⁰ Then said Jesus unto him, Get thee hence, Satan: for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve. ¹¹ Then the devil leaveth him, and, behold, angels came and ministered unto him.

§ 237. *By the Holy Spirit Jesus Christ cast out Devils.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 12. 28. But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God is come unto you.

§ 238. *The Holy Spirit led Jesus Christ in his Ministry.*

B. c. 712.] Isa. 61. 1. The Spirit of the Lord God *is* upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the broken-hearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to *them that are* bound; ² To proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord, and the day of vengeance of our

God; to comfort all that mourn; ³ To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called Trees of righteousness, The planting of the Lord, that he might be glorified.

A. D. 27.] Luke 4. 16. And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the Sabbath day and stood up for to read. ¹⁷ And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written, ¹⁸ The Spirit of the Lord *is* upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised, ¹⁹ To preach the acceptable year of the Lord. ²⁰ And he closed the book, and he gave *it* again to the minister, and sat down. And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on him. ²¹ And he began to say unto them, This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 3. 18. Quickened by the Spirit: ¹⁹ By which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison.

§ 239. *Through the Holy Spirit Jesus Christ offered Himself to God.*

A. D. 63.] Heb. 9. 14. How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

§ 240. *Through the Holy Spirit Jesus Christ gave commandments unto the Apostles.*

A. D. 29.] Acts 1. 2. Until the day in which he was taken up, after that he through the Holy Ghost had given commandments unto the apostles whom he had-chosen.

§ 241. *The Holy Spirit witnesses for Jesus Christ.*

A. D. 29.] John 15. 26. But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, *even* the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me.

A. D. 30.] Acts 5. 32. And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 1. 4. And declared *to be* the Son of God

with power, according to the Spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 10. 15. *Whereof* the Holy Ghost also is a witness to us.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 5. 6. And it is the Spirit that beareth witness, because the Spirit is truth. ⁷ For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. ⁹ If we receive the witness of men, the witness of God is greater: for this is the witness of God which he hath testified of his Son.

§ 242. *The Holy Spirit taught the Apostles.*

A. D. 52.] Acts 15. 28. For it seemed good to the Holy Ghost, and to us, to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things.

Gal. 1. 11. But I certify you, brethren, that the gospel which was preached of me is not after man. ¹² For I neither received it of man, neither was I taught *it*, but by the revelation of Jesus Christ. ¹⁵ But when it pleased God, who separated me from my mother's womb, and called *me* by his grace, ¹⁶ To reveal his Son in me, that I might preach him among the heathen; immediately I conferred not with flesh and blood: ¹⁷ Neither went I up to Jerusalem to them which were apostles before me; but I went unto Arabia, and returned again unto Damascus. ¹⁸ Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to see Peter, and abode with him fifteen days. ¹⁹ But other of the apostles saw I none, save James the Lord's brother.

Gal. 2. 1. Then fourteen years after, I went up again to Jerusalem with Barnabas, and took Titus with *me* also. ² And I went up by revelation, and communicated unto them that gospel which I preach among the Gentiles. ⁶ For they who seemed *to be somewhat* in conference added nothing to me: ⁷ But contrariwise, when they saw that the gospel of the uncircumcision was committed unto me, as *the gospel* of the circumcision *was* unto Peter. ⁸ (For he that wrought effectually in Peter to the apostleship of the circumcision, the same was mighty in me toward the Gentiles.)

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 2. 9. But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him. ¹⁰ But God hath revealed *them* unto us by his Spirit. ¹³ Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 1. 12. Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us they did minister the things,

which are now reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 2. 19. Now therefore ye are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellow citizens with the saints, and of the household of God. ²⁰ And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner *stone*. ²² In whom ye also are builded together for a habitation of God through the Spirit.

Eph. 3. 2. If ye have heard of the dispensation of the grace of God which is given me to you-ward: ³ How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery; as I wrote afore in few words; ⁴ Whereby, when ye read, ye may understand my knowledge in the mystery of Christ, ⁵ Which in other ages was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit.

§ 243. *The Holy Spirit Guides Ministers in determining where to Preach the Gospel.*

A. D. 34.] Acts 8. 26. And the angel of the Lord spake unto Philip, saying, Arise, and go toward the south, unto the way that goeth down from Jerusalem unto Gaza, which is desert. ²⁹ Then the Spirit said unto Philip, Go near, and join thyself to this chariot.

A. D. 45.] Acts 13. 2. As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them. ⁴ So they, being sent forth by the Holy Ghost, departed unto Seleucia; and from thence they sailed to Cyprus.

A. D. 53.] Acts 16. 6. Now when they had gone throughout Phrygia and the region of Galatia, and were forbidden of the Holy Ghost to preach the word in Asia, ⁷ After they were come to Mysia, they assayed to go into Bithynia: but the Spirit suffered them not. ⁸ And they passing by Mysia came down to Troas. ⁹ And a vision appeared to Paul in the night; There stood a man of Macedonia, and prayed him, saying, Come over into Macedonia, and help us. ¹⁰ And after he had seen the vision, immediately we endeavoured to go into Macedonia, assuredly gathering that the Lord had called us for to preach the gospel unto them.

A. D. 59.] Acts 19. 21. After these things were ended, Paul purposed in the spirit, when he had passed through Macedonia and Achaia, to go to Jerusalem, saying, After I have been there, I must also see Rome.

A. D. 60.] Acts 20. 22. And now, behold, I go bound in the spirit unto Jerusalem, not knowing the things that shall be-

fall me there: ²³ Save that the Holy Ghost witnesseth in every city, saying that bonds and afflictions abide me.

§ 244. *The Holy Spirit is Given to all Disciples.*

A. D. 29.] Acts 2. 4. And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance. ³⁸ Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. ³⁹ For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call.

Acts 4. 31. And when they had prayed, the place was shaken where they were assembled together; and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they spake the word of God with boldness.

A. D. 32.] Acts 8. 14. Now when the apostles which were at Jerusalem heard that Samaria had received the word of God, they sent unto them Peter and John: ¹⁵ Who, when they were come down, prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Ghost: ¹⁶ For as yet he was fallen upon none of them: only they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. ¹⁷ Then laid they *their* hands on them, and they received the Holy Ghost.

Acts 10. 44. While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word. ⁴⁵ And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost. ⁴⁶ For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter, ⁴⁷ Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?

A. D. 42.] Acts 11. 15. And as I began to speak, the Holy Ghost fell on them, as on us at the beginning. ¹⁶ Then remembered I the word of the Lord, how that he said, John indeed baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost.

A. D. 43.] Acts 11. 22. And they sent forth Barnabas, that he should go as far as Antioch. ²⁴ For he was a good man, and full of the Holy Ghost and of faith: and much people was added unto the Lord.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 4. 6. And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.

1 Thess. 4. 8. He therefore that despiseth, despiseth not man, but God, who hath also given unto us his Holy Spirit.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 3. 16. Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and *that* the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?

1 Cor. 6. 19. What! know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost *which is* in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?

A. D. 69.] 1 John 3. 24. And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us.

1 John 4. 13. Hereby know we that we dwell in him, and he in us, because he hath given us of his Spirit.

§ 245. *The Holy Spirit brings to remembrance the word of God, assists to understand it, and guides in speaking it.*

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 1. 23. Turn you at my reproof: behold, I will pour out my spirit unto you, I will make known my words unto you.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 59. 21. As for me, this *is* my covenant with them, saith the Lord; My Spirit that *is* upon thee, and my words which I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the Lord, from henceforth and for ever.

A. D. 29.] Luke 12. 11. And when they bring you unto the synagogues, and *unto* magistrates, and powers, take ye no thought how or what thing ye shall answer, or what ye shall say, ¹² For the Holy Ghost shall teach you in the same hour what ye ought to say.

Luke 21. 14. Settle *it* therefore in your hearts, not to meditate before what ye shall answer: ¹⁵ For I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist.

John 7. 38. He that believeth on me, as the Scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water. ³⁹ But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet *given*: because that Jesus was not yet glorified.

John 14. 26. But the Comforter, *which is* the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

Luke 16. 13. Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will show you things to come.

Acts 4. 1. And as they spake unto the people, the priests, and the captain of the temple, and the Sadducees, came upon them. ² Being grieved that they taught the people, and

preached through Jesus the resurrection from the dead. ⁵ And they laid hands on them, and put *them* in hold unto the next day: for it was now eventide. ⁷ And when they had set them in the midst, they asked, By what power, or by what name, have ye done this? ⁸ Then Peter, filled with the Holy Ghost, said unto them, Ye rulers of the people, and elders of Israel. ³¹ And when they had prayed, the place was shaken where they were assembled together, and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they spake the word of God with boldness. ³³ And with great power gave the apostles witness of the resurrection of the Lord Jesus: and great grace was upon them all.

A. D. 31.] Acts 6. 8. And Stephen, full of faith and power, did great wonders and miracles among the people. ¹⁰ And they were not able to resist the wisdom and the spirit by which he spake.

Acts 7. 55. But he, being full of the Holy Ghost, looked up steadfastly into heaven, and saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing on the right hand of God, ⁵⁶ And said, Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man standing on the right hand of God.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 2. 12. Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. ¹³ Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.

§ 246. *The Holy Spirit convinces of Sin, Righteousness, and Judgment.*

A. D. 29.] John 16. 8. And when he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment: ⁹ Of sin, because they believe not on me; ¹⁰ Of righteousness, because I go to my Father, and ye see me no more; ¹¹ Of judgment, because the prince of this world is judged.

§ 247. *The Holy Spirit quickens, regenerates, and frees from the law of sin and death.*

A. D. 27.] John 3. 5. Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. ⁶ That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. ⁸ The wind bloweth where it listeth, and thou hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell whence it cometh, and whither it goeth: so is every one that is born of the Spirit.

A. D. 27.] John 6. 63. It is the Spirit that quickeneth; the flesh profiteth nothing: the words that I speak unto you, *they* are spirit, and *they* are life.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 3. 6. The spirit giveth life.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 8. 2. For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 4. 6. For, for this cause was the gospel preached also to them that are dead, that they might be judged according to men in the flesh, but live according to God in the spirit.

A. D. 65.] Titus 3. 5. Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost.

§ 248. *The Holy Spirit, dwelling in the Heart, gives assurance to Believers that they are Children and Heirs of God.*

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 1. 21. Now he which establisheth us with you in Christ, and hath anointed us, *is* God; ²² Who hath sealed us, and given the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts.

2 Cor. 5. 5. Now he that hath wrought us for the self-same thing *is* God, who also hath given unto us the earnest of the Spirit. ⁶ Therefore *we are* always confident.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 8. 9. Ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. ¹⁴ For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God. ¹⁵ For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. ¹⁶ The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: ¹⁷ And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint heirs with Christ.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 1. 13. In whom also, after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that Holy Spirit of promise. ¹⁴ Which is the earnest of our inheritance, until the redemption of the purchased possession.

§ 249. *The Holy Spirit Sanctifies.*

A. D. 52.] 2 Thess. 2. 13. God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit, and belief of the truth.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 15. 16. That the offering up of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Ghost.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 1. 2. Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace unto you, and peace, be multiplied.

§ 250. *The Holy Spirit strengthens and builds up the Believer.*

A. D. 52.] Gal. 5. 22. But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, ²³ Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 3. 18. But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory; *even* as by the Spirit of the Lord.

2 Cor. 4. 13. We having the same spirit of faith, according as it is written, I believed, and therefore have I spoken; we also believe, and therefore speak.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 14. 17. For the kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost.

Rom. 15. 13. Now the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing, that ye may abound in hope through the power of the Holy Ghost.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 2. 18. For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father. ²⁰ And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner *stone*. ²² In whom ye also are builded together for a habitation of God through the Spirit.

Eph. 3. 16. That he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man; ¹⁷ That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that ye, being rooted and grounded in love, ¹⁸ May be able to comprehend with all saints, what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height; ¹⁹ And to know the love of Christ, which passeth knowledge, that ye might be filled with all the fulness of God. ²⁰ Now unto him that is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think, according to the power that worketh in us, ²¹ Unto him *be* glory in the church by Christ Jesus, throughout all ages, world without end. Amen.

§ 251. *The Holy Spirit prompts and helps the Believer in Prayer.*

B. C. 587.] Zech. 12. 10. And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 8. 26. Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered. ²⁷ And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what *is* the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to *the will of* God.

Eph. 6. 18. Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints.

§ 252. *The Holy Spirit teaches and leads the Believer.*

A. D. 29.] John 14. 26. But the Comforter, *which is* the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

John 16. 13. Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will show you things to come.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 5. 18. But if ye be led of the Spirit, ye are not under the law.

Rom. 8. 14. For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.

§ 253. *The Holy Spirit gives different talents to different men.*

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 12. 4. Now there are diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit. ⁵ And there are differences of administrations, but the same Lord. ⁶ And there are diversities of operations, but it is the same God which worketh all in all. ⁷ But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal. ⁸ For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom; to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit; ⁹ To another faith by the same Spirit; to another the gifts of healing by the same Spirit; ¹⁰ To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another *divers* kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues: ¹¹ But all these worketh that one and the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as he will. ¹² For as the body is one, and hath many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body: so also *is* Christ. ¹³ For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether *we be* Jews or Gentiles, whether *we be* bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit. ¹⁴ For the body is not one member, but many. ¹⁵ If

the foot shall say. Because I am not the hand, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? ¹⁶ And if the ear shall say, Because I am not the eye, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? ¹⁷ If the whole body *were* an eye, where *were* the hearing? If the whole *were* hearing, where *were* the smelling? ¹⁸ But now hath God set the members every one of them in the body, as it hath pleased him. ¹⁹ And if they were all one member, where *were* the body? ²⁰ But now *are they* many members, yet but one body. ²¹ And the eye cannot say unto the hand, I have no need of thee: nor again the head to the feet, I have no need of you. ²² Nay, much more those members of the body, which seem to be more feeble, are necessary. ²³ And those *members* of the body, which we think to be less honourable, upon these we bestow more abundant honour; and our uncomely *parts* have more abundant comeliness. ²⁴ For our comely *parts* have no need, but God hath tempered the body together, having given more abundant honour to that *part* which lacked. ²⁵ That there should be no schism in the body; but *that* the members should have the same care one for another. ²⁶ And whether one member suffer, all the members suffer with it; or one member be honoured, all the members rejoice with it. ²⁷ Now ye are the body of Christ, and members in particular. ²⁸ And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues. ²⁹ *Are* all apostles? *are* all prophets? *are* all teachers? *are* all workers of miracles? ³⁰ Have all the gifts of healing? do all speak with tongues? do all interpret? ³¹ But covet earnestly the best gifts.

§ 254. *The Holy Spirit is not known by the natural man.*

A. D. 29.] John 14. 17. *Even* the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.

1 Cor. 2. 14. But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God; for they are foolishness unto him; neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned.

§ 255. *Blasphemy against the Holy Ghost is not Forgiven.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 12. 31. Wherefore I say unto you, All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men: but the blasphemy *against* the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven unto

men. ³² And whosoever speaketh a word against the Son of man, it shall be forgiven him: but whosoever speaketh against the Holy Ghost, it shall not be forgiven him, neither in this world, neither in the *world* to come.

A. D. 29.] Mark 3. 29. But he that shall blaspheme against the Holy Ghost hath never forgiveness, but is in danger of eternal damnation: ³⁰ Because they said, He hath an unclean spirit.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 5. 16. If any man see his brother sin a sin *which is* not unto death, he shall ask, and he shall give him life for them that sin not unto death. There is a sin unto death: I do not say that he shall pray for it.

CHAPTER IV.

ANGELS.

§ 256. *They Worship God.*

B. C. 1034.] Psa. 103. 20. Bless the Lord, ye his angels, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word. ²¹ Bless ye the Lord, all *ye* his hosts; *ye* ministers of his, that do his pleasure.

B. C. 759:] Isa. 6. 1. In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple. ² Above it stood the seraphim: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly. ³ And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, *is* the Lord of hosts: the whole earth *is* full of his glory.

B. C. 555.] Dan. 7. 9. I beheld till the thrones were cast down, and the Ancient of days did sit, whose garment *was* white as snow, and the hair of his head like the pure wool: his throne *was* like the fiery flame, *and* his wheels *as* burning fire. ¹⁰ A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: thousand thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him: the judgment was set, and the books were opened.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 4. 8. And the four beasts had each of them six wings about *him*; and *they were* full of eyes within: and they rest not day and night, saying, Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come. ⁹ And when those beasts give glory and honour and thanks to him that sat on the throne, who liveth for ever and ever, ¹⁰ The four and twenty elders fall down before him that sat on the throne, and worship him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the throne, saying, ¹¹ Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.

Rev. 7. 9. After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed in white robes, and palms in their hands; ¹⁰ And cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our God which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb. ¹¹ And all the angels stood round about the throne, *and about* the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces,

and worshipped God, ¹² Saying, Amen: Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honour, and power, and might, *be* unto our God for ever and ever. Amen.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 19. 1. And after these things I heard a great voice of much people in heaven, saying, Alleluia; Salvation, and glory, and honour, and power, unto the Lord our God. ⁴ And the four and twenty elders and the four beasts fell down and worshipped God that sat on the throne, saying, Amen; Alleluia. ⁵ And a voice came out of the throne, saying, Praise our God, all ye his servants, and ye that fear him, both small and great.

§ 257. *Angels do the will of God, and are sent to encourage and help the Righteous.*

B. C. 1897.] Gen. 19. 1. And there came two angels to Sodom at even; and Lot sat in the gate of Sodom: and Lot seeing *them*, rose up to meet them; and he bowed himself with his face toward the ground; ² And he said, Behold now, my lords, turn in, I pray you, into your servant's house, and tarry all night, and wash your feet, and ye shall rise up early, and go on your ways. And they said, Nay; but we will abide in the street all night. ³ And he pressed upon them greatly; and they turned in unto him, and entered into his house; and he made them a feast, and did bake unleavened bread, and they did eat. ¹⁵ And when the morning arose, then the angels hastened Lot, saying, Arise, take thy wife, and thy two daughters, which are here; lest thou be consumed in the iniquity of the city. ¹⁶ And while he lingered, the men laid hold upon his hand, and upon the hand of his wife, and upon the hand of his two daughters; the Lord being merciful unto him: and they brought him forth, and set him without the city. ¹⁷ And it came to pass, when they had brought them forth abroad, that he said, Escape for thy life; look not behind thee, neither stay thou in all the plain; escape to the mountain, lest thou be consumed.

B. C. 1856.] Gen. 24. 7. The Lord God of heaven, which took me from my father's house, and from the land of my kindred, and which spake unto me, and that sware unto me, saying, Unto thy seed will I give this land; he shall send his angel before thee, and thou shalt take a wife unto my son from thence.

B. C. 1751.] Gen. 32. 1. And Jacob went on his way, and the angels of God met him. ² And when Jacob saw them, he said, This *is* God's host: and he called the name of that place Mahanaim.

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 14. 19. And the Angel of God, which went before the camp of Israel, removed and went behind them;

and the pillar of the cloud went from before their face, and stood behind them.

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 23. 20. Behold, I send an Angel before thee, to keep thee in the way, and to bring thee into the place which I have prepared. ²³ For mine Angel shall go before thee, and bring thee in unto the Amorites, and the Hittites, and the Perizzites, and the Canaanites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites; and I will cut them off.

B. c. 1452.] Num. 20. 16. And when we cried unto the Lord, he heard our voice, and sent an angel, and hath brought us forth out of Egypt.

B. c. 1060.] Psa. 34. 7. The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them.

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 91. 10. There shall no evil befall thee, neither shall any plague come nigh thy dwelling. ¹¹ For he shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways.

Psa. 104. 4. Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire.

B. c. 906.] 1 Kings 19. 1. And Ahab told Jezebel all that Elijah had done, and withal how he had slain all the prophets with the sword. ² Then Jezebel sent a messenger unto Elijah, saying, So let the gods do *to me*, and more also, if I make not thy life as the life of one of them by to-morrow about this time. ³ And when he saw *that*, he arose, and went for his life, and came to Beer-sheba, which *belongeth* to Judah, and left his servant there. ⁴ But he himself went a day's journey into the wilderness, and came and sat down under a juniper tree: and he requested for himself that he might die; and said, It is enough; now, O Lord, take away my life; for I *am* not better than my fathers. ⁵ And as he lay and slept under a juniper tree, behold, then an angel touched him, and said unto him, Arise and eat. ⁶ And he looked, and, behold, *there was* a cake baken on the coals, and a cruse of water at his head. And he did eat and drink, and laid him down again. ⁷ And the angel of the Lord came again the second time, and touched him, and said, Arise *and* eat; because the journey *is* too great for thee. ⁸ And he arose, and did eat and drink, and went in the strength of that meat forty days and forty nights unto Horeb the mount of God.

B. c. 537.] Dan. 6. 16. Then the king commanded, and they brought Daniel, and cast *him* into the den of lions. *Now* the king spake and said unto Daniel, Thy God whom thou servest continually, he will deliver thee. ¹⁹ Then the king arose very early in the morning, and went in haste unto the den of lions. ²⁰ And when he came to the den, he cried with a lamentable voice unto Daniel: *and* the king spake and said to Daniel, O Daniel, servant of the living God, is thy God, whom

thou servest continually, able to deliver thee from the lions ?
²¹ Then said Daniel unto the king, O king, live for ever. ²² My God hath sent his angel, and hath shut the lions' mouths, that they have not hurt me: forasmuch as before him innocency was found in me; and also before thee, O king, have I done no hurt.

B. c. 4.] Matt. 2. 13. And when they were departed, behold, the angel of the Lord appeareth to Joseph in a dream, saying, Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and flee into Egypt, and be thou there until I bring thee word: for Herod will seek the young child to destroy him. ¹⁹ But when Herod was dead, behold, an angel of the Lord appeareth in a dream to Joseph in Egypt, ²⁰ Saying, Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and go into the land of Israel: for they are dead which sought the young child's life.

A. D. 30.] Acts 5. 18. And laid their hands on the apostles, and put them in the common prison. ¹⁹ But the angel of the Lord by night opened the prison doors, and brought them forth, and said, ²⁰ Go, stand and speak in the temple to the people all the words of this life.

A. D. 31.] Acts 10. 1. There was a certain man in Cesarea, called Cornelius, a centurion of the band called the Italian band, ² A devout man, and one that feared God with all his house, which gave much alms to the people, and prayed to God always. ³ He saw in a vision evidently, about the ninth hour of the day, an angel of God coming in to him, and saying unto him, Cornelius. ⁴ And when he looked on him, he was afraid, and said, What is it, Lord? And he said unto him, Thy prayers and thine alms are come up for a memorial before God. ⁵ And now send men to Joppa, and call for one Simon, whose surname is Peter: ⁶ He lodgeth with one Simon a tanner, whose house is by the sea side: he shall tell thee what thou oughtest to do. ⁷ And when the angel which spake unto Cornelius was departed, he called two of his household servants, and a devout soldier of them that waited on him continually; ⁸ And when he had declared all *these* things unto them, he sent them to Joppa. ²⁵ And as Peter was coming in, Cornelius met him, and fell down at his feet, and worshipped him. ²⁶ But Peter took him up, saying, Stand up; I myself also am a man. ³⁰ And Cornelius said, Four days ago I was fasting until this hour; and at the ninth hour I prayed in my house, and, behold, a man stood before me in bright clothing, ³¹ And said, Cornelius, thy prayer is heard, and thine alms are had in remembrance in the sight of God. ³² Send therefore to Joppa, and call hither Simon, whose surname is Peter; he is lodged in the house of one Simon a tanner, by the sea side: who, when he cometh, shall speak unto thee. ³³ Immediately therefore I sent to thee; and thou hast well done that thou art

come. Now therefore are we all here present before God, to hear all things that are commanded thee of God.

A. D. 44.] Acts 12. 1. Now about that time Herod the king stretched forth *his* hands to vex certain of the church. ² And he killed James the brother of John with the sword. ³ And because he saw it pleased the Jews, he proceeded further to take Peter also. Then were the days of unleavened bread. ⁴ And when he had apprehended him, he put *him* in prison, and delivered *him* to four quaternions of soldiers to keep him; intending after Easter to bring him forth to the people. ⁵ Peter therefore was kept in prison: but prayer was made without ceasing of the church unto God for him. ⁶ And when Herod would have brought him forth, the same night Peter was sleeping between two soldiers, bound with two chains: and the keepers before the door kept the prison. ⁷ And, behold, the angel of the Lord came upon *him*, and a light shined in the prison, and he smote Peter on the side, and raised him up, saying, Arise up quickly. And his chains fell off from *his* hands. ⁸ And the angel said unto him, Gird thyself, and bind on thy sandals: and so he did. And he saith unto him, Cast thy garment about thee, and follow me. ⁹ And he went out, and followed him; and wist not that it was true which was done by the angel; but thought he saw a vision. ¹⁰ When they were past the first and the second ward, they came unto the iron gate that leadeth unto the city, which opened to them of his own accord: and they went out, and passed on through one street: and forthwith the angel departed from him. ¹¹ And when Peter was come to himself, he said, Now I know of a surety, that the Lord hath sent his angel, and hath delivered me out of the hand of Herod, and *from* all the expectation of the people of the Jews.

A. D. 62.] Acts 27. 18. And we being exceedingly tossed with a tempest, the next *day* they lightened the ship; ¹⁹ And the third *day* we cast out with our own hands the tackling of the ship. ²⁰ And when neither sun nor stars in many days appeared, and no small tempest lay on *us*, all hope that we should be saved was then taken away. ²¹ But after long abstinence, Paul stood forth in the midst of them, and said, Sirs, ye should have hearkened unto me, and not have loosed from Crete, and to have gained this harm and loss. ²² And now I exhort you to be of good cheer: for there shall be no loss of *any man's* life among you, but of the ship. ²³ For there stood by me this night the angel of God, whose I am, and whom I serve, ²⁴ Saying, Fear not, Paul; thou must be brought before Cesar: and, lo, God hath given thee all them that sail with thee. ²⁵ Wherefore, sirs, be of good cheer; for I believe God, that it shall be even as it was told me. ²⁶ Howbeit, we must be cast upon a certain island.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 1. 14. Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation.

§ 258. *Angels are employed to execute God's judgments on the Wicked.*

B. C. 4004.] Gen. 3. 24. So he drove out the man: and he placed at the east of the garden of Eden cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the way of the tree of life.

B. C. 1897.] Gen. 19. 11. And they smote the men that *were* at the door of the house with blindness, both small and great: so that they wearied themselves to find the door.

B. C. 1060.] Psal. 35. 5. Let them be as chaff before the wind: and let the angel of the Lord chase *them*. ⁶ Let their way be dark and slippery: and let the angel of the Lord persecute them.

B. C. 1017.] 2 Sam. 24. 1. And again the anger of the Lord was kindled against Israel.

1 Chron. 21. 1. And Satan stood up against Israel, and provoked David to number Israel. ¹⁴ So the Lord sent pestilence upon Israel: and there fell of Israel seventy thousand men. ¹⁵ And God sent an angel unto Jerusalem to destroy it: and as he was destroying, the Lord beheld, and he repented him of the evil, and said to the angel that destroyed, It is enough, stay now thine hand. And the angel of the Lord stood by the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite. ¹⁶ And David lifted up his eyes, and saw the angel of the Lord stand between the earth and the heaven, having a drawn sword in his hand stretched out over Jerusalem. Then David and the elders of Israel, who were clothed in sackcloth, fell upon their faces. ¹⁸ Then the angel of the Lord commanded Gad to say to David, that David should go up, and set up an altar unto the Lord in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite. ¹⁹ And David went up at the saying of Gad, which he spake in the name of the Lord. ²⁰ And Ornan turned back, and saw the angel; and his four sons with him hid themselves. Now Ornan was threshing wheat. ²⁶ And David built there an altar unto the Lord, and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings, and called upon the Lord; and he answered him from heaven by fire upon the altar of burnt offering. ²⁷ And the Lord commanded the angel; and he put up his sword again into the sheath thereof.

B. C. 1015.] Psal. 78. 49. He cast upon them the fierceness of his anger, wrath, and indignation, and trouble, by sending evil angels *among them*.

A. D. 44.] Acts 12. 21. And upon a set day Herod, arrayed in royal apparel, sat upon his throne, and made an oration

unto them. ²² And the people gave a shout, *saying, It is the voice of a God, and not of a man.* ²³ And immediately the angel of the Lord smote him, because he gave not God the glory: and he was eaten of worms, and gave up the ghost.

§ 259. *An Angel restrained Abraham from sacrificing his son, and foretold to him the future greatness of his Seed.*

B. C. 1863.] Gen. 22. 9. And they came to the place which God had told him of; and Abraham built an altar there, and laid the wood in order, and bound Isaac his son, and laid him on the altar upon the wood. ¹⁰ And Abraham stretched forth his hand, and took the knife to slay his son. ¹¹ And the angel of the Lord called unto him out of heaven, and said, Abraham, Abraham: and he said, Here *am* I. ¹² And he said, Lay not thine hand upon the lad, neither do thou anything unto him: for now I know that thou fearest God, seeing thou hast not withheld thy son, thine only *son*, from me. ¹⁵ And the angel of the Lord called unto Abraham out of heaven the second time, ¹⁶ And said, By myself have I sworn, saith the Lord, for because thou hast done this thing, and hast not withheld thy son, thine only *son*, ¹⁷ That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which *is* upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies: ¹⁸ And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

§ 260. *Angels sometimes instructed the Prophets.*

B. C. 574.] Ezek. 40. 3. And he brought me thither, and, behold, *there was* a man, whose appearance *was* like the appearance of brass, with a line of flax in his hand, and a measuring reed; and he stood in the gate. ⁴ And the man said unto me, Son of man, behold with thine eyes, and hear with thine ears, and set thine heart upon all that I shall show thee; for to the intent that I might show *them* unto thee *art* thou brought hither: declare all that thou seest to the house of Israel.

B. C. 551.] Dan. 7. 16. I came near unto one of them and stood by, and asked him the truth of all this. So he told me, and made me know the interpretation of the things.

B. C. 549.] Dan. 8. 15. And it came to pass, when I, *even* I Daniel, had seen the vision, and sought for the meaning, then, behold, there stood before me as the appearance of a man. ¹⁶ And I heard a man's voice between *the banks of* Ulai, which called, and said, Gabriel, make this *man* to understand the vision. ¹⁷ So he came near where I stood: and when he came, I was afraid, and fell upon my face: but he said unto me,

Understand, O son of man: for at the time of the end *shall be* the vision. ¹⁸ Now as he was speaking with me, I was in a deep sleep on my face toward the ground: but he touched me, and set me upright. ¹⁹ And he said, Behold, I will make thee know what shall be in the last end of the indignation: for at the time appointed the end *shall be*.

B. c. 538.] Dan. 9. 3. And I set my face unto the Lord God, to seek by prayer and supplications, with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes. ²⁰ And while I was speaking, and praying, and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel, and presenting my supplication before the Lord my God for the holy mountain of my God; ²¹ Yea, while I *was* speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation. ²² And he informed *me*, and talked with me, and said, O Daniel, I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding. ²³ At the beginning of thy supplications the commandment came forth, and I am come to show thee; for thou *art* greatly beloved: therefore understand the matter, and consider the vision.

B. c. 534.] Dan. 10. 4. And in the four and twentieth day of the first month, as I was by the side of the great river, which *is* Hiddekel; ⁵ Then I lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and behold a certain man clothed in linen, whose loins *were* girded with fine gold of Uphaz: ⁶ His body also *was* like the beryl, and his face as the appearance of lightning, and his eyes as lamps of fire, and his arms and his feet like in colour to polished brass, and the voice of his words like the voice of a multitude. ⁷ And I Daniel alone saw the vision: for the men that were with me saw not the vision; but a great quaking fell upon them, so that they fled to hide themselves. ⁸ Therefore I was left alone, and saw this great vision, and there remained no strength in me: for my comeliness was turned in me into corruption, and I retained no strength. ⁹ Yet heard I the voice of his words: and when I heard the voice of his words, then was I in a deep sleep on my face, and my face toward the ground. ¹⁰ And, behold, a hand touched me, which set me upon my knees and *upon* the palms of my hands. ¹¹ And he said unto me, O Daniel, a man greatly beloved, understand the words that I speak unto thee, and stand upright: for unto thee am I now sent. And when he had spoken this word unto me, I stood trembling. ¹² Then said he unto me, Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that thou didst set thine heart to understand, and to chasten thyself before thy God, thy words were heard, and I am come for thy work. ¹³ But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with

the kings of Persia. ¹⁴ Now I am come to make thee understand what shall befall thy people in the latter days: for yet the vision *is* for *many* days. ¹⁵ And when he had spoken such words unto me, I set my face toward the ground, and I became dumb. ¹⁶ And, behold, *one* like the similitude of the sons of men touched my lips: then I opened my mouth, and spake, and said unto him that stood before me, O my Lord, by the vision my sorrows are turned upon me, and I have retained no strength. ¹⁷ For how can the servant of this my lord talk with this my lord? for as for me, straightway there remaineth no strength in me, neither is there breath left in me. ¹⁸ Then there came again and touched me *one* like the appearance of a man, and he strengthened me, ¹⁹ And said, O man greatly beloved, fear not: peace *be* unto thee; be strong, yea, be strong. And when he had spoken unto me, I was strengthened, and said, Let my lord speak; for thou hast strengthened me. ²⁰ Then said he, Knowest thou wherefore I come unto thee? and now will I return to fight with the prince of Persia: and when I am gone forth, lo, the prince of Grecia shall come. ²¹ But I will show thee that which is noted in the Scripture of truth: and *there is* none that holdeth with me in these things, but Michael your prince.

B. C. 534.] Dan. 11. 1. Also I in the first year of Darius the Mede, *even* I stood to confirm and to strengthen him. ² And now will I show thee the truth.

B. C. 519.] Zech. 1. 8. I saw by night, and behold a man riding upon a red horse, and he stood among the myrtle trees that *were* in the bottom; and behind him *were there* red horses, speckled and white. ⁹ Then said I, O my Lord, what *are* these? And the angel that talked with me said unto me, I will show thee what these *be*.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 1. 1. The revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto him, to show unto his servants things which must shortly come to pass; and he sent and signified *it* by his angel unto his servant John.

Rev. 17. 6. And I saw the woman drunken with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus: and when I saw her, I wondered with great admiration. ⁷ And the angel said unto me, Wherefore didst thou marvel? I will tell thee the mystery of the woman, and of the beast that carrieth her, which hath the seven heads and ten horns.

Rev. 21. 9. And there came unto me one of the seven angels which had the seven vials full of the seven last plagues, and talked with me, saying, Come hither, I will show thee the bride, the Lamb's wife.

Rev. 22. 6. And he said unto me, These sayings *are* faithful and true: and the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to show unto his servants the things which must shortly

be done. ⁸ And I John saw these things, and heard *them*. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which showed me these things. ⁹ Then saith he unto me, See *thou do it* not: for I am thy fellow servant, and of thy brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God. ¹⁰ And he saith unto me, Seal not the sayings of the prophecy of this book: for the time is at hand.

§ 261. *Angels have foretold the birth and character of some persons.*

B. C. 1911.] Gen. 16. 7. And the angel of the Lord found her by a fountain of water in the wilderness, by the fountain in the way to Shur. ⁸ And he said, Hagar, Sarai's maid, whence camest thou? and whither wilt thou go? And she said, I flee from the face of my mistress Sarai. ⁹ And the angel of the Lord said unto her, Return to thy mistress, and submit thyself under her hands. ¹⁰ And the angel of the Lord said unto her, I will multiply thy seed exceedingly, that it shall not be numbered for multitude. ¹¹ And the angel of the Lord said unto her, Behold, thou *art* with child, and shalt bear a son, and shalt call his name Ishmael; because the Lord hath heard thy affliction. ¹² And he will be a wild man; his hand *will be* against every man, and every man's hand against him: and he shall dwell in the presence of all his brethren.

B. C. 1157.] Judges 13. 2. And there was a certain man of Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name *was* Manoah; and his wife *was* barren, and bare not. ³ And the angel of the Lord appeared unto the woman, and said unto her, Behold now, thou *art* barren, and bearest not: but thou shalt conceive, and bear a son. ⁴ Now therefore beware, I pray thee, and drink not wine nor strong drink, and eat not any unclean *thing*: ⁵ For, lo, thou shalt conceive, and bear a son; and no razor shall come on his head: for the child shall be a Nazarete unto God from the womb: and he shall begin to deliver Israel out of the hand of the Philistines. ¹⁵ And Manoah said unto the angel of the Lord, I pray thee, let us detain thee, until we shall have made ready a kid for thee. ¹⁶ And the angel of the Lord said unto Manoah, Though thou detain me, I will not eat of thy bread: and if thou wilt offer a burnt offering, thou must offer it unto the Lord. For Manoah knew not that he *was* an angel of the Lord. ¹⁷ And Manoah said unto the angel of the Lord, What *is* thy name, that when thy sayings come to pass we may do thee honour? ¹⁸ And the angel of the Lord said unto him, Why askest thou thus after my name, seeing it *is* secret? ¹⁹ So Manoah took a kid with a meat offering, and offered *it* upon a rock unto the Lord: and *the angel*

did wondrously; and Manóah and his wife looked on. ²⁰ For it came to pass, when the flame went up toward heaven from off the altar, that the angel of the Lord ascended in the flame of the altar: and Manóah and his wife looked on *it*, and fell on their faces to the ground.

B. C. 5.] Luke 1. 11. And there appeared unto him an angel of the Lord standing on the right side of the altar of incense. ¹² And when Zacharias saw *him*, he was troubled, and fear fell upon him. ¹³ But the angel said unto him, Fear not, Zacharias: for thy prayer is heard; and thy wife Elisabeth shall bear thee a son, and thou shalt call his name John. ¹⁴ And thou shalt have joy and gladness; and many shall rejoice at his birth. ¹⁵ For he shall be great in the sight of the Lord, and shall drink neither wine nor strong drink; and he shall be filled with the Holy Ghost, even from his mother's womb. ¹⁶ And many of the children of Israel shall be turn to the Lord their God. ¹⁷ And he shall go before him in the spirit and power of Elias, to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the disobedient to the wisdom of the just; to make ready a people prepared for the Lord. ¹⁸ And Zacharias said unto the angel, Whereby shall I know this? for I am an old man, and my wife well stricken in years. ¹⁹ And the angel answering said unto him, I am Gabriel, that stand in the presence of God; and am sent to speak unto thee, and to show thee these glad tidings. ²⁰ And, behold, thou shalt be dumb, and not able to speak, until the day that these things shalt be performed, because thou believest not my words, which shall be fulfilled in their season.

§ 262. *Angels sometimes appeared in a material body and ate food.*

B. C. 1897.] Gen. 18. 1. And the Lord appeared unto him in the plains of Mamre: and he sat in the tent door in the heat of the day; ² And he lifted up his eyes and looked, and, lo, three men stood by him: and when he saw *them*, he ran to meet them from the tent door, and bowed himself toward the ground, ³ And said, My Lord, if now I have found favour in thy sight, pass not away, I pray thee, from thy servant: ⁴ Let a little water, I pray you, be fetched, and wash your feet, and rest yourselves under the tree: ⁵ And I will fetch a morsel of bread, and comfort ye your hearts; after that ye shall pass on: for therefore are ye come to your servant. And they said, So do, as thou hast said. ⁶ And Abraham hastened into the tent unto Sarah, and said, Make ready quickly three measures of fine meal, knead *it*, and make cakes upon the hearth. ⁷ And Abraham ran unto the herd, and fetched a calf tender and good, and gave *it* unto a young man; and he

hasted to dress it. ⁸ And he took butter, and milk, and the calf which he had dressed, and set *it* before them; and he stood by them under the tree, and they did eat.

B. C. 1897.] Gen. 19. 1. And there came two angels to Sodom at even; and Lot sat in the gate of Sodom: and Lot seeing *them*, rose up to meet them; and he bowed himself with his face toward the ground; ² And he said, Behold now, my lords, turn in, I pray you, into your servant's house, and tarry all night, and wash your feet, and ye shall rise up early, and go on your ways. And they said, Nay; but we will abide in the street all night. ³ And he pressed upon them greatly; and they turned in unto him, and entered into his house; and he made them a feast, and did bake unleavened bread, and they did eat.

§ 263. *Angels are not to be Worshipped.*

A. D. 62.] Col. 2. 18. Let no man beguile you of your reward in a voluntary humility and worshipping of angels, intruding into those things which he hath not seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 19. 10. And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, See *thou do it* not: I am thy fellow servant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.

Rev. 22. 8. And I John saw these things, and heard *them*. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which showed me these things. ⁹ Then saith he unto me, See *thou do it* not: for I am thy fellow servant, and of thy brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God.

§ 264. *Angels foretold the birth of Christ, and announced the event.*

B. C. 5.] Luke 1. 26. And in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God unto a city of Galilee named Nazareth, ²⁷ To a virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph, of the house of David; and the virgin's name *was* Mary. ²⁸ And the angel came in unto her, and said, Hail, *thou that art* highly favoured, the Lord *is* with thee: blessed *art* thou among women. ²⁹ And when she saw *him*, she was troubled at his saying, and cast in her mind what manner of salutation this should be. ³⁰ And the angel said unto her, Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God. ³¹ And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name JESUS. ³² He shall be great, and shall be

called the Son of the Highest; and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David: ³³And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end. ³⁴Then said Mary unto the angel, How shall this be, seeing I know not a man? ³⁵And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God. ³⁶And, behold, thy cousin Elisabeth, she hath also conceived a son in her old age; and this is the sixth month with her, who was called barren. ³⁷For with God nothing shall be impossible. ³⁸And Mary said, Behold the handmaid of the Lord; be it unto me according to thy word. And the angel departed from her.

B. C. 4.] Luke 2. 7. And she brought forth her firstborn son, and wrapped him in swaddling clothes, and laid him in a manger; because there was no room for them in the inn. ⁸And there were in the same country shepherds abiding in the field, keeping watch over their flock by night. ⁹And, lo, the angel of the Lord came upon them, and the glory of the Lord shone round about them; and they were sore afraid. ¹⁰And the angel said unto them, Fear not: for, behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people. ¹¹For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord. ¹²And this *shall be* a sign unto you; Ye shall find the babe wrapped in swaddling clothes, lying in a manger. ¹³And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God, and saying, ¹⁴Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, good will toward men. ¹⁵And it came to pass, as the angels were gone away from them into heaven, the shepherds said one to another, Let us now go even unto Bethlehem, and see this thing which is come to pass, which the Lord hath made known unto us.

§ 265. *Angels ministered to Christ and strengthened him.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 4. 10. Then saith Jesus unto him, Get thee hence, Satan: for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve. ¹¹Then the devil leaveth him, and, behold, angels came and ministered unto him.

A. D. 29.] Luke 22. 41. And he was withdrawn from them about a stone's cast, and kneeled down, and prayed, ⁴²Saying, Father, if thou be willing, remove this cup from me: nevertheless, not my will, but thine, be done. ⁴³And there appeared an angel unto him from heaven, strengthening him.

§ 266. *Angels rolled away the stone from the sepulchre and announced the Resurrection of Christ.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 28. 1. In the end of the sabbath, as it began to dawn toward the first *day* of the week, came Mary Magdalene and the other Mary to see the sepulchre. ² And, behold, there was a great earthquake: for the angel of the Lord descended from heaven, and came and rolled back the stone from the door, and sat upon it. ³ His countenance was like lightning, and his raiment white as snow: ⁴ And for fear of him the keepers did shake, and became as dead *men*. ⁵ And the angel answered and said unto the women, Fear not ye: for I know that ye seek Jesus, which was crucified. ⁶ He is not here: for he is risen, as he said, Come, see the place where the Lord lay, ⁷ And go quickly, and tell his disciples that he has risen from the dead; and, behold, he goeth before you into Galilee; there shall ye see him: lo, I have told you.

§ 267. *When Christ ascended, Angels declared to the disciples that he should come again in the same manner.*

A. D. 29.] Acts 1. 9. And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a cloud received him out of their sight. ¹⁰ And while they looked steadfastly toward heaven as he went up, behold, two men stood by them in white apparel; ¹¹ Which also said, Ye men of Galilee, why stand ye gazing up into heaven? this same Jesus, which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner as ye have seen him go into heaven.

§ 268. *Angels worship Christ and are subject to Him.*

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 3. 22. Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 1. 4. Being made so much better than the angels, as he hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 5. 11. And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne, and the beasts, and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands; ¹² Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing. ¹³ And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying, Blessing, and

honour, and glory, and power, *be* unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever.

§ 269. *Angels attend Christ in the administration of his Kingdom.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 13. 39. The harvest is the end of the world; and the reapers are the angels. ⁴⁰ As therefore the tares are gathered and burned in the fire; so shall it be in the end of this world. ⁴¹ The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity; ⁴² And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth. ⁴³ So shall it be at the end of the world: the angels shall come forth, and sever the wicked from among the just.

Matt. 16. 27. For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works. ²⁸ Verily I say unto you, There be some standing here, which shall not taste of death, till they see the Son of man coming in his kingdom.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 24. 31. And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

Matt. 25. 31. When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory. ³² And before him shall be gathered all nations: and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth *his* sheep from the goats.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 4. 16. For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first.

2 Thess. 1. 6. Seeing *it is* a righteous thing with God to recompense tribulation to them that trouble you; ⁷ And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels.

CHAPTER V.

DEVILS.

§ 270. *They were Angels, but they sinned against God and were cast from Heaven into the World and down to Hell.*

A. D. 28.] Luke 10. 18. And he said unto them, I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven.

A. D. 29.] John 8. 44. Ye are of *your* father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do: he was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.

A. D. 60.] 2 Peter 2. 4. God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast *them* down to hell, and delivered *them* into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment.

A. D. 65.] Jude 6. And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 12. 9. And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

§ 271. *Satan sometimes appears as an Angel of Light.*

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 11. 13. For such *are* false apostles, deceitful workers, transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ. ¹⁴ And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light. ¹⁵ Therefore *it is* no great thing if his ministers also be transformed as the ministers of righteousness; whose end shall be according to their works.

§ 272. *Satan is the instigator of all wickedness.*

A. D. 28.] Matt. 13. 38. The field is the world; the good seed are the children of the kingdom; but the tares are the children of the wicked *one*; ³⁹ The enemy that sowed them is the devil; the harvest is the end of the world; and the reapers are the angels.

A. D. 29.] John 8. 44. Ye are of *your* father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do: he was a murderer from

the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 3. 8. He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

§ 273. *They Tempt Men to Wickedness.*

B. C. 4004.] Gen. 3. 4. And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die: ⁵ For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened; and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil. ¹³ And the Lord God said unto the woman, What *is* this *that* thou hast done? And the woman said, The serpent beguiled me, and I did eat.

B. C. 1017.] 1 Chron. 21. 1. And Satan stood up against Israel, and provoked David to number Israel.

A. D. 29.] Luke 22. 3. Then entered Satan into Judas surnamed Iscariot, being of the number of the twelve. ⁴ And he went his way, and communed with the chief priests and captains, how he might betray him unto them. ³¹ And the Lord said, Simon, Simon, behold, Satan hath desired *to have* you, that he may sift *you* as wheat.

A. D. 30.] Acts 5. 3. But Peter said, Ananias, why hath Satan filled thine heart, to lie to the Holy Ghost, and to keep back *part* of the price of the land? ⁴ While it remained, was it not thine own? and after it was sold, was it not in thine own power? why hast thou conceived this thing in thine heart? thou hast not lied unto men, but unto God.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 3. 5. For this cause, when I could no longer forbear, I sent to know your faith, lest by some means the tempter have tempted you, and our labor be in vain.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 7. 5. Defraud ye not one another, except *it* be with consent for a time, that ye may give yourselves to fasting and prayer; and come together again, that Satan tempt you not for your incontinency.

§ 274. *The Devil tempted Christ, (1,) To use His power for his own comfort; (2,) To do an unnecessary and dangerous act; (3,) To gain worldly power through wicked means. Christ resisted him with the word of God.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 4. 1. Then was Jesus led up of the Spirit into the wilderness, to be tempted of the devil. ² And when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, he was afterward *ahungered*. ³ And when the tempter came to him, he said,

If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread. ⁴ But he answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God. ⁵ Then the devil taketh him up into the holy city, and setteth him on a pinnacle of the temple, ⁶ And saith unto him, If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down: for it is written, He shall give his angels charge concerning thee: and in *their* hands they shall bear thee up, lest at any time thou dash thy foot against a stone. ⁷ Jesus said unto him, It is written again, Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God. ⁸ Again, the devil taketh him up into an exceeding high mountain, and showeth him all the kingdoms of the world, and the glory of them; ⁹ And saith unto him, All these things will I give thee, if thou wilt fall down and worship me. ¹⁰ Then said Jesus unto him, Get thee hence, Satan: for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve. ¹¹ Then the devil leaveth him, and, behold, angels came and ministered unto him.

§ 275. *If unrestrained by God, Satan has power to control the winds and lightning, to stir up nations to war, to control absolutely the minds and bodies of individuals, and produce diseases.*

B. C. 1520.] Job 1. 12. And the Lord said unto Satan, Behold, all that he hath *is* in thy power; only upon himself put not forth thine hand. So Satan went forth from the presence of the Lord. ¹³ And there was a day when his sons and his daughters *were* eating and drinking wine in their eldest brother's house: ¹⁴ And there came a messenger unto Job, and said, The oxen were ploughing, and the asses feeding beside them: ¹⁵ And the Sabeans fell *upon them*, and took them away; yea, they have slain the servants with the edge of the sword; and I only am escaped alone to tell thee. ¹⁶ While he *was* yet speaking, there came also another, and said, The fire of God is fallen from heaven, and hath burned up the sheep, and the servants, and consumed them; and I only am escaped alone to tell thee. ¹⁷ While he *was* yet speaking, there came also another, and said, The Chaldeans made out three bands, and fell upon the camels, and have carried them away, yea, and slain the servants with the edge of the sword; and I only am escaped alone to tell thee. ¹⁸ While he *was* yet speaking, there came also another, and said, Thy sons and thy daughters *were* eating and drinking wine in their eldest brother's house: ¹⁹ And, behold, there came a great wind from the wilderness, and smote the four corners of the house, and it fell upon the young men, and they are dead; and I only am escaped alone to tell thee.

B. c. 1520.] Job 2. 6. And the Lord said unto Satan, Behold, he *is* in thine hand; but save his life. ⁷ So went Satan forth from the presence of the Lord, and smote Job with sore boils from the sole of his foot unto his crown.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 8. 28. And when he was come to the other side into the country of the Gergesenes, there met him two possessed with devils, coming out of the tombs, exceeding fierce, so that no man might pass by that way. ²⁹ And, behold, they cried out, saying, What have we to do with thee, Jesus, thou Son of God? art thou come hither to torment us before the time? ³⁰ And there was a good way off from them a herd of many swine feeding. ³¹ So the devils besought him, saying, If thou cast us out, suffer us to go away into the herd of swine. ³² And he said unto them, Go. And when they were come out, they went into the herd of swine: and, behold, the whole herd of swine ran down a steep place into the sea, and perished in the waters.

Matt. 9. 32. As they went out, behold, they brought to him a dumb man possessed with a devil. ³³ And when the devil was cast out, the dumb spake: and the multitudes marvelled, saying, It was never so seen in Israel.

Matt. 10. 1. And when he had called unto *him* his twelve disciples, he gave them power *against* unclean spirits, to cast them out.

Matt. 12. 22. Then was brought unto him one possessed with a devil, blind, and dumb: and he healed him, insomuch that the blind and dumb both spake and saw.

Mark 1. 23. And there was in their synagogue a man with an unclean spirit; and he cried out, ²⁴ Saying, Let *us* alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art, the Holy One of God. ²⁵ And Jesus rebuked him, saying, Hold thy peace, and come out of him. ²⁶ And when the unclean spirit had torn him, and cried with a loud voice, he came out of him.

Luke 4. 33. And in the synagogue there was a man, which had a spirit of an unclean devil, and cried out with a loud voice, ³⁴ Saying, Let *us* alone; what have we to do with thee, *thou* Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art; the Holy One of God. ³⁵ And Jesus rebuked him, saying, Hold thy peace, and come out of him. And when the devil had thrown him in the midst, he came out of him, and hurt him not.

A. D. 28.] Luke 9. 38. And, behold, a man of the company cried out, saying, Master, I beseech thee, look upon my son; for he is mine only child. ³⁹ And, lo, a spirit taketh him, and he suddenly crieth out; and it teareth him that he foameth again; and bruising him, hardly departeth from him. ⁴¹ And

Jesus answering said, O faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you, and suffer you? Bring thy son hither.
⁴² And as he was yet coming, the devil threw him down, and tare *him*. And Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit, and healed the child, and delivered him again to his father.

A. D. 29.] Luke 13. 16. And ought not this woman, being a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan hath bound, lo, these eighteen years, be loosed from this bond on the sabbath day?

A. D. 53.] Act 16. 16. And it came to pass, as we went to prayer, a certain damsel possessed with a spirit of divination met us, which brought her master much gain by soothsayings:
¹⁷ The same followed Paul and us, and cried, saying, These men are the servants of the most high God, which show unto us the way of salvation. ¹⁸ And this did she many days. But Paul, being grieved, turned and said to the spirit, I command thee in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her. And he came out the same hour.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 12. 7. And lest I should be exalted above measure through the abundance of the revelations, there was given to me a thorn in the flesh, the messenger of Satan to buffet me, lest I should be exalted above measure.

§ 276. *Satan hinders the ungodly from understanding the Gospel.*

A. D. 27.] Luke 8. 11. Now the parable is this: The seed is the word of God. ¹² Those by the wayside are they that hear; then cometh the devil, and taketh away the word out of their hearts, lest they should believe and be saved.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 4. 3. But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost: ⁴ In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

§ 277. *Satan is the adversary of the righteous, by whom he is to be resisted and overcome.*

A. D. 29.] Luke 22. 31. And the Lord said, Simon, Simon, behold, Satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 5. 8. Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour: ⁹ Whom resist, steadfast in the faith, knowing that the same afflictions are accomplished in your brethren that are in the world.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 4. 27. Neither give place to the devil.

Eph. 6. 11. Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. ¹² For we

wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high *places*. ¹³ Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and, having done all, to stand. ¹⁴ Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; ¹⁵ And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; ¹⁶ Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. ¹⁷ And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God: ¹⁸ Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints.

A. D. 61.] James 4. 7. Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 2. 26. And *that* they may recover themselves out of the snare of the devil, who are taken captive by him at his will.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 12. 11. And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony.

§ 278. *God sometimes permits the devices of evil spirits against the righteous to be temporarily successful.*

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 2. 18. Wherefore we would have come unto you, even I Paul, once and again; but Satan hindered us.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 2. 10. Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast *some* of you into prison, that ye may be tried; and ye shall have tribulation ten days: be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life. (See Job.)

§ 279. *Devils contend against the Angels.*

B. C. 519.] Zech. 3. 1. And he showed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of the Lord, and Satan standing at his right hand to resist him. ² And the Lord said unto Satan, The Lord rebuke thee, O Satan; even the Lord that hath chosen Jerusalem rebuke thee: *is* not this a brand plucked out of the fire?

A. D. 65.] Jude 9. Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, durst not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, The Lord rebuke thee.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 12. 7. And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon

fought and his angels, ⁸ And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven.

§ 280. *They know Christ, and believe and tremble.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 8. 29. And, behold, they cried out, saying, What have we to do with thee, Jesus, thou Son of God? art thou come hither to torment us before the time?

Mark 1. 24. Saying, Let *us* alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art, the Holy One of God.

A. D. 56.] Acts 19. 15. And the evil spirit answered and said, Jesus I know, and Paul I know; but who are ye?

A. D. 61.] James 2. 19. Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble.

§ 281. *Devils are not to be Worshipped.*

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 17. 7. And they shall no more offer their sacrifices unto devils, after whom they have gone a whoring. This shall be a statute for ever unto them throughout their generations.

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 32. 16. They provoked him to jealousy with strange *gods*, with abominations provoked they him to anger. ¹⁷ They sacrificed unto devils, not to God; to gods whom they knew not, to new *gods that* came newly up, whom your fathers feared not.

B. C. 1041.] Psa. 106. 37. Yea, they sacrificed their sons and their daughters unto devils, ³⁸ And shed innocent blood, *even* the blood of their sons and of their daughters, whom they sacrificed unto the idols of Canaan: and the land was polluted with blood.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 10. 14. Wherefore, my dearly beloved, flee from idolatry. ¹⁹ What say I then? that the idol is any thing, or that which is offered in sacrifice to idols is any thing? ²⁰ But *I say*, that the things which the Gentiles sacrifice, they sacrifice to devils, and not to God: and I would not that ye should have fellowship with devils. ²¹ Ye cannot drink the cup of the Lord, and the cup of devils: ye cannot be partakers of the Lord's table, and of the table of devils.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 4. 1. Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils; ² Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron; ³ Forbidding to marry, *and commanding* to abstain from meats, which God hath created to be received with thanksgiving of them which believe and know the truth.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 9. 20. And the rest of the men which were not killed by these plagues yet repented not of the works of

their hands, that they should not worship devils, and idols of gold, and silver, and brass, and stone, and of wood: which neither can see, nor hear, nor walk.

§ 282. *Evil Spirits shall be entirely restrained for a time from doing evil to men, and shall ultimately be cast into the lake of fire forever.*

A. D. 27.] Mark 1. 23. And he cried out, ²⁴Saying, Let *us* alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us?

Matt. 8. 29. And, behold, they cried out, saying, What have we to do with thee, Jesus, thou Son of God? art thou come hither to torment us before the time?

Luke 8. 30. And Jesus asked him, saying, What is thy name? And he said, Legion: because many devils were entered into him. ³¹And they besought him that he would not command them to go out into the deep. ³²And there was there a herd of many swine feeding on the mountain: and they besought him that he would suffer them to enter into them. And he suffered them.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 25. 41. Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels.

A. D. 60.] 2 Peter 2. 4. God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast *them* down to hell, and delivered *them* into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment.

A. D. 65.] Jude 6. And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 20. 1. And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. ²And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years. ³And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season. ⁷And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison, ⁸And shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together to battle: the number of whom *is* as the sand of the sea. ¹⁰And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet *are*, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.

CHAPTER VI.

MAN.

§ 283. *God created man, Male and Female, in his own Image.*

B. C. 4004.] Gen. 1. 26. And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness. ²⁷ So God created man in his *own* image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.

Gen. 2. 7. And the Lord God formed man *of* the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.

B. C. 2347.] Gen. 9. 6. For in the image of God made he man.

B. C. 1520.] Job 10. 8. Thine hands have made me and fashioned me together round about. ¹¹ Thou hast clothed me with skin and flesh, and hast fenced me with bones and sinews.

Job 33. 4. The Spirit of God hath made me, and the breath of the Almighty hath given me life. ⁶ I also am formed out of the clay.

B. C. 1048.] Psal. 139. 14. For I am fearfully *and* wonderfully made. ¹⁶ Thine eyes did see my substance, yet being unperfect; and in thy book all *my members* were written, *which* in continuance were fashioned, when *as yet there was* none of them.

B. C. 1004.] Psal. 100. 3. Know ye that the Lord he *is* God: *it is* he *that* hath made us, and not we ourselves; *we are* his people, and the sheep of his pasture.

B. C. 977.] Eccles. 7. 29. Lo, this only have I found, that God hath made man upright; but they have sought out many inventions.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 19. 4. And he answered and said unto them, Have ye not read, that he which made *them* at the beginning made them male and female.

A. D. 53.] Acts 17. 28. For in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring. ²⁹ For as much then as we are the offspring of God, we ought not to think that the God-head is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by art and man's device.

A. D. 61.] James 3. 9. Men, which are made after the similitude of God.

§ 284. *They shall be fruitful and multiply.*

B. C. 4004.] Gen. 1. 28. And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth. Gen. 3. 16. Thou shalt bring forth children.

B. C. 2347.] Gen. 9. 1. And God blessed Noah and his sons, and said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth. ⁷ And you, be ye fruitful, and multiply; bring forth abundantly in the earth, and multiply therein.

B. C. 536.] Psa. 127. 3. Lo, children *are* a heritage of the Lord: *and* the fruit of the womb *is* his reward.

Psa. 128. 3. Thy wife *shall be* as a fruitful vine by the sides of thine house: thy children like olive plants round about thy table. ⁴ Behold, that thus shall the man be blessed that feareth the Lord.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 2. 15. She shall be saved in childbearing, if they continue in faith and charity and holiness with sobriety.

1 Tim. 5. 10. Well reported of for good works; if she have brought up children, if she have lodged strangers, if she have washed the saints' feet, if she have relieved the afflicted, if she have diligently followed every good work. ¹⁴ I will therefore that the younger women marry, bear children, guide the house, give none occasion to the adversary to speak reproachfully.

§ 285. *Man is made a little lower than the Angels, and has dominion over the works of God's hands in the earth.*

B. C. 4004.] Gen. 1. 26. And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. ²⁸ And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth. ²⁹ And God said, Behold, I have given you every herb bearing seed, which *is* upon the face of all the earth, and every tree, in the which *is* the fruit of a tree yielding seed; to you it shall be for meat.

Gen. 9. 2. And the fear of you and the dread of you shall be upon every beast of the earth, and upon every fowl of the air, upon all that moveth *upon* the earth, and upon all the fishes of the sea; into your hand are they delivered. ³ Every

moving thing that liveth shall be meat for you; even as the green herb have I given you all things.

B. c. 1015.] Psal. 8. 4. What is man, that thou art mindful of him? and the son of man, that thou visitest him? ⁶ For thou hast made him a little lower than the angels, and hast crowned him with glory and honour. ⁶ Thou madest him to have dominion over the works of thy hands; thou hast put all *things* under his feet: ⁷ All sheep and oxen, yea, and the beasts of the field; ⁸ The fowl of the air, and the fish of the sea, *and whatsoever* passeth through the paths of the seas.

§ 286. *Man sinned against God, and, because of sin, death, both spiritual and physical, came upon all the race.*

B. c. 4004.] Gen. 2. 16. And the Lord God commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat: ¹⁷ But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.

Gen. 3. 1. Now the serpent was more subtile than any beast of the field which the Lord God had made. And he said unto the women, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden? ² And the woman said unto the serpent, We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden: ³ But of the fruit of the tree which *is* in the midst of the garden, God hath said, Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die. ⁴ And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die: ⁵ For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened; and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil. ⁶ And when the woman saw that the tree *was* good for food, and that it *was* pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make *one* wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat. ⁷ And the eyes of them both were opened, and they knew that they were naked; and they sewed fig leaves together, and made themselves aprons. ⁸ And they heard the voice of the Lord God walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the Lord God amongst the trees of the garden. ⁹ And the Lord God called unto Adam, and said unto him, Where *art* thou? ¹⁰ And he said, I heard thy voice in the garden, and I was afraid, because I *was* naked; and I hid myself. ¹⁷ And unto Adam he said, Because thou hast hearkened unto the voice of thy wife, and hast eaten of the tree, of which I commanded thee, saying, Thou shalt not eat of it: cursed *is* the ground for thy sake; in sorrow shalt thou eat *of* it all the days of thy life; ¹⁸ Thorns also and thistles

shall it bring forth to thee; and thou shalt eat the herb of the field. ¹⁹ In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread, till thou return unto the ground; for out of it wast thou taken: for dust thou *art*, and unto dust shalt thou return.

B. C. 1520.] Job 14. 1. Man *that is* born of a woman *is* of few days, and full of trouble. ² He cometh forth like a flower, and is cut down: he fleeth also as a shadow, and continueth not. ⁵ Seeing his days *are* determined, the number of his months *are* with thee, thou hast appointed his bounds that he cannot pass.

Job 21. 23. One dieth in his full strength, being wholly at ease and quiet. ²⁴ His breasts are full of milk, and his bones are moistened with marrow. ²⁵ And another dieth in the bitterness of his soul, and never eateth with pleasure. ²⁶ They shall lie down alike in the dust, and the worms shall cover them.

Job 34. 15. All flesh shall perish together, and man shall turn again unto dust.

B. C. 1489.] Psal. 90. 10. The days of our years *are* threescore years and ten; and if by reason of strength *they be* fourscore years, yet *is* their strength labour and sorrow; for it is soon cut off, and we fly away.

B. C. 977.] Eccl. 3. 2. A time to be born, and a time to die. ²⁰ All go unto one place; all are of the dust, and all turn to dust again.

Eccl. 12. 7. Then shall the dust return to the earth as it was: and the spirit shall return unto God who gave it.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 10. 28. And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 15. 22. In Adam all die. ⁵⁶ The sting of death *is* sin.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 3. 23. For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God.

Rom. 5. 12. Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned: ¹³ For until the law sin was in the world: but sin is not imputed when there is no law. ¹⁴ Nevertheless, death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come.

Rom. 6. 21. What fruit had ye then in those things whereof ye are now ashamed? for the end of those things *is* death.

Rom. 8. 10. The body *is* dead because of sin.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 2. 1. And you *hath he quickened*, who were dead in trespasses and sins. ⁵ Even when we were dead in sins, *hath quickened us together with Christ*.

James 1. 15. Then when lust hath conceived, it bringeth forth sin; and sin, when it is finished, bringeth forth death.

A. D. 61.] Jam. 4. 14. For what *is* your life? It is even a vapour, that appeareth for a little time, and then vanisheth away.

A. D. 62.] Col. 2. 13. And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 9. 27. It is appointed unto men once to die.

§ 287. *When the body dies, the spirit and soul continue to live, and go to the place of the departed.*

B. C. 977.] Eccl. 3. 21. Who knoweth the spirit of man that goeth upward, and the spirit of the beast that goeth downward to the earth?

Eccl. 12. 7. Then shall the dust return to the earth as it was: and the spirit shall return unto God who gave it.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 10. 28. And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 22. 32. I am the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. God is not the God of the dead, but of the living.

Luke 16. 22. And it came to pass that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died, and was buried; ²³ And in hell he lifted up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom.

Luke 23. 43. And Jesus said unto him, Verily I say unto thee, To day shalt thou be with me in paradise.

A. D. 31.] Acts 7. 59. And they stoned Stephen, calling upon *God*, and saying, Lord Jesus, receive my spirit.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 10. Whether we wake or sleep, we should live together with him.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 14. 7. For none of us liveth to himself, and no man dieth to himself. ⁸ For whether we live, we live unto the Lord; and whether we die, we die unto the Lord: whether we live therefore, or die, we are the Lord's. ⁹ For to this end Christ both died, and rose, and revived, that he might be Lord both of the dead and living.

§ 288. *When the spirit and soul are separated from the body they have no knowledge of things transpiring on the earth; but remain, in respect to earthly matters, as when the body is in natural sleep.*

B. C. 1520.] Job 14. 21. His sons come to honour, and he knoweth *it* not; and they are brought low, but he perceiveth *it* not of them.

B. C. 977.] Eccl. 9. 5. For the living know that they shall die: but the dead know not any thing, neither have they any more a reward; for the memory of them is forgotten. ⁶ Also their love, and their hatred, and their envy, is now perished; neither have they any more a portion for ever in any *thing* that is done under the sun. ¹⁰ Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do *it* with thy might; for *there is* no work, nor devise, nor knowledge, nor wisdom, in the grave, whither thou goest.

B. C. 713.] Isa. 38. 18. For the grave cannot praise thee, death cannot celebrate thee: they that go down into the pit cannot hope for thy truth.

Isa. 63. 16. Doubtless thou *art* our Father, though ABRAHAM BE IGNORANT OF US, and Israel acknowledge us not.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 9. 24. He said unto them, Give place: for the maid is not dead, but sleepeth. And they laughed him to scorn.

A. D. 29.] John 9. 4. I must work the works of him that sent me, while it is day: the night cometh, when no man can work.

John 11. 11. He saith unto them, Our friend Lazarus sleepeth; but I go, that I may awake him out of sleep.

A. D. 31.] Acts 7. 59. And they stoned Stephen, calling upon *God*, and saying, Lord Jesus, receive my spirit. ⁶⁰ And he kneeled down, and cried with a loud voice, Lord, lay not this sin to their charge. And when he had said this, he fell asleep.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 15. 18. Then they also which are fallen asleep in Christ. ⁵¹ Behold, I show you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed.

§ 289. *The dead remember the circumstances and opportunities which they experienced when in the body. The wicked have bitter reflections, and are not associated with the righteous.*

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 5. 11. And thou mourn at the last, when thy flesh and thy body are consumed, ¹² And say, How have I hated instruction, and my heart despised reproof; ¹³ And have not obeyed the voice of my teachers, nor inclined mine ear to them that instructed me! ¹⁴ I was almost in all evil in the midst of the congregation and assembly.

A. D. 29.] Luke 16. 22. The rich man also died, and was buried; ²³ And in hell he lifted up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. ²⁴ And he cried and said, Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame. ²⁵ But Abraham said, Son, remember that thou in thy lifetime re-

ceivedst thy good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things: but now he is comforted, and thou art tormented. ²⁶ And beside all this, between us and you there is a great gulf fixed: so that they which would pass from hence to you cannot; neither can they pass to us, that *would come* from thence. ²⁷ Then he said, I pray thee therefore, father, that thou wouldest send him to my father's house: ²⁸ For I have five brethren; that he may testify unto them, lest they also come into this place of torment. ²⁹ Abraham saith unto him, They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them. ³⁰ And he said, Nay, father Abraham: but if one went unto them from the dead, they will repent. ³¹ And he said unto him, If they hear not Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded, though one rose from the dead.

§ 290. *The righteous dead rest in peace, conscious of the presence of Christ, and are blessed. Their condition is called Paradise and Abraham's bosom.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 3. 17. There the wicked cease *from* troubling; and there the weary be at rest. ¹⁸ *There* the prisoners rest together; they hear not the voice of the oppressor. ¹⁹ The small and great are there; and the servant *is* free from his master.

B. c. 1060.] Psa. 31. 5. Into thine hand I commit my spirit: thou hast redeemed me, O Lord God of truth.

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 23. 4. Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil: for thou *art* with me; thy rod and thy staff they comfort me.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 14. 32. The wicked is driven away in his wickedness: but the righteous hath hope in his death.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 57. 1. The righteous perisheth, and no man layeth *it* to heart: and merciful men *are* taken away, none considering that the righteous is taken away from the evil *to come*. ² He shall enter into peace: they shall rest in their beds, *each one* walking in his uprightness.

B. c. 539.] Psa. 37. 37. Mark the perfect *man*, and behold the upright: for the end of *that* man *is* peace.

B. c. 536.] Psa. 116. 15. Precious in the sight of the Lord *is* the death of his saints.

A. D. 29.] Luke 16. 22. And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom. ²⁶ Now he is comforted.

Luke 23. 43. And Jesus said unto him, Verily I say unto thee, To day shalt thou be with me in paradise.

B. c. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 10. Whether we wake or sleep, we should live together with him. ¹¹ Wherefore comfort yourselves together, and edify one another, even as also ye do.

B. c. 57.] 2 Cor. 5. 8. We are confident, *I say*, and willing rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with the Lord.

B. c. 58.] Rom. 8. 38. For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, ³⁹ Shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

B. c. 62.] Phil. 1. 21. For to me to live *is* Christ, and to die *is* gain. ²² But if I live in the flesh, this *is* the fruit of my labour: yet what I shall choose I wot not. ²³ For I am in a strait betwixt two, having a desire to depart, and to be with Christ; which is far better: ²⁴ Nevertheless to abide in the flesh *is* more needful for you.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 14. 13. And I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me, Write, Blessed *are* the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth: Yea, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labours; and their works do follow them.

§ 291. *The righteous dead are not yet ascended into Heaven.*

A. D. 29.] Acts 2. 29. Men *and* brethren, let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulchre is with us unto this day. ³⁴ For David is not ascended into the heavens.

§ 292. *There shall be a resurrection both of the righteous and wicked, when the spirit will be re-united with the body.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 19. 25. For I know *that* my Redeemer liveth, and *that* he shall stand at the latter *day* upon the earth: ²⁶ And *though* after my skin *worms* destroy this *body*, yet in my flesh shall I see God: ²⁷ Whom I shall see for myself, and mine eyes shall behold, and not another; *though* my reins be consumed within me.

B. c. 1044.] Psa. 16. 9. My flesh also shall rest in hope.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 26. 19. Thy dead *men* shall live, *together with* my dead body shall they arise. Awake and sing, ye that dwell in dust: for thy dew *is as* the dew of herbs, and the earth shall cast out the dead.

B. c. 587.] Ezek. 37. 12. Therefore prophesy and say unto them, Thus saith the Lord God; Behold, O my people, I will open your graves, and cause you to come up out of your graves, and bring you into the land of Israel. ¹³ And ye shall know that I *am* the Lord, when I have opened your graves, O my people, and brought you up out of your graves.

B. C. 539.] Psa. 49. 15. But God will redeem my soul from the power of the grave: for he shall receive me.

B. C. 534.] Dan. 12. 2. And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame *and* everlasting contempt.

A. D. 27.] John 5. 28. Marvel not at this: for the hour is coming, in the which all that are in the graves shall hear his voice, ²⁹ And shall come forth; they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 15. 12. Now if Christ be preached that he rose from the dead, how say some among you that there is no resurrection of the dead? ¹³ But if there be no resurrection of the dead, then is Christ not risen: ¹⁴ And if Christ be not risen, then *is* our preaching vain, and your faith *is* also vain. ¹⁵ Yea, and we are found false witnesses of God; because we have testified of God that he raised up Christ: whom he raised not up, if so be that the dead rise not. ¹⁶ For if the dead rise not, then is not Christ raised. ²⁰ But now is Christ risen from the dead, *and* become the firstfruits of them that slept.

A. D. 60.] Acts 23. 6. But when Paul perceived that the one part were Sadducees, and the other Pharisees, he cried out in the council, Men *and* brethren, I am a Pharisee, the son of a Pharisee: of the hope and resurrection of the dead I am called in question.

Acts 24. 15. And have hope toward God, which they themselves also allow, that there shall be a resurrection of the dead, both of the just and unjust.

A. D. 62.] Acts 26. 8. Why should it be thought a thing incredible with you, that God should raise the dead?

§ 293. *In the resurrection, the righteous dead will first be raised; the righteous then living on earth will be changed, and all the righteous will meet the Lord in the air, and be with him forever.*

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 4. 13. But I would not have you to be ignorant, brethren, concerning them which are asleep, that ye sorrow not, even as others which have no hope. ¹⁴ For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him. ¹⁵ For this we say unto you by the word of the Lord, that we which are alive *and* remain unto the coming of the Lord shall not prevent them which are asleep. ¹⁶ For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in

Christ shall rise first: ¹⁷ Then we which are alive *and* remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 15. 22. For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive. ²³ But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ's at his coming. ⁵¹ Behold, I show you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed. ⁵² In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 4. 14. He which raised up the Lord Jesus shall raise up us also by Jesus, and shall present *us* with you.

§ 294. *In the resurrection the bodies of the righteous will be heavenly, spiritual, incorruptible, and immortal.*

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 15. 35. But some *man* will say, How are the dead raised up? and with what body do they come? ³⁶ *Thou* fool, that which thou sowest is not quickened, except it die: ³⁷ And that which thou sowest, thou sowest not that body that shall be, but bare grain, it may chance of wheat, or of some other *grain*: ³⁸ But God giveth it a body as it hath pleased him, and to every seed his own body. ³⁹ All flesh is not the same flesh: but *there is* one *kind of* flesh of men, another flesh of beasts, another of fishes, *and* another of birds. ⁴⁰ *There are* also celestial bodies, and bodies terrestrial: but the glory of the celestial *is* one, and the *glory* of the terrestrial *is* another. ⁴¹ *There is* one glory of the sun, and another glory of the moon, and another glory of the stars; for *one* star differeth from *another* star in glory. ⁴² So also *is* the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption, it is raised in incorruption: ⁴³ It is sown in dishonour, it is raised in glory: it is sown in weakness, it is raised in power: ⁴⁴ It is sown a natural body, it is raised a spiritual body. There is a natural body, and there is a spiritual body. ⁴⁵ And so it is written, The first man Adam was made a living soul; the last Adam *was made* a quickening spirit. ⁴⁶ Howbeit that *was* not first which is spiritual, but that which is natural; and afterward that which is spiritual. ⁴⁷ The first man *is* of the earth, earthy: the second man *is* the Lord from heaven. ⁴⁸ As *is* the earthy, such *are* they also that are earthy: and as is the heavenly, such *are* they also that are heavenly. ⁴⁹ And as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly. ⁵⁰ Now this I say, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God; neither doth

corruption inherit incorruption. ⁵¹ Behold, I show you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, ⁵² In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed. ⁵³ For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal *must* put on immortality. ⁵⁴ So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. ⁵⁵ O death, where *is* thy sting? O grave, where *is* thy victory? ⁵⁶ The sting of death *is* sin; and the strength of sin *is* the law. ⁵⁷ But thanks *be* to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 5. 1. For we know that, if our earthly house of *this* tabernacle were dissolved, we have a building of God, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens. ² For in this we groan, earnestly desiring to be clothed upon with our house which is from heaven: ³ If so be that being clothed we shall not be found naked. ⁴ For we that are in *this* tabernacle do groan, being burdened: not for that we would be unclothed, but clothed upon, that mortality might be swallowed up of life.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 8. 11. But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you. ¹⁹ For the earnest expectation of the creature waiteth for the manifestation of the sons of God. ²⁰ For the creature was made subject to vanity, not willingly, but by reason of him who hath subjected *the same* in hope; ²¹ Because the creature itself also shall be delivered from the bondage of corruption into the glorious liberty of the children of God. ²² For we know that the whole creation groaneth and travaileth in pain together until now. ²³ And not only *they*, but ourselves also, which have the firstfruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption, *to wit*, the redemption of our body.

§ 295. *In the resurrection the bodies of the righteous shall be like the body of Christ.*

A. D. 62.] Phil. 3. 20. For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ: ²¹ Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.

§ 286. *The body of Christ, after his resurrection, was of flesh and bone ; but was not subject to the laws which control the natural body.*

A. D. 29.] Luke 24. 31. And their eyes were opened, and they knew him; and HE VANISHED OUT OF THEIR SIGHT.

John 20. 19. Then the same day at evening, being the first day of the week, when the doors were shut where the disciples were assembled for fear of the Jews, came Jesus and stood in the midst, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you.

Luke 24. 37. But they were terrified and affrighted, and supposed that they had seen a spirit. ³⁸ And he said unto them, Why are ye troubled? and why do thoughts arise in your hearts? ³⁹ Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me, and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have. ⁴⁰ And when he had thus spoken, he showed them *his* hands and *his* feet. ⁵¹ And it came to pass, while he blessed them, he was parted from them, and CARRIED UP into heaven.

§ 297. *At the resurrection in the end of the world God will judge every person by Jesus Christ. Then each one will receive his just reward. The righteous shall live forever with God, the wicked shall go into everlasting punishment.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 13. 38. The field is the world; the good seed are the children of the kingdom; but the tares are the children of the wicked *one*; ³⁹ The enemy that sowed them is the devil; the harvest is the end of the world; and the reapers are the angels. ⁴⁰ As therefore the tares are gathered and burned in the fire; so shall it be in the end of this world. ⁴¹ The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity; ⁴² And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth. ⁴³ Then shall the righteous shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father. Who hath ears to hear, let him hear. ⁴⁹ So shall it be at the end of the world: the angels shall come forth, and sever the wicked from among the just, ⁵⁰ And shall cast them into the furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth.

Matt. 16. 27. For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 25. 31. When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory: ³² And before him shall be gath-

ered all nations: and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth *his* sheep from the goats: ³³ And he shall set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left. ³⁴ Then shall the King say unto them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world: ³⁵ For I was ahungred, and ye gave me meat: I was thirsty, and ye gave me drink: I was a stranger, and ye took me in: ³⁶ Naked, and ye clothed me: I was sick, and ye visited me: I was in prison, and ye came unto me. ³⁷ Then shall the righteous answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee ahungred, and fed *thee*? or thirsty, and gave *thee* drink? ³⁸ When saw we thee a stranger, and took *thee* in? or naked, and clothed *thee*? ³⁹ Or when saw we thee sick, or in prison, and came unto thee? ⁴⁰ And the King shall answer and say unto them, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye have done *it* unto one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done *it* unto me. ⁴¹ Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels: ⁴² For I was ahungred, and ye gave me no meat: I was thirsty, and ye gave me no drink: ⁴³ I was a stranger, and ye took me not in: naked, and ye clothed me not: sick, and in prison, and ye visited me not. ⁴⁴ Then shall they also answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee ahungred, or athirst, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not minister unto thee? ⁴⁵ Then shall he answer them, saying, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye did *it* not to one of the least of these, ye did *it* not to me. ⁴⁶ And these shall go away into everlasting punishment: but the righteous into life eternal.

A. D. 54.] Acts 17. 31. Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by *that* man whom he hath ordained; *whereof* he hath given assurance unto all *men*, in that he hath raised him from the dead.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 5. 10. For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things *done* in *his* body, according to that he hath done, whether *it* be good or bad.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 2. 6. Who will render to every man according to his deeds: ⁷ To them who by patient continuance in well doing seek for glory and honour and immortality, eternal life: ⁸ But unto them that are contentious, and do not obey the truth, but obey unrighteousness, indignation and wrath, ⁹ Tribulation and anguish, upon every soul of man that doeth evil; of the Jew first, and also of the Gentile; ¹⁰ But glory, honour, and peace, to every man that worketh good; to the Jew first, and also to the Gentile: ¹¹ For there is no respect of persons with God. ¹² For as many as have sinned without law shall also perish without law; and as many as have sinned in

the law shall be judged by the law; ¹⁶ In the day when God shall judge the secrets of men by Jesus Christ according to my gospel.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 14. 10. But why dost thou judge thy brother? or why dost thou set at naught thy brother? for we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ. ¹¹ For it is written, As I live, saith the Lord, every knee shall bow to me, and every tongue shall confess to God. ¹² So then every one of us shall give account of himself to God.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 20. 12. And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is *the book of life*: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. ¹³ And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. ¹⁵ And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

§ 298. *For every idle word, and for every action, both secret and open, shall men give account in the Day of Judgment.*

B. C. 977.] Eccl. 11. 9. Rejoice, O young man, in thy youth; and let thy heart cheer thee in the days of thy youth, and walk in the ways of thine heart, and in the sight of thine eyes: but know thou, that for all these *things* God will bring thee into judgment.

Eccl. 12. 14. For God shall bring every work into judgment, with every secret thing, whether *it be* good, or whether *it be* evil.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 12. 36. But I say unto you, That every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 4. 5. Therefore judge nothing before the time, until the Lord come, who both will bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the hearts.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 2. 16. In the day when God shall judge the secrets of men by Jesus Christ according to my gospel.

§ 299. *No man, neither the angels, nor the Son, but the Father only, knows when the End and the General Judgment shall be.*

A. D. 29.] Mark 13. 32. But of that day and *that* hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels which are in heaven, neither

the Son, but the Father. ³³ Take ye heed, watch and pray: for ye know not when the time is.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 1. But of the times and the seasons, brethren, ye have no need that I write unto you. ² For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night. ³ For when they shall say, Peace and safety; then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape. ⁴ But ye, brethren, are not in darkness, that that day should overtake you as a thief. ⁶ Therefore let us not sleep, as *do* others; but let us watch and be sober.

A. D. 60.] 2 Peter 3. 10. But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.

§ 300. *All should repent and turn unto God that he may have mercy, and forgive them.*

B. C. 1520.] Job 36. 10. He openeth also their ear to discipline, and commandeth that they return from iniquity. ¹¹ If they obey and serve *him*, they shall spend their days in prosperity, and their years in pleasures.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 55. 7. Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the Lord, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon.

A. D. 594.] Ezek. 18. 21. But if the wicked will turn from all his sins that he hath committed, and keep all my statutes, and do that which is lawful and right, he shall surely live, he shall not die. ²² All his transgressions that he hath committed they shall not be mentioned unto him: in his righteousness that he hath done he shall live. ²⁴ But when the righteous turneth away from his righteousness, and committeth iniquity, *and* doeth according to all the abominations that the wicked man doeth, shall he live? All his righteousness that he hath done shall not be mentioned: in his trespass that he has trespassed, and in his sin that he hath sinned, in them shall he die. ²⁷ Again, when the wicked *man* turneth away from his wickedness that he hath committed, and doeth that which is lawful and right, he shall save his soul alive. ²⁸ Because he considereth, and turneth away from all his transgressions that he hath committed, he shall surely live, he shall not die. ³⁰ Therefore I will judge you, O house of Israel, every one according to his ways, saith the Lord God. Repent, and turn *yourselves* from all your transgressions; so iniquity shall not be your ruin. ³¹ Cast away from you all your transgres-

sions, whereby ye have transgressed; and make you a new heart and a new spirit: for why will ye die, O house of Israel? ³² For I have no pleasure in the death of him that dieth, saith the Lord God: wherefore turn *yourselves*, and live ye.

B. C. 690.] Joel 2. 12. Therefore also now, saith the Lord, turn ye *even* to me with all your heart, and with fasting, and with weeping, and with mourning: ¹³ And rend your heart, and not your garments, and turn unto the Lord your God: for he *is* gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repenteth him of the evil.

A. D. 570.] Zech. 1. 3. Turn ye unto me, saith the Lord of hosts, and I will turn unto you, saith the Lord of hosts.

A. D. 26.] Matt. 3. 1. In those days came John the Baptist, preaching in the wilderness of Judea, ² And saying, Repent ye: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand. ⁸ Bring forth therefore fruits meet for repentance.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 4. 17. From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

A. D. 29.] Acts 2. 37. Now when they heard *this*, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men *and* brethren, what shall we do? ³⁸ Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. ³⁹ For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call.

Acts 3. 19. Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord.

A. D. 54.] Acts 17. 30. And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commandeth all men every where to repent.

A. D. 60.] Acts 20. 20. I kept back nothing that was profitable *unto you*, but have showed you, and have taught you publicly, and from house to house, ²¹ Testifying both to the Jews, and also to the Greeks, repentance toward God, and faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ.

A. D. 62.] Acts 26. 20. But showed first unto them of Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judea, and *then* to the Gentiles, that they should repent and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance.

§ 301. *God offers forgiveness and salvation unto all who repent and believe in the Lord Jesus Christ.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 55. 1. Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and

eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price. ² Wherefore do ye spend money for *that which is* not bread? and your labour for *that which* satisfieth not? hearken diligently unto me, and eat ye *that which is* good, and let your soul delight itself in fatness. ³ Incline your ear, and come unto me: hear, and your soul shall live; and I will make an everlasting covenant with you, even the sure mercies of David. ⁴ Behold, I have given him *for* a witness to the people, a leader and commander to the people. ⁵ Behold, thou shalt call a nation *that* thou knowest not, and nations *that* knew not thee shall run unto thee, because of the Lord thy God, and for the Holy One of Israel; for he hath glorified thee. ⁶ Seek ye the Lord while he may be found, call ye upon him while he is near: ⁷ Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the Lord, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon.

A. D. 27.] John 3. 16. For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

A. D. 28.] John 6. 47. Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath everlasting life.

A. D. 31.] Acts 10. 43. To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

A. D. 53.] Acts 16. 31. Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 5. 8. But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. ⁹ Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him. ¹⁰ For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son; much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.

Rom. 10. 9. That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 4. 9. In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him. ¹⁰ Herein is love, not that we love God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son *to be* the propitiation for our sins.

§ 302. *None can come unto God but by Jesus Christ.*

A. D. 29.] John 10. 7. Then said Jesus unto them again, Verily, verily, I say unto you, I am the door of the sheep. ⁸ All that ever came before me are thieves and robbers; but the sheep did not hear them. ⁹ I am the door: by me if any man

enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture.

A. D. 29.] John 14. 6. Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Acts 4. 12. Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 2. 18. For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father.

§ 303. *Whoever would be saved must believe that Jesus is the Son of God.*

A. D. 27.] John 3. 18. He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

A. D. 29.] John 9. 35. Jesus heard that they had cast him out; and when he had found him, he said unto him, Dost thou believe on the Son of God? ³⁶ He answered and said, Who is he, Lord, that I might believe on him? ³⁷ And Jesus said unto him, Thou hast both seen him, and it is he that talketh with thee. ³⁸ And he said, Lord, I believe. And he worshipped him.

John 20. 31. But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

A. D. 32.] Acts 8. 36. And as they went on *their* way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, See, *here is* water; what doth hinder me to be baptized? ³⁷ And Philip said, If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. ³⁸ And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 10. 29. Of how much sorer punishment, suppose ye, shall he be thought worthy, who hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing, and hath done despite unto the Spirit of grace?

A. D. 69.] 1 John 2. 23. Whosoever denieth the Son, the same hath not the Father.

1 John 4. 15. Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God.

1 John 5. 5. Who is he that overcometh the world, but he that believeth that Jesus is the Son of God? ¹² He that hath the Son hath life; *and* he that hath not the Son of God hath not life. ¹³ These things have I written unto you that

believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.

§ 304. *The Righteous know and understand God.*

B. c. 1015.] 1 Chron. 28. 9. Know thou the God of thy Father, and serve him with a perfect heart and with a willing mind.

B. c. 785.] Hos. 2. 20. I will even betroth thee unto me in faithfulness; and thou shalt know the Lord.

B. c. 780.] Hos. 6. 6. For I desired mercy, and not sacrifice; and the knowledge of God more than burnt offerings.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 43. 10. Ye *are* my witnesses, saith the Lord, and my servant whom I have chosen; that ye may know and believe me, and understand that I *am* he.

B. c. 710.] Jer. 9. 23. Thus saith the Lord, Let not the wise *man* glory in his wisdom, neither let the mighty *man* glory in his might, let not the rich *man* glory in his riches: ²⁴But let him that glorieth glory in this, that he understandeth and knoweth me, that I *am* the Lord which exercise loving-kindness, judgment, and righteousness, in the earth: for in these *things* I delight, saith the Lord.

B. c. 587.] Jer. 31. 33. But this *shall be* the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people. ³⁴And they shall teach no more every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the Lord: for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.

B. c. 534.] Dan. 11. 32. The people that do know their God shall be strong, and do *exploits*. ³³And they that understand among the people shall instruct many.

B. c. 515.] Psa. 48. 2. Beautiful for situation, the joy of the whole earth, *is* mount Zion. ³God is known in her palaces for a refuge.

§ 305. *To know God and Jesus Christ is Eternal Life.*

A. D. 29.] John 17. 3. And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

§ 306. *The wicked and worldly do not know nor understand God.*

B. c. 780.] Hos. 4. 1. Hear the word of the Lord, ye children of Israel: for the Lord hath a controversy with the in-

habitants of the land, because *there is* no truth, nor mercy, nor knowledge of God in the land.

B. C. 780.] Hos. 5. 4. They will not frame their doings to turn unto their God: for the spirit of whoredoms *is* in the midst of them, and they have not known the Lord.

B. C. 612.] Jer. 4. 22. For my people *is* foolish, they have not known me; they *are* sottish children, and they have none understanding: they *are* wise to do evil, but to do good they have no knowledge.

Jer. 5. 4. Therefore I said, Surely these *are* poor; they are foolish: for they know not the way of the Lord, *nor* the judgment of their God.

Jer. 9. 3. And they bend their tongues *like* their bow *for* lies: but they are not valiant for the truth upon the earth; for they proceed from evil to evil, and they know not me, saith the Lord.

A. D. 29.] John 8. 19. Jesus answered, Ye neither know me, nor my Father: if ye had known me, ye should have known my Father also. ⁵⁴It is my Father that honoureth me; of whom ye say, that he is your God: ⁵⁵Yet ye have not known him; but I know him: and if I should say, I know him not, I shall be a liar like unto you: but I know him, and keep his saying.

John 16. 2. They shall put you out of the synagogues: yea, the time cometh, that whosoever killeth you will think that he doeth God service. ³And these things will they do unto you, because they have not known the Father, nor me.

John 17. 25. O righteous Father, the world hath not known thee.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 4. 4. That every one of you should know how to possess his vessel in sanctification and honour; ⁵Not in the lust of concupiscence, even as the Gentiles which know not God.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 15. 34. Awake to righteousness, and sin not; for some have not the knowledge of God: I speak *this* to your shame.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 4. 8. He that loveth not, knoweth not God; for God is love.

§ 307. *No man can come to Christ except the Father draw him.*

A. D. 29.] John 6. 44. No man can come to me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him: and I will raise him up at the last day. ⁴⁵It is written in the prophets, And they shall be all taught of God. Every man therefore that hath heard, and hath learned of the Father, cometh unto me.

⁶⁴But there are some of you that believe not. For Jesus

knew from the beginning who they were that believed not, and who should betray him. ⁶⁵ And he said, Therefore said I unto you, that no man can come unto me, except it were given unto him of my Father.

§ 308. *Christ died a ransom for all, and all are drawn unto Him.*

A. D. 29.] John 12. 32. And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all *men* unto me.

Acts 3. 26. Unto you first, God having raised up his Son Jesus, sent him to bless you, in turning away every one of you from his iniquities.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 5. 14. For the love of Christ constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead: ¹⁵ And *that* he died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 5. 18. Therefore, as by the offence of one *judgment* came upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one *the free gift* came upon all men unto justification of life.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 2. 9. But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 2. 3. For this *is* good and acceptable in the sight of God our Saviour; ⁴ Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth. ⁵ For *there is* one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus; ⁶ Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time.

§ 309. *Every one that thirsts, and whosoever will, may take of the water of life freely.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 55. 1. Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price. ² Wherefore do ye spend money for *that which is* not bread? and your labour for *that which* satisfieth not? hearken diligently unto me, and eat ye *that which is* good, and let your soul delight itself in fatness. ³ Incline your ear, and come unto me: hear, and your soul shall live; and I will make an everlasting covenant with you, *even* the sure mercies of David.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 6. Blessed *are* they which do hunger and thirst after righteousness: for they shall be filled.

A. D. 29.] John 7. 37. In the last day, that great *day* of the

feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me and drink.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 22. 17. And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.

§ 310. *Every one shall make his own choice, whether to serve God or not.*

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 30. 19. I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live.

B. C. 1443.] Josh. 24. 15. And if it seem evil unto you to serve the Lord, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that *were* on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve the Lord. ²¹ And the people said unto Joshua, Nay; but we will serve the Lord. ²² And Joshua said unto the people, Ye *are* witnesses against yourselves that ye have chosen you the Lord, to serve him. And they said, *We are* witnesses.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 3. 31. Envy thou not the oppressor, and choose none of his ways.

B. C. 906.] 1 Kings 18. 21. And Elijah came unto all the people, and said, How long halt ye between two opinions? if the Lord *be* God, follow him: but if Baal, *then* follow him.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 66. 3. They have chosen their own ways, and their soul delighteth in their abomination.

A. D. 29.] John 6. 66. From that *time* many of his disciples went back, and walked no more with him. ⁶⁷ Then said Jesus unto the twelve, Will ye also go away? ⁶⁸ Then Simon Peter answered him, Lord, to whom shall we go? thou hast the words of eternal life.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 11. 24. By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter; ²⁵ Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season; ²⁶ Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompense of the reward.

§ 311. *Every one who chooses to do his will shall know that the doctrines of Jesus are of God, but the natural man cannot know them, because they are spiritually discerned.*

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 28. 5. Evil men understand not judgment: but they that seek the Lord understand all *things*.

B. C. 539.] Psal. 25. 14. The secret of the Lord *is* with them that fear him; and he will show them his covenant.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 11. 25. At that time Jesus answered and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes.

Matt. 13. 10. And the disciples came, and said unto him, Why speakest thou unto them in parables? ¹¹ He answered and said unto them, Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given. ¹² For whosoever hath, to him shall be given, and he shall have more abundance: but whosoever hath not, from him shall be taken away even that he hath. ¹³ Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand. ¹⁴ And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive: ¹⁵ For this people's heart is waxed gross, and *their* ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with *their* eyes, and hear with *their* ears, and should understand with *their* heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them. ¹⁶ But blessed *are* your eyes, for they see: and your ears, for they hear.

A. D. 27.] John 3. 3. Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.

A. D. 28.] Matt. 16. 17. And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Bar-jona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed *it* unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven.

A. D. 29.] John 7. 17. If any man will* do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or *whether* I speak of myself.

John 16. 13. Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will show you things to come. ¹⁴ He shall glorify me: for he shall receive of mine, and shall show *it* unto you.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 2. 6. Howbeit we speak wisdom among them that are perfect: yet not the wisdom of this world, nor of the princes of this world, that come to nought: ⁷ But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, *even* the hidden *wisdom*, which God ordained before the world unto our glory; ⁸ Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory. ⁹ But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither

* Choose to do.

have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him. ¹⁰ But God hath revealed *them* unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God. ¹² Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. ¹³ Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual. ¹⁴ But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God; for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned. ¹⁵ But he that is spiritual judgeth all things, yet he himself is judged of no man.

§ 312. *It is impossible to please God, unless we believe Him.*

B. c. 896.] 2 Chron. 20. 20. Believe in the Lord your God, so shall ye be established; believe his prophets, so shall ye prosper.

B. c. 444.] Psal. 119. 66. Teach me good judgment and knowledge: for I have believed thy commandments.

A. D. 29.] Mark 11. 22. And Jesus answering saith unto them, Have faith in God.

A. D. 61.] James 2. 19. Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 11. 6. But without faith *it is* impossible to please *him*: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and *that* he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.

§ 313. *Faith in Christ, and confession of Him before men, are Necessary to Salvation.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 10. 32. Whosoever therefore shall confess me before men, him will I confess also before my Father which is in heaven.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 10. 9. That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved. ¹⁰ For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation. ¹¹ For the Scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

§ 314. *If we deny Him, he will deny us.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 10. 33. But whosoever shall deny me before men, him will I also deny before my Father which is in heaven.

A. D. 27.] Luke 12. 9. But he that denieth me before men shall be denied before the angels of God.

A. D. 60.] 2 Peter 2. 1. But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 2. 12. If we deny *him*, he also will deny us.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 2. 23. Whosoever denieth the Son, the same hath not the Father.

§ 315. *The Evidences of Christianity are sufficient to give Assurance.*

A. D. 27.] John 4. 42. We have heard *him* ourselves, and know that this is indeed the Christ, the Saviour of the world.

A. D. 28.] John 6. 69. And we believe and are sure that thou art that Christ, the Son of the living God.

A. D. 29.] John 16. 30. Now are we sure that thou knowest all things, and needest not that any man should ask thee: by this we believe that thou camest forth from God.

Acts 2. 36. Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made that same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 1. 5. For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance.

A. D. 53.] Acts 17. 31. Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by *that* man whom he hath ordained; *whereof* he hath given assurance unto all *men*, in that he hath raised him from the dead.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 4. 9. For we say that faith was reckoned to Abraham for righteousness. ²⁰ He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God; ²¹ And being FULLY PERSUADED that what he had promised, he was able also to perform.

A. D. 62.] Col. 2. 2. That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the FULL ASSURANCE of understanding, to the acknowledgment of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 3. 14. But continue thou in the things which thou hast learned and hast been assured of, knowing of whom thou hast learned *them*.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 3. 19. And hereby we KNOW that we are of the truth, and shall assure our hearts before him.

§ 316. *Stand fast in the Faith.*

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 3. 8. For now we live, if ye stand fast in the Lord.

2 Thess. 2. 15. Therefore, brethren, stand fast, and hold the traditions which ye have been taught, whether by word or our epistle.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 16. 13. Watch ye, stand fast in the faith, quit you like men, be strong.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 13. 5. Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 6. 16. Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked.

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 21. And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in *your* mind by wicked works, yet now hath he reconciled ²²In the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblameable and unreprouceable in his sight: ²³If ye continue in the faith grounded and settled, and *be* not moved away from the hope of the gospel, which ye have heard.

Col. 2. 6. As ye have therefore received Christ Jesus the Lord, *so* walk ye in him: ⁷Rooted and built up in him, and stablished in the faith, as ye have been taught, abounding therein with thanksgiving. ⁸Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 10. 23. Let us hold fast the profession of *our* faith without wavering; for he *is* faithful that promised.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 6. 12. Fight the good fight of faith, lay hold on eternal life, whereunto thou art also called, and hast professed a good profession before many witnesses.

Titus 1. 13. Rebuke them sharply, that they may be sound in the faith.

2 Tim. 1. 13. Hold fast the form of sound words, which thou hast heard of me, in faith and love which is in Christ Jesus.

§ 317. *Cast all burdens and cares on the Lord, and trust Him.*

B. C. 1023.] Psal. 4. 5. Offer the sacrifices of righteousness, and put your trust in the Lord.

B. C. 1033.] Psal. 55. 22. Cast thy burden upon the Lord, and he shall sustain thee: he shall never suffer the righteous to be moved.

Psal. 62. 8. Trust in him at all times; ye people, pour out your heart before him: God *is* a refuge for us.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 3. 5. Trust in the Lord with all thine heart; and lean not unto thine own understanding. ⁶ In all thy ways acknowledge him, and he shall direct thy paths.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 26. 3. Thou wilt keep *him* in perfect peace, *whose mind is stayed on thee*: because he trusteth in thee. ⁴ Trust ye in the Lord for ever: for in the Lord JEHOVAH is everlasting strength.

Isa. 50. 10. Who *is* among you that feareth the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh *in* darkness, and hath no light? let him trust in the name of the Lord, and stay upon his God.

B. C. 539.] Psa. 37. 3. Trust in the Lord, and do good; *so* shalt thou dwell in the land, and verily thou shalt be fed. ⁴ Delight thyself also in the Lord; and he shall give thee the desires of thine heart. ⁵ Commit thy way unto the Lord; trust also in him; and he shall bring *it* to pass. ⁶ And he shall bring forth thy righteousness as the light, and thy judgment as the noonday. ⁷ Rest in the Lord, and wait patiently for him: fret not thyself because of him who prospereth in his way, because of the man who bringeth wicked devices to pass. ⁸ Cease from anger, and forsake wrath: fret not thyself in any wise to do evil. ⁹ For evil doers shall be cut off: but those that wait upon the Lord, they shall inherit the earth.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 1. 9. But we had the sentence of death in ourselves, that we should not trust in ourselves, but in God which raiseth the dead.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 5. 6. Humble yourselves therefore under the mighty hand of God, that he may exalt you in due time: ⁷ Casting all your care upon him; for he careth for you.

§ 318. *Love to God.*

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 6. 4. Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God *is* one Lord: ⁵ And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might.

Deut. 10. 12. And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul. ¹³ To keep the commandments of the Lord, and his statutes, which I command thee this day for thy good?

Deut. 11. 13. And it shall come to pass, if ye shall hearken diligently unto my commandments, which I command you this day, to love the Lord your God, and to serve him with all your heart and with all your soul, ¹⁴ That I will give *you* the rain of your land in his due season, the first rain and the latter rain, that thou mayest gather in thy corn, and thy wine, and thine oil. ¹⁵ Take heed to yourselves, that your heart be not

deceived, and ye turn aside, and serve other gods, and worship them.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 30. 15. See, I have set before thee this day life and good, and death and evil; ¹⁶ In that I command thee this day to love the Lord thy God, to walk in his ways, and to keep his commandments, and his statutes, and his judgments, that thou mayest live and multiply.

B. c. 1443.] Josh. 22. 5. But take diligent heed to do the commandment and the law, which Moses the servant of the Lord charged you, to love the Lord your God, and to walk in all his ways, and to keep his commandments, and to cleave unto him, and to serve him with all your heart and with all your soul.

B. c. 1060.] Psal. 31. 23. Oh love the Lord, all ye his saints: *for* the Lord preserveth the faithful, and plentifully rewardeth the proud doer.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 22. 37. Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. ³⁸ This is the first and great commandment.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 1. 4. According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love.

A. D. 65.] Jude 21. Keep yourselves in the love of God, looking for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto eternal life.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 4. 19. We love him, because he first loved us.

§ 319. *Fear of God.*

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 6. 13. Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God, and serve him, and shalt swear by his name. ²⁴ And the Lord commanded us to do all these statutes, to fear the Lord our God, for our good always, that he might preserve us alive, as *it is* at this day.

Deut. 10. 12. And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul, ¹³ To keep the commandments of the Lord, and his statutes, which I command thee this day for thy good?

B. c. 1443.] Josh. 24. 14. Now therefore fear the Lord, and serve him in sincerity and in truth.

B. c. 1095.] 1 Sam. 12. 24. Only fear the Lord, and serve him in truth with all your heart: for consider how great *things* he hath done for you.

B. c. 1044.] Psal. 22. 23. Ye that fear the Lord, praise him;

all ye the seed of Jacob, glorify him; and fear him, all ye the seed of Israel.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 23. 17. Let not thine heart envy sinners; but *be thou* in the fear of the Lord all the day long.

B. c. 977.] Eccl. 3. 14. I know that, whatsoever God doeth, it shall be for ever: nothing can be put to it, nor any thing taken from it: and God doeth *it*, that *men* should fear before him.

Eccl. 12. 13. Let us hear the conclusion of the whole matter: Fear God, and keep his commandments: for this *is* the whole *duty* of man. ¹⁴ For God shall bring every work into judgment, with every secret thing, whether *it be* good, or whether *it be* evil.

B. c. 742.] Isa. 8. 13. Sanctify the Lord of hosts himself; and *let him be* your fear, and *let him be* your dread.

B. c. 612.] Jer. 5. 22. Fear ye not me? saith the Lord: will ye not tremble at my presence, which have placed the sand *for* the bound of the sea by a perpetual decree, that it cannot pass it: and though the waves thereof toss themselves, yet can they not prevail; though they roar, yet can they not pass over it?

A. D. 27.] Matt. 10. 28. And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 12. 28. Whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 14. 7. Fear God, and give glory to him; for the hour of his judgment is come: and worship him that made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and the fountains of waters.

§ 320. *The Fear of the Lord is Wisdom, and by it men depart from Evil.*

B. c. 1520.] Job 28. 28. And unto man he said, Behold, the fear of the Lord, that *is* wisdom; and to depart from evil is understanding.

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 19. 9. The fear of the Lord is clean, enduring for ever.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 1. 7. The fear of the Lord *is* the beginning of knowledge: but fools despise wisdom and instruction.

Prov. 3. 7. Be not wise in thine own eyes: fear the Lord, and depart from evil.

Prov. 8. 13. The fear of the Lord *is* to hate evil: pride, and arrogancy, and the evil way, and the froward mouth, do I hate.

Prov. 9. 10. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom: and the knowledge of the Holy *is* understanding.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 15. 33. The fear of the Lord *is* the instruction of wisdom; and before honour *is* humility.

Prov. 16. 6. By mercy and truth iniquity is purged: and by the fear of the Lord *men* depart from evil.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 7. 1. Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.

§ 321. *Reverence God.*

B. c. 539.] Psa. 89. 7. God is greatly to be feared in the assembly of the saints, and to be had in reverence of all *them that are* about him.

B. c. 536.] Psa. 111. 9. He sent redemption unto his people: he hath commanded his covenant for ever: holy and reverend *is* his name.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 12. 28. Wherefore we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear.

§ 322. *Seek God.*

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 4. 29. But if from thence thou shalt seek the Lord thy God, thou shalt find *him*, if thou seek him with all thy heart and with all thy soul.

B. c. 1060.] Psa. 34. 10. The young lions do lack, and suffer hunger: but they that seek the Lord shall not want any good *thing*.

B. c. 1041.] Psa. 105. 4. Seek the Lord, and his strength: seek his face evermore.

B. c. 1017.] 1 Chron. 22. 19. Now set your heart and your soul to seek the Lord your God.

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 69. 32. Your heart shall live that seek God.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 8. 17. I love them that love me; and those that seek me early shall find me.

B. c. 787.] Amos 5. 4. For thus saith the Lord unto the house of Israel, Seek ye me, and ye shall live. ^s *Seek him* that maketh the seven stars and Orion, and turneth the shadow of death into the morning, and maketh the day dark with night: that calleth for the waters of the sea, and poureth them out upon the face of the earth: The Lord *is* his name.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 55. 6. Seek ye the Lord while he may be found, call ye upon him while he is near.

B. c. 444.] Psa. 119. 2. Blessed *are* they that keep his testimonies, *and that* seek him with the whole heart.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 6. 33. But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 7. 7. Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you:
^s For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 11. 6. But without faith *it is* impossible to please *him*: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and *that* he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.

§ 323. *Worship God.*

B. C. 1044.] Psa. 22. 27. All the ends of the world shall remember and turn unto the Lord: and all the kindreds of the nations shall worship before thee.

B. C. 1015.] Psa. 86. 9. All nations whom thou hast made shall come and worship before thee, O Lord; and shall glorify thy name.

Psa. 95. 6. O come, let us worship and bow down: let us kneel before the Lord our maker.

B. C. 1004.] Psa. 99. 5. Exalt ye the Lord our God, and worship at his footstool; *for he is* holy.

B. C. 775.] 2 Kings 17. 36. But the Lord, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt with great power and a stretched out arm, him shall ye fear, and him shall ye worship, and to him shall ye do sacrifice.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 66. 23. And it shall come to pass, *that* from one new moon to another, and from one sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me, saith the Lord.

B. C. 630.] Zeph. 2. 11. And *men* shall worship him, every one from his place, *even* all the isles of the heathen.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 4. 10. Then saith Jesus unto him, Get thee hence, Satan: for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve.

John 4. 23. But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth; for the Father seeketh such to worship him. ²⁴ God *is* a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship *him* in spirit and in truth.

A. D. 60.] Acts 24. 14. But this I confess unto thee, that after the way which they call heresy, so worship I the God of my fathers, believing all things which are written in the law and in the prophets.

A. D. 62.] Phil. 3. 3. For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 14. 6. Worship him that made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and the fountains of waters.

Rev. 15. 4. Who shall not fear thee, O Lord, and glorify thy name? for *thou* only *art* holy: for all nations shall come

and worship before thee; for thy judgments are made manifest.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 22. 8. And I John saw these things, and heard *them*. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which showed me these things. ⁹ Then saith he unto me, See *thou do it* not: for I am thy fellow servant, and of thy brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God.

§ 324. *Pray without Ceasing.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 6. 5. And when thou prayest, thou shalt not be as the hypocrites *are*: for they love to pray standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men.

A. D. 29.] Luke 18. 1. And he spake a parable unto them *to this end*, that men ought always to pray, and not to faint.

Luke 21. 36. Watch ye therefore, and pray always.

Matt. 26. 41. Watch and pray, that ye enter not into temptation.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 17. Pray without ceasing. ¹⁸ In every thing give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 12. 12. Continuing instant in prayer.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 4. 7. But the end of all things is at hand: be ye therefore sober, and watch unto prayer.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 6. 18. Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints; ¹⁹ And for me, that utterance may be given unto me, that I may open my mouth boldly, to make known the mystery of the gospel.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 2. 8. I will therefore that men pray every where, lifting up holy hands, without wrath and doubting.

§ 325. *Pray to God, and do it in the name of the Lord Jesus.*

B. C. 1023.] Psal. 62. 5. My soul, wait thou only upon God; for my expectation *is* from him. ⁸ Trust in him at all times; ye people, pour out your heart before him: God *is* a refuge for us.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 43. 26. Put me in remembrance: let us plead together: declare thou, that thou mayest be justified.

B. C. 588.] Lam. 3. 41. Let us lift up our heart with *our* hands unto God in the heavens.

A. D. 29.] John 14. 13. And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. ¹⁴ If ye shall ask any thing in my name, I will do *it*.

A. D. 29.] John 15. 16. Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit, and *that* your fruit should remain; that whatsoever ye shall ask of the Father in my name, he may give it you.

John 16. 23. And in that day ye shall ask me nothing. Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, he will give *it* you. ²⁴ Hitherto have ye asked nothing in my name: ask, and ye shall receive, that your joy may be full.

A. D. 62.] Phil. 4. 6. Be careful for nothing; but in everything by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God. ⁷ And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.

Col. 3. 17. And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, *do* all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.

§ 326. *If we do not ask according to God's will we do not receive.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 20. 20. Then came to him the mother of Zebedee's children with her sons, worshipping *him*, and desiring a certain thing of him. ²¹ And he said unto her, What wilt thou? She saith unto him, Grant that these my two sons may sit; the one on thy right hand, and the other on the left, in thy kingdom. ²² But Jesus answered and said, Ye know not what ye ask. Are ye able to drink of the cup that I shall drink of, and to be baptized with the baptism that I am baptized with? They say unto him, We are able. ²³ And he saith unto them, Ye shall drink indeed of my cup, and be baptized with the baptism that I am baptized with: but to sit on my right hand, and on my left, is not mine to give, but *it shall be given to them* for whom it is prepared of my Father.

A. D. 61.] James 4. 3. Ye ask, and receive not, because ye ask amiss, that ye may consume *it* upon your lusts.

§ 327. *If we ask according to His will, and believe, we receive whatever we ask.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 7. 7. Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you: ⁸ For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened. ⁹ Or what man is there of you, whom if his son ask bread, will he give him a stone? ¹⁰ Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent? ¹¹ If ye then, being evil, know how to give good

gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father which is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

A. D. 29.] Matt. 21. 22. And all things, whatsoever ye shall ask in prayer, believing, ye shall receive.

A. D. 61.] James 5. 16. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much. ¹⁷ Elias was a man subject to like passions as we are, and he prayed earnestly that it might not rain: and it rained not on the earth by the space of three years and six months. ¹⁸ And he prayed again, and the heaven gave rain, and the earth brought forth her fruit.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 3. 22. And whatsoever we ask, we receive of him, because we keep his commandments, and do those things that are pleasing in his sight. ²³ And this is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and love one another, as he gave us commandment.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 5. 14. And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us. ¹⁵ And if we know that he hear us, whatsoever we ask, we know that we have the petitions that we desired of him.

§ 328. *Do not make vain repetitions when praying, neither use an unknown language.*

B. C. 977.] Eccl. 5. 1. Keep thy foot when thou goest to the house of God, and be more ready to hear, than to give the sacrifice of fools: for they consider not that they do evil. ² Be not rash with thy mouth, and let not thine heart be hasty to utter *any* thing before God: for God *is* in heaven, and thou upon earth: therefore let thy words be few.

B. C. 725.] Hos. 14. 2. Take with you words, and turn to the Lord: say unto him, Take away all iniquity, and receive *us* graciously: so will we render the calves of our lips.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 6. 5. And when thou prayest, thou shalt not be as the hypocrites *are*: for they love to pray standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, They have their reward. ⁶ But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father which is in secret; and thy Father which seeth in secret shall reward thee openly. ⁷ But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen *do*: for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking. ⁸ Be not ye therefore like unto them: for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of, before ye ask him.

B. C. 56.] 1 Cor. 14. 14. For if I pray in an *unknown* tongue, my spirit prayeth, but my understanding is unfruitful. ¹⁵ What

is it then? I will pray with the spirit, and I will pray with the understanding also: I will sing with the spirit, and I will sing with the understanding also. ¹⁹ Yet in the church I had rather speak five words with my understanding, than *by my voice* I might teach others also, than ten thousand words in an *unknown* tongue.

§ 329. *After this manner therefore Pray ye.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 6. 9. Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy name. ¹⁰ Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done in earth, as *it is* in heaven. ¹¹ Give us this day our daily bread. ¹² And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors. ¹³ And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil: For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever. Amen.

§ 330. *We are created and redeemed that we may show forth the glory, and praise, and kindness of God.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 43. 1. But now thus saith the Lord that created thee, O Jacob, and he that formed thee, O Israel, Fear not: for I have redeemed thee, I have called *thee* by thy name; thou *art* mine. ³ I gave Egypt for thy ransom, Ethiopia and Seba for thee. ⁷ *Even* every one that is called by my name: for I have created him for my glory, I have formed him; yea, I have made him. ²¹ This people have I formed for myself; they shall show forth my praise.

B. C. 538.] Psal. 102. 18. This shall be written for the generation to come: and the people which shall be created shall praise the Lord.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 2. 9. But ye *are* a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should show forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 1. 5. Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will, ⁶ To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved: ¹² That we should be to the praise of his glory, who first trusted in Christ.

Eph. 2. 4. But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us, ⁵ Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved,) ⁶ And hath raised *us* up together, and made *us* sit together in heavenly *places* in Christ Jesus: ⁷ That in the ages to come he might show the exceeding riches of his grace, in *his* kindness toward us, through Christ Jesus.

§ 331. *God has chosen you that you may know, and believe, and understand Him, and be his Witnesses.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 43. 10. Ye *are* my witnesses, saith the Lord, and my servant whom I have chosen; that ye may know and believe me, and understand that I *am* he: before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me. ¹¹ I, *even* I, *am* the Lord; and beside me *there is* no saviour. ¹² I have declared, and have saved, and I have showed, when *there was* no strange *god* among you: therefore ye *are* my witnesses, saith the Lord, that I *am* God.

Isa. 44. 8. Fear ye not, neither be afraid: have not I told thee from that time, and have declared *it*? ye *are* even my witnesses. Is there a God beside me? yea, *there is* no God; I know not *any*.

§ 332. *Tell what God has done for you: speak often one to another, exhorting one another.*

B. C. 1044.] Psa. 105. 1. Oh give thanks unto the Lord; call upon his name: make known his deeds among the people. ² Sing unto him, sing psalms unto him: talk ye of all his wondrous works. ³ Glory ye in his holy name: let the heart of them rejoice that seek the Lord.

Psa. 51. 15. O Lord, open thou my lips; and my mouth shall show forth thy praise.

B. C. 535.] Psa. 66. 16. Come *and* hear, all ye that fear God, and I will declare what he hath done for my soul.

B. C. 397.] Mal. 3. 16. Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another: and the Lord hearkened, and heard *it*, and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name. ¹⁷ And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them, as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 4. 18. Wherefore comfort one another with these words.

1 Thess. 5. 11. Wherefore comfort yourselves together, and edify one another, even as also ye do. ¹⁴ Now we exhort you, brethren, warn them that are unruly, comfort the feeble-minded, support the weak, be patient toward all *men*.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 3. 13. But exhort one another daily, while it is called To day; lest any of you be hardened through the deceitfulness of sin.

Heb. 13. 16. But to do good and to communicate forget not: for with such sacrifices God is well pleased.

§ 333. *Sing unto God in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, with thanksgiving and praise in the name of Jesus Christ.*

B. c. 1041.] Psa. 106. 1. Praise ye the Lord. Oh give thanks unto the Lord; for *he is good*: for his mercy *endureth* for ever. ² Who can utter the mighty acts of the Lord? *who* can show forth all his praise?

B. c. 1034.] Psa. 33. 1. Rejoice in the Lord, O ye righteous: *for* praise is comely for the upright. ² Praise the Lord with harp: sing unto him with the psaltery *and* an instrument of ten strings. ³ Sing unto him a new song; play skilfully with a loud noise.

B. c. 1017.] Psa. 30. 4. Sing unto the Lord, O ye saints of his, and give thanks at the remembrance of his holiness.

B. c. 713.] Isa. 11. 10. And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.

Isa. 12. 1. And in that day thou shalt say, O Lord, I will praise thee: though thou wast angry with me, thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me. ² Behold, God *is* my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid: for the Lord JÉHOVAH *is* my strength and *my* song; he also is become my salvation. ³ Therefore with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation. ⁴ And in that day shall ye say, Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted. ⁵ Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things: this *is* known in all the earth. ⁶ Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion: for great *is* the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 42. 10. Sing unto the Lord a new song, *and* his praise from the end of the earth, ye that go down to the sea, and all that is therein; the isles, and the inhabitants thereof. ¹¹ Let the wilderness and the cities thereof lift up *their voice*, the villages *that* Kedar doth inhabit: let the inhabitants of the rock sing, let them shout from the top of the mountains. ¹² Let them give glory unto the Lord, and declare his praise in the islands.

B. c. 539.] Psa. 50. 14. Offer unto God thanksgiving; and pay thy vows unto the Most High.

Psa. 92. 1. *It is* a good thing to give thanks unto the Lord, and to sing praises unto thy name, O Most High: ² To show forth thy lovingkindness in the morning, and thy faithfulness every night, ³ Upon an instrument of ten strings, and upon the psaltery; upon the harp with a solemn sound. ⁴ For thou, Lord, hast made me glad through thy work: I will triumph in the works of thy hands.

B. C. 515.] Psa. 149. 5. Let the saints be joyful in glory: let them sing aloud upon their beds.

Psa. 150. 6. Let every thing that hath breath praise the Lord. Praise ye the Lord.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 5. 19. Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your heart to the Lord; ²⁰ Giving thanks always for all things unto God and the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 16. Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 13. 15. By him therefore let us offer the sacrifice of praise to God continually, that is, the fruit of *our* lips, giving thanks to his name.

§ 334. *Give thanks for food at the time of eating, and take care that the fragments be not wasted.*

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 8. 10. When thou hast eaten and art full, then thou shalt bless the Lord thy God for the good land which he hath given thee.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 62. 9. But they that have gathered it shall eat it, and praise the Lord.

B. C. 690.] Joel 2. 26. Ye shall eat in plenty, and be satisfied, and praise the name of the Lord your God, that hath dealt wondrously with you: and my people shall never be ashamed.

A. D. 28.] Mark 8. 6. And he commanded the people to sit down on the ground: and he took the seven loaves, and gave thanks, and brake, and gave to his disciples to set before *them*; and they did set *them* before the people. ⁷ And they had a few small fishes: and he blessed, and commanded to set them also before *them*. ⁸ So they did eat, and were filled: and they took up of the broken *meat* that was left seven baskets.

John 6. 11. And Jesus took the loaves; and when he had given thanks, he distributed to the disciples, and the disciples to them that were set down; and likewise of the fishes as much as they would. ¹² When they were filled, he said unto his disciples, Gather up the fragments that remain, that nothing be lost.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 10. 31. Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 14. 6. He that eateth, eateth to the Lord, for he giveth God thanks.

A. D. 62.] Acts 27. 35. And when he had thus spoken, he took bread, and gave thanks to God in presence of them all; and when he had broken *it*, he began to eat.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 4. 3. Meats, which God hath created to be received with thanksgiving of them which believe and know the truth. ⁴ For every creature of God *is* good, and nothing to be refused, if it be received with thanksgiving: ⁵ For it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer.

§ 335. *Give unto the Lord the glory due unto his Name.*

B. C. 1044.] Psal. 22. 23. All ye the seed of Jacob, glorify him; and fear him, all ye the seed of Israel.

B. C. 1032.] 1 Chron. 16. 24. Declare his glory among the heathen; his marvellous works among all nations. ²⁸ Give unto the Lord, ye kindreds of the people, give unto the Lord glory and strength. ²⁹ Give unto the Lord the glory *due* unto his name: bring an offering, and come before him: worship the Lord in the beauty of holiness.

B. C. 1015.] Psal. 86. 9. All nations whom thou hast made shall come and worship before thee, O Lord; and shall glorify thy name. ¹⁰ For thou *art* great, and doest wondrous things: thou *art* God alone.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 42. 12. Let them give glory unto the Lord, and declare his praise in the islands.

B. C. 535.] Psal. 115. 1. Not unto us, O Lord, not unto us, but unto thy name give glory, for thy mercy, *and* for thy truth's sake.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 10. 31. Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 14. 7. Saying with a loud voice, Fear God, and give glory to him; for the hour of his judgment is come: and worship him that made heaven, and earth, and the sea.

Rev. 15. 4. Who shall not fear thee, O Lord, and glorify thy name?

§ 336. *Have no other gods before the Lord God.*

B. C. 1591.] Exod. 20. 3. Thou shalt have no other gods before me.

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 4. 19. And lest thou lift up thine eyes unto heaven, and when thou seest the sun, and the moon, and the stars, *even* all the host of heaven, shouldest be driven to worship them, and serve them.

B. C. 607.] Jer. 25. 6. And go not after other gods to serve them, and to worship them, and provoke me not to anger with the works of your hands; and I will do you no hurt.

Jer. 35. 15. I have sent also unto you all my servants the prophets, rising up early and sending *them*, saying, Return ye now every man from his evil way, and amend your doings,

and go not after other gods to serve them, and ye shall dwell in the land which I have given to you and to your fathers.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 4. 10. Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve.

§ 337. *Make no image or likeness of any thing in heaven or in the earth to bow down to them or serve them.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 20. 4. Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of *any thing* that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth. ⁵ Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the Lord thy God *am* a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth *generation* of them that hate me.

Exod. 34. 17. Thou shalt make thee no molten gods.

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 19. 4. Turn ye not unto idols, nor make to yourselves molten gods: I *am* the Lord your God.

Lev. 26. 1. Ye shall make you no idols nor graven image, neither rear you up a standing image, neither shall ye set up *any* image of stone in your land, to bow down unto it: for I *am* the Lord your God.

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 4. 15. Take ye therefore good heed unto yourselves; for ye saw no manner of similitude on the day *that* the Lord spake unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire; ¹⁶ Lest ye corrupt *yourselves*, and make you a graven image, the similitude of any figure, the likeness of male or female, ¹⁷ The likeness of any beast that *is* on the earth, the likeness of any winged fowl that flieth in the air, ¹⁸ The likeness of any thing that creepeth on the ground, the likeness of fish that *is* in the waters beneath the earth. ²³ Take heed unto yourselves, lest ye forget the covenant of the Lord your God, which he made with you, and make you a graven image, or the likeness of any *thing*, which the Lord thy God hath forbidden thee. ²⁴ For the Lord thy God *is* a consuming fire, *even* a jealous God.

Deut. 16. 22. Neither shalt thou set thee up *any* image; which the Lord thy God hateth.

Deut. 27. 15. Cursed *be* the man that maketh *any* graven or molten image, an abomination unto the Lord, the work of the hands of the craftsman, and putteth *it* in a secret *place*: and all the people shall answer and say, Amen.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 42. 8. I *am* the Lord; that *is* my name: and my glory will I not give to another, neither my praise to graven images.

§ 338. *Use no divination, neither regard wizards nor necromancers.*

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 19. 31. Regard not them that have familiar spirits, neither seek after wizards, to be defiled by them: I *am* the Lord your God.

Lev. 20. 6. And the soul that turneth after such as have familiar spirits, and after wizards, to go a whoring after them, I will even set my face against that soul, and will cut him off from among his people.

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 18. 10. There shall not be found among you *any one* that maketh his son or his daughter to pass through the fire, *or* that useth divination, *or* an observer of times, or an enchanter, or a witch, ¹¹ Or a charmer, or a consulter with familiar spirits, or a wizard, or a necromancer. ¹² For all that do these things *are* an abomination unto the Lord.

B. C. 742.] Isa. 8. 19. And when they shall say unto you, Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep and that mutter: should not a people seek unto their God? for the living to the dead? ²⁰ To the law and to the testimony: if they speak not according to this word, *it is* because *there is* no light in them.

§ 339. *Fear God and swear only by his name in truth, in judgment, and in righteousness.*

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 6. 13. Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God, and serve him, and shalt swear by his name.

Deut. 10. 20. Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God; him shalt thou serve, and to him shalt thou cleave, and swear by his name.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 65. 16. He that sweareth in the earth shall swear by the God of truth.

B. C. 612.] Jer. 4. 2. And thou shalt swear, The Lord liveth, in truth, in judgment, and in righteousness.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 1. 20. Now the things which I write unto you, behold, before God, I lie not.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 1. 9. For God is my witness.

Rom. 9. 1. I say the truth in Christ, I lie not, my conscience also bearing me witness in the Holy Ghost.

§ 340. *Take not the name of God in vain.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 20. 7. Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain: for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 19. 12. And ye shall not swear by my name falsely, neither shalt thou profane the name of thy God: *I am the Lord.*

Lev. 21. 1. And the Lord said unto Moses, Speak unto the priests the sons of Aaron, and say unto them, ⁶ They shall be holy unto their God, and not profane the name of their God: for the offerings of the Lord made by fire, *and* the bread of their God, they do offer: therefore they shall be holy.

Lev. 22. 32. Neither shall ye profane my holy name; but I will be hallowed among the children of Israel: *I am the Lord* which hallow you.

§ 341. *Swear not by any thing that God has created.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 33. Again, ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, Thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths: ³⁴ But I say unto you, Swear not at all: neither by heaven: for it is God's throne: ³⁵ Nor by the earth; for it is his footstool: neither by Jerusalem; for it is the city of the great King. ³⁶ Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair white or black. ³⁷ But let your communication be, Yea, yea; Nay, nay: for whatsoever is more than these cometh of evil.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 23. 16. Woe unto you, *ye* blind guides, which say, Whosoever shall swear by the temple, it is nothing; but whosoever shall swear by the gold of the temple, he is a debtor! ¹⁷ *Ye* fools and blind: for whether is greater, the gold, or the temple that sanctifieth the gold? ¹⁸ And, Whosoever shall swear by the altar, it is nothing; but whosoever sweareth by the gift that is upon it, he is guilty. ¹⁹ *Ye* fools and blind: for whether *is* greater, the gift, or the altar that sanctifieth the gift? ²⁰ Whoso therefore shall swear by the altar, sweareth by it, and by all things thereon. ²¹ And whoso shall swear by the temple, sweareth by it, and by him that dwelleth therein. ²² And he that shall swear by heaven, sweareth by the throne of God, and by him that sitteth thereon.

A. D. 61.] James 5. 12. But above all things, my brethren, swear not, neither by heaven, neither by the earth, neither by any other oath: but let your yea be yea; and *your* nay, nay; lest ye fall into condemnation.

§ 342. *Keep God's commandments, obey and serve Him with a perfect heart and a willing mind.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 23. 25. And ye shall serve the Lord your God, and he shall bless thy bread, and thy water; and I will take sickness away from the midst of thee.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 10. 12. And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul, ¹³ To keep the commandments of the Lord, and his statutes, which I command thee this day for thy good?

B. c. 1443.] Josh. 24. 14. Now therefore fear the Lord, and serve him in sincerity and in truth.

B. c. 1015.] 1 Chron. 28. 8. Now therefore, in the sight of all Israel the congregation of the Lord, and in the audience of our God, keep and seek for all the commandments of the Lord your God: that ye may possess this good land, and leave it for an inheritance for your children after you for ever. ⁹ And thou, Solomon my son, know thou the God of thy Father, and serve him with a perfect heart and with a willing mind: for the Lord searcheth all hearts, and understandeth all the imaginations of the thoughts: if thou seek him, he will be found of thee; but if thou forsake him, he will cast thee off for ever.

B. c. 1004.] Psal. 100. 2. Serve the Lord with gladness.

B. c. 977.] Eccl. 12. 13. Fear God, and keep his commandments; for this *is* the whole *duty* of man.

B. c. 610.] Jer. 7. 23. Obey my voice, and I will be your God, and ye shall be my people: and walk ye in all the ways that I have commanded you, that it may be well unto you.

B. c. 593.] Ezek. 20. 19. I *am* the Lord your God; walk in my statutes, and keep my judgments, and do them.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 19. 17. If thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 7. 19. Circumcision is nothing, and uncircumcision is nothing, but the keeping of the commandments of God.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 6. 6. Doing the will of God from the heart.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 12. 28. Let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear.

§ 343. *Keep the sabbath as a day of holy convocation in which to worship God, and of rest from all servile [secular] labor.*

B. c. 4004.] Gen. 2. 2. And on the seventh day God ended his work which he had made; and he rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had made. ³ And God blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it: because that in it he had rested from all his work which God created and made.

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 20. 8. Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy. ⁹ Six days shalt thou labour, and do all thy work: ¹⁰ But the seventh day *is* the sabbath of the Lord thy

God: *in it* thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy manservant, nor thy maidservant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that *is* within thy gates: ¹¹ For *in* six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them *is*, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

B. c. 1481.] Exod. 31. 13. Verily my sabbaths ye shall keep: for it *is* a sign between me and you throughout your generations; that *ye* may know that I *am* the Lord that doth sanctify you. ¹⁵ Six days may work be done; but in the seventh *is* the sabbath of rest, holy to the Lord. ¹⁷ It *is* a sign between me and the children of Israel for ever: for *in* six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested, and was refreshed.

Exod. 34. 21. Six days thou shalt work, but on the seventh day thou shalt rest: in earing time and in harvest thou shalt rest.

B. c. 1490.] Lev. 19. 30. Ye shall keep my sabbaths, and reverence my sanctuary: I *am* the Lord.

Lev. 23. 3. Six days shall work be done; but the seventh day *is* the sabbath of rest, a holy convocation; ye shall do no work *therein*; it *is* the sabbath of the Lord in all your dwellings.

B. c. 611.] Jer. 17. 21. Thus saith the Lord: Take heed to yourselves, and bear no burden on the sabbath day, nor bring *it* in by the gates of Jerusalem; ²² Neither carry forth a burden out of your houses on the sabbath day, neither do ye any work, but hallow ye the sabbath day, as I commanded your fathers.

B. c. 591.] Ezek. 20. 12. Moreover also I gave them my sabbaths, to be a sign between me and them, that they might know that I *am* the Lord that sanctify them.

Ezek. 46. 3. Likewise the people of the land shall worship at the door of this gate before the Lord in the sabbaths and in the new moons.

§ 344. *On the sabbath day the word of God is to be read in the congregation, and the Gospel preached.*

A. D. 27.] Mark 6. 2. And when the sabbath day was come, he began to teach in the synagogue.

Luke 4. 16. And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read. ²¹ And he began to say unto them, This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears. ²² And all bare him witness, and wondered at the gracious words which proceeded out of his mouth. ³¹ And came down to Capernaum, a city of Galilee, and taught them on the sabbath days.

A. D. 45.] Acts 13. 14. But when they departed from Perga, they came to Antioch in Pisidia, and went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and sat down. ¹⁵ And after the reading of the law and the prophets, the rulers of the synagogue sent unto them, saying, *Ye men and brethren*, if he have any word of exhortation for the people, say on. ¹⁶ Then Paul stood up, and beckoning with *his* hand said, Men of Israel, and ye that fear God, give audience. ⁴² And when the Jews were gone out of the synagogue, the Gentiles besought that these words might be preached to them the next sabbath. ⁴⁴ And the next sabbath day came almost the whole city together to hear the word of God.

A. D. 53.] Acts 16. 13. And on the sabbath day we went out of the city by a river side, where prayer was wont to be made; and we sat down, and spake unto the women which resorted *thither*.

Acts 17. 1. Now when they had passed through Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to Thessalonica, where was a synagogue of the Jews. ² And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the Scriptures. ³ Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Acts 18. 1. After these things Paul departed from Athens, and came to Corinth. ⁴ And he reasoned in the synagogue every Sabbath, and persuaded the Jews and the Greeks.

§ 345. *The sabbath was made for man: in it works of mercy and of necessity are to be done.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 12. 1. At that time Jesus went on the sabbath day through the corn; and his disciples were ahungered, and began to pluck the ears of corn, and to eat. ² But when the Pharisees saw *it*, they said unto him, Behold, thy disciples do that which is not lawful to do upon the sabbath day. ³ But he said unto them, Have ye not read what David did, when he was ahungered, and they that were with him; ⁴ How he entered into the house of God, and did eat the show-bread, which was not lawful for him to eat, neither for them which were with him, but only for the priests? ⁵ Or have ye not read in the law, how that on the sabbath days the priests in the temple profane the sabbath, and are blameless? ⁶ But I say unto you, That in this place is *one* greater than the temple. ⁷ But if ye had known what *this* meaneth, I will have mercy, and not sacrifice, ye would not have condemned the guiltless. ⁸ For the Son of man is Lord even of the sabbath day. ⁹ And when he was departed thence, he went into their synagogue: ¹⁰ And, behold, there was a man which had *his*

hand withered. And they asked him, saying, Is it lawful to heal on the sabbath days? that they might accuse him. ¹¹ And he said unto them, What man shall there be among you, that shall have one sheep, and if it fall into a pit on the sabbath day, will he not lay hold on it, and lift *it* out? ¹² How much then is a man better than a sheep? Wherefore it is lawful to do well on the sabbath days. ¹³ Then saith he to the man, Stretch forth thine hand. And he stretched *it* forth: and it was restored whole, like as the other. ¹⁵ He withdrew himself from thence: and great multitudes followed him, and he healed them all.

A. D. 29.] Luke 13. 10. And he was teaching in one of the synagogues on the sabbath. ¹¹ And, behold, there was a woman which had a spirit of infirmity eighteen years, and was bowed together, and could in no wise lift up *herself*. ¹² And when Jesus saw her, he called *her to him*, and said unto her, Woman, thou art loosed from thine infirmity. ¹³ And he laid *his* hands on her: and immediately she was made straight, and glorified God. ¹⁴ And the ruler of the synagogue answered with indignation, because that Jesus had healed on the sabbath day. ¹⁵ The Lord then answered him, and said, *Thou* hypocrite, doth not each one of you on the sabbath day loose his ox or *his* ass from the stall, and lead him away to watering? ¹⁶ And ought not this woman, being a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan hath bound, lo, these eighteen years, be loosed from this bond on the sabbath day? ¹⁷ And when he had said these things, all his adversaries were ashamed: and all the people rejoiced for all the glorious things that were done by him.

Luke 14. 1. And it came to pass, as he went into the house of one of the chief Pharisees to eat bread on the sabbath day, that they watched him. ² And, behold, there was a certain man before him which had the dropsy. ³ And Jesus answering, spake unto the lawyers and Pharisees, saying, Is it lawful to heal on the sabbath day? ⁴ And they held their peace. And he took *him*, and healed him, and let him go; ⁵ And answered them, saying, Which of you shall have an ass or an ox fallen into a pit, and will not straightway pull him out on the sabbath day?

A. D. 29.] John 5. 5. And a certain man was there, which had an infirmity thirty and eight years. ⁶ When Jesus saw him lie, and knew that he had been now a long time *in that case*, he saith unto him, Wilt thou be made whole? ⁷ The impotent man answered him, Sir, I have no man, when the water is troubled, to put me into the pool: but while I am coming, another steppeth down before me. ⁸ Jesus saith unto him, Rise, take up thy bed, and walk. ⁹ And immediately the man was made whole, and took up his bed, and walked: and on the same day was the sabbath.

§ 346. *It is right to be Baptized, that we may fulfil all righteousness, and have a good conscience toward God.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 3. 13. Then cometh Jesus from Galilee to Jordan unto John, to be baptized of him. ¹⁴ But John forbade him, saying, I have need to be baptized of thee, and comest thou to me? ¹⁵ And Jesus answering said unto him, Suffer *it to be so* now: for thus it becometh us to fulfil all righteousness. Then he suffered him.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 3. 21. The like figure whereunto *even* baptism doth also now save us, (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ.

§ 347. *Believers must be Baptized in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.*

A. D. 27.] John 3. 5. Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and *of* the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 28. 18. All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth. ¹⁹ Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.

Mark 16. 16. He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.

§ 348. *In the time of the apostles believers were Baptized.*

A. D. 29.] Acts 2. 38. Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. ⁴¹ Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added *unto them* about three thousand souls.

A. D. 33.] Acts 8. 12. But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women. ¹³ Then Simon himself believed also: and when he was baptized, he continued with Philip, and wondered, beholding the miracles and signs which were done. ³⁶ And as they went on *their* way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, See, *here is* water; what doth hinder me to be baptized? ³⁷ And Philip said, If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ

is the Son of God. ³⁸ And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him.

A. D. 33.] Acts 9. 17. And Ananias went his way, and entered into the house; and putting his hands on him said, Brother Saul, the Lord, *even* Jesus, that appeared unto thee in the way as thou camest, hath sent me, that thou mightest receive thy sight, and be filled with the Holy Ghost. ¹⁸ And immediately there fell from his eyes as it had been scales: and he received sight forthwith, and arose, and was baptized.

A. D. 41.] Acts 10. 47. Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we? ⁴⁸ And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.

A. D. 53.] Acts 16. 14. And a certain woman named Lydia, a seller of purple, of the city of Thyatira, which worshipped God, heard *us*; whose heart the Lord opened, that she attended unto the things which were spoken of Paul. ¹⁵ And when she was baptized, and her household, she besought *us*, saying, If ye have judged me to be faithful to the Lord, come into my house, and abide *there*. And she constrained *us*. ³³ And he [the jailer] took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway.

A. D. 56.] Acts 19. 3. And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John's baptism. ⁴ Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus. ⁵ When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.

§ 349. *Eat bread and drink the fruit of the vine in Remembrance of Christ, and to show his Death till he come.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 26. 26. And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed *it*, and brake *it*, and gave *it* to the disciples, and said, Take, eat: this is my body. ²⁷ And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave *it* to them, saying, Drink ye all of it; ²⁸ For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins. ²⁹ But I say unto you, I will not drink henceforth of this fruit of the vine, until that day when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom.

Luke 22. 19. This do in remembrance of me.

Mark 14. 23. And they all drank of it.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 11. 23. For I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you, That the Lord Jesus, the *same* night in which he was betrayed, took bread: ²⁴ And when he had given thanks, he brake *it*, and said, Take, eat; this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me. ²⁵ After the same manner also *he took* the cup, when he had supped, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood: this do ye, as oft as ye drink *it*, in remembrance of me. ²⁶ For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do show the Lord's death till he come.

§ 350. *When eating and drinking in Remembrance of Christ, do it not to the satisfying of the appetite, but wait one for another: and if any man hunger, let him eat at home: that ye come not together unto condemnation.*

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 10. 16. The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ? ²¹ Ye cannot drink the cup of the Lord, and the cup of devils: ye cannot be partakers of the Lord's table, and of the table of devils.

1 Cor. 11. 20. When ye come together therefore into one place, *this* is not to eat the Lord's supper. ²² What! have ye not houses to eat and to drink in? or despise ye the church of God, and shame them that have not? What shall I say to you? shall I praise you in this? I praise *you* not. ²⁷ Wherefore, whosoever shall eat this bread, and drink *this* cup of the Lord, unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord. ²⁸ But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of *that* bread, and drink of *that* cup. ²⁹ For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh damnation to himself, not discerning the Lord's body. ³³ Wherefore, my brethren, when ye come together to eat, tarry one for another. ³⁴ And if any man hunger, let him eat at home: that ye come not together unto condemnation.

§ 351. *It is the custom of believers to Fast.*

A. D. 45.] Acts 13. 2. As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them. ³ And when they had fasted and prayed, and laid *their* hands on them, they sent *them* away.

Acts 14. 23. And when they had ordained them elders in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they commended them to the Lord, on whom they believed.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 7. 5. That ye may give yourselves to fasting and prayer.

§ 352. *When you fast and pray, cease from all wickedness and oppression, and help those in need; but do it not to be seen of men, but of God only.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 58. 3. Wherefore have we fasted, *say they*, and thou seest not? *wherefore* have we afflicted our soul, and thou takest no knowledge? Behold, in the day of your fast ye find pleasure, and exact all your labours. ⁴ Behold, ye fast for strife and debate, and to smite with the fist of wickedness: ye shall not fast as *ye do this* day, to make your voice to be heard on high. ⁵ Is it such a fast that I have chosen? a day for a man to afflict his soul? *is it* to bow down his head as a bulrush, and to spread sackcloth and ashes *under him*? wilt thou call this a fast, and an acceptable day to the Lord? ⁶ *Is* not this the fast that I have chosen? to loose the bands of wickedness, to undo the heavy burdens, and to let the oppressed go free, and that ye break every yoke? ⁷ *Is it* not to deal thy bread to the hungry, and that thou bring the poor that are cast out to thy house? when thou seest the naked, that thou cover him; and that thou hide not thyself from thine own flesh? ⁸ Then shall thy light break forth as the morning, and thine health shall spring forth speedily: and thy righteousness shall go before thee; the glory of the Lord shall be thy rearward. ⁹ Then shalt thou call, and the Lord shall answer; thou shalt cry, and he shall say, Here I *am*. If thou take away from the midst of thee the yoke, the putting forth of the finger, and speaking vanity; ¹⁰ And *if* thou draw out thy soul to the hungry, and satisfy the afflicted soul; then shall thy light rise in obscurity, and thy darkness be as the noonday: ¹¹ And the Lord shall guide thee continually, and satisfy thy soul in drought, and make fat thy bones: and thou shalt be like a watered garden, and like a spring of water, whose waters fail not.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 6. 16. Moreover, when ye fast, be not, as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance: for they disfigure their faces, that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, They have their reward. ¹⁷ But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thine head, and wash thy face; ¹⁸ That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father which is in secret: and thy Father which seeth in secret shall reward thee openly.

§ 353. *Take heed lest you be overcharged with surfeiting and drunkenness.*

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 29. 19. And it come to pass, when he heareth the words of this curse, that he bless himself in

his heart, saying, I shall have peace, though I walk in the imagination of mine heart, to add drunkenness to thirst: ²⁰ The Lord will not spare him, but then the anger of the Lord and his jealousy shall smoke against that man, and all the curses that are written in this book shall lie upon him, and the Lord shall blot out his name from under heaven.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 20. 1. Wine is a mocker, strong drink is raging: and whosoever is deceived thereby is not wise.

Prov. 23. 29. Who hath woe? who hath sorrow? who hath contentions? who hath babbling? who hath wounds without cause? who hath redness of eyes? ³⁰ They that tarry long at the wine; they that go to seek mixed wine. ³¹ Look not thou upon the wine when it is red, when it giveth his color in the cup, *when* it moveth itself aright. ³² At the last it biteth like a serpent, and stingeth like an adder.

B. c. 760.] Isa. 5. 11. Woe unto them that rise up early in the morning, *that* they may follow strong drink: that continue until night, *till* wine inflame them! ¹² And the harp and the viol, the tabret and pipe, and wine, are in their feasts: but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands. ²² Woe unto *them that are* mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 56. 12. Come ye, *say they*, I will fetch wine, and we will fill ourselves with strong drink: and to-morrow shall be as this day, *and* much more abundant.

A. D. 29.] Luke 21. 34. And take heed to yourselves, lest at any time your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting, and drunkenness, and cares of this life, and *so* that day come upon you unawares.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 5. 21. Drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told *you* in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 13. 13. Let us walk honestly, as in the day; not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying. ¹⁴ But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to *fulfil* the lusts *thereof*.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 5. 18. And be not drunk with wine, wherein is excess; but be filled with the Spirit.

§ 354. *Associate not with wine drinkers and drunkards, nor with gluttonous persons.*

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 23. 20. Be not among winebibbers; among riotous eaters of flesh.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 5. 11. But now I have written unto you not to keep company, if any man that is called a brother be a

fornicator, or covetous, or an idolater, or a railer, or a drunkard, or an extortioner; with such a one no not to eat.

§ 355. *Be sober, temperate in all things, and keep the appetites of the body in subjection.*

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 6. Therefore let us not sleep, as *do* others; but let us watch and be sober. ⁷ For they that sleep sleep in the night; and they that be drunken are drunken in the night. ⁸ But let us, who are of the day, be sober.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 9. 25. And every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things. Now they *do it* to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible. ²⁷ But I keep under my body, and bring *it* into subjection: lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 8. 13. For if ye live after the flesh, ye shall die; but if ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 5. Mortify therefore your members which are upon the earth; fornication, uncleanness, inordinate affection, evil concupiscence, and covetousness, which is idolatry.

A. D. 65.] Titus 2. 2. That the aged men be sober, grave, temperate.

§ 356. *Do not give strong drink to another person.*

B. C. 600.] Hab. 2. 15. Woe unto him that giveth his neighbour drink, that putteth thy bottle to *him*, and maketh *him* drunken also, that thou mayest look on their nakedness!

§ 357. *Whoever defiles the body God will destroy, for it is the temple of the Holy Ghost: therefore glorify God in your body, which is God's.*

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 3. 16. Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and *that* the Spirit of God dwelleth in you? ¹⁷ If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the temple of God is holy, which *temple* ye are.

1 Cor. 6. 9. Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind: ¹⁰ Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God. ¹² All things are lawful for me, but I will not be brought under the power of any. ¹³ Meats for the belly, and the belly for meats: but God shall destroy both it and them. Now the body *is* not for fornication, but for the Lord; and the Lord for the body. ¹⁵ Know ye not that your bodies are the members of Christ? shall I then take the members of Christ, and

make *them* the members of a harlot? God forbid. ¹⁹ What! know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost *which is* in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own? ²⁰ For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 10. 31. Whether therefore you eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 6. 13. Neither yield ye your members *as* instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members *as* instruments of righteousness unto God.

§ 358. *Do no evil, and abstain from all appearance of it.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 23. 2. Thou shalt not follow a multitude to *do* evil.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 56. 2. Blessed *is* the man *that* doeth this, and the son of man *that* layeth hold on it; that keepeth the sabbath from polluting it, and keepeth his hand from doing any evil.

B. C. 539.] Psal. 37. 8. Cease from anger, and forsake wrath: fret not thyself in any wise to do evil. ⁹ For evil doers shall be cut off: but those that wait upon the Lord, they shall inherit the earth. ¹⁰ For yet a little while, and the wicked *shall* not *be*: yea, thou shalt diligently consider his place, and it *shall* not *be*.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 22. Abstain from all appearance of evil.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 13. 7. Now I pray to God that ye do no evil; not that we should appear approved, but that ye should do that which is honest.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 3. 10. For he that will love life, and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil, and his lips that they speak no guile. ¹¹ Let him eschew evil, and do good; let him seek peace, and ensue it. ¹² For the eyes of the Lord *are* over the righteous, and his ears *are open* unto their prayers: but the face of the Lord *is* against them that do evil. ¹³ And who *is* he that will harm you, if ye be followers of that which is good?

1 Pet. 4. 15. But let none of you suffer as a murderer, or *as* a thief, or *as* an evil doer, or as a busybody in other men's matters.

§ 359. *Strive to give no offence, neither to believers nor to unbelievers, and abstain from any thing whereby a brother may stumble or be offended.*

A. D. 28.] Matt. 17. 24. And when they were come to Capernaum, they that received tribute *money* came to Peter, and

said, Doth not your master pay tribute? ²⁵ He saith, Yes. And when he was come into the house, Jesus prevented him, saying, What thinkest thou, Simon? of whom do the kings of the earth take custom or tribute? of their own children, or of strangers? ²⁶ Peter saith unto him, Of strangers. Jesus saith unto him, Then are the children free. ²⁷ Notwithstanding, lest we should offend them, go thou to the sea, and cast a hook, and take up the fish that first cometh up; and when thou hast opened his mouth, thou shalt find a piece of money: that take, and give unto them for me and thee.

A. D. 28.] Matt. 18. 6. But whoso shall offend one of these little ones which believe in me, it were better for him that a millstone were hanged about his neck, and *that* he were drowned in the depth of the sea.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 5. 26. Let us not be desirous of vainglory, provoking one another, envying one another.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 8. 12. But when ye sin so against the brethren, and wound their weak conscience, ye sin against Christ. ¹³ Wherefore, if meat make my brother to offend, I will eat no flesh while the world standeth, lest I make my brother to offend.

1 Cor. 10. 32. Give none offence, neither to the Jews, nor to the Gentiles, nor to the Church of God: ³³ Even as I please all *men* in all *things*, not seeking mine own profit, but the *profit* of many, that they may be saved.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 6. 3. Giving no offence in any thing, that the ministry be not blamed.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 14. 13. Let us not therefore judge one another any more: but judge this rather, that no man put a stumblingblock or an occasion to fall in *his* brother's way. ¹⁵ But if thy brother be grieved with *thy* meat, now walkest thou not charitably. Destroy not him with thy meat, for whom Christ died. ²¹ *It is* good neither to eat flesh, nor to drink wine, nor *any thing* whereby thy brother stumbleth, or is offended, or is made weak.

A. D. 60.] Acts 24. 16. And herein-do I exercise myself, to have always a conscience void of offence toward God, and *toward* men.

§ 360. *Be Meek to all Men.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 5. Blessed *are* the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 6. 1. Brethren, if a man be overtaken in a fault, ye which are spiritual, restore such a one *in* the spirit of meekness; considering thyself, lest thou also be tempted.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 3. 4. A meek and quiet spirit, which is in the sight of God of great price. ¹⁵ And *be* ready always to

give an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you, with meekness and fear.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 4. 1. I therefore, the prisoner of the Lord, beseech you that ye walk worthy of the vocation wherewith ye are called, ¹² With all lowliness and meekness, with long-suffering, forbearing one another in love.

James 3. 13. Who *is* a wise man and endued with knowledge among you? let him show out of a good conversation his works with meekness of wisdom.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 12. Put on therefore, as the elect of God, holy and beloved, bowels of mercies, kindness, humbleness of mind, meekness, longsuffering.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 2. 24. The servant of the Lord must not strive; but be gentle unto all *men*, apt to teach, patient; ²⁵ In meekness instructing those that oppose themselves; if God peradventure will give them repentance to the acknowledging of the truth.

Titus 3. 2. Be no brawlers, *but* gentle, showing all meekness unto all men.

§ 361. *Be Patient.*

B. C. 539.] Psa. 37. 7. Rest in the Lord, and wait patiently for him: fret not thyself because of him who prospereth in his way, because of the man who bringeth wicked devices to pass.

A. D. 27.] Luke 8. 15. But that on the good ground are they, which in an honest and good heart, having heard the word, keep it, and bring forth fruit with patience.

A. D. 29.] Luke 21. 19. In your patience possess ye your souls.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 14. Now we exhort you, brethren, warn them that are unruly, comfort the feeble-minded, support the weak, be patient toward all *men*.

2 Thess. 3. 5. And the Lord direct your hearts into the love of God, and into the patient waiting for Christ.

A. D. 61.] James 1. 3. Knowing *this*, that the trying of your faith worketh patience. ⁴ But let patience have *her* perfect work, that ye may be perfect and entire, wanting nothing.

James 5. 7. Be patient therefore, brethren, unto the coming of the Lord. Behold, the husbandman waiteth for the precious fruit of the earth, and hath long patience for it, until he receive the early and latter rain. ⁸ Be ye also patient; stablish your hearts: for the coming of the Lord draweth nigh. ¹⁰ Take, my brethren, the prophets, who have spoken in the name of the Lord, for an example of suffering affliction, and of patience. ¹¹ Behold, we count them happy which endure. Ye have heard of the patience of Job, and have seen the end

of the Lord; that the Lord is very pitiful, and of tender mercy.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 2. 20. For what glory *is it*, if, when ye be buffeted for your faults, ye shall take it patiently? but if, when ye do well, and suffer *for it*, ye take it patiently, this *is* acceptable with God. ²¹ For even hereunto were ye called: because Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example, that ye should follow his steps.

§ 362. *Be not Proud, Arrogant, nor Haughty.*

B. C. 1165.] 1 Sam. 2. 3. Talk no more so exceeding proudly; let *not* arrogancy come out of your mouth: for the Lord *is* a God of knowledge, and by him actions are weighed.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 8. 13. Pride, and arrogancy, and the evil way, and the froward mouth, do I hate.

Prov. 16. 5. Every one *that is* proud in heart *is* an abomination to the Lord: *though* hand *join* in hand, he shall not be unpunished. ¹⁸ Pride *goeth* before destruction, and a haughty spirit before a fall.

B. C. 760.] Isa. 2. 11. The lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day. ¹² For the day of the Lord of hosts *shall be* upon every one *that is* proud and lofty, and upon every one *that is* lifted up; and he shall be brought low.

Isa. 13. 11. And I will punish the world for *their* evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; and I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 23. 12. And whosoever shall exalt himself shall be abased; and he that shall humble himself shall be exalted.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 2. 16. The pride of life is not of the Father, but is of the world.

§ 363. *Seek not great things, and think not too highly of yourself, but let each esteem others more worthy than himself.*

B. C. 607.] Jer. 45. 5. And seekest thou great things for thyself? seek *them* not: for, behold, I will bring evil upon all flesh, saith the Lord.

A. D. 29.] Mark 10. 35. And James and John, the sons of Zebedee, come unto him, saying, Master, we would thou shouldest do for us whatsoever we shall desire: ³⁶ And he said unto them, What would ye that I should do for you? ³⁷ They said unto him, Grant unto us that we may sit, one on thy right hand, and the other on thy left hand, in thy glory.

³⁸ But Jesus said unto them, Ye know not what ye ask. ⁴¹ And when the ten heard *it*, they began to be much displeased with James and John. ⁴² But Jesus called them *to* him, and saith unto them, Ye know that they which are accounted to rule over the Gentiles exercise lordship over them; and their great ones exercise authority upon them. ⁴³ But so shall it not be among you: but whosoever will be great among you, shall be your minister. ⁴⁴ And whosoever of you will be the chiefest, shall be servant of all. ⁴⁵ For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 12. 3. For I say, through the grace given unto me, to every man that is among you, not to think of *himself* more highly than he ought to think: but to think soberly, according as God hath dealt to every man the measure of faith.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 5. 21. Submitting yourselves one to another in the fear of God.

Phil. 2. 3. *Let nothing be done* through strife or vainglory; but in lowliness of mind let each esteem other better than themselves. ⁴ Look not every man on his own things, but every man also on the things of others. ⁵ Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus: ⁶ Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: ⁷ But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: ⁸ And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself.

§ 364. *Use Hospitality one to Another.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 25. 35. For I was ahungered, and ye gave me meat: I was thirsty, and ye gave me drink: I was a stranger, and ye took me in.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 12. 13. Distributing to the necessity of saints; given to hospitality.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 4. 9. Use hospitality one to another without grudging.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 13. 3. Remember them that are in bonds, as bound with them; *and* them which suffer adversity, as being yourselves also in the body.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 3. 2. A bishop then must be blameless, the husband of one wife, vigilant, sober, of good behaviour, given to hospitality.

§ 365. *Thou shalt not kill: and no satisfaction shall be taken for the life of the intentional murderer.*

B. C. 2347.] Gen. 9. 5. And surely your blood of your lives will I require: at the hand of every beast will I require it,

and at the hand of man; at the hand of every man's brother will I require the life of man. ⁶ Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man.

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 20. 13. Thou shalt not kill.

Exod. 21. 12. He that smiteth a man, so that he die, shall be surely put to death.

B. c. 1451.] Num. 35. 30. Whoso killeth any person, the murderer shall be put to death by the mouth of witnesses: but one witness shall not testify against any person *to cause him* to die. ³¹ Moreover ye shall take no satisfaction for the life of a murderer, which *is* guilty of death: but he shall be surely put to death. ³³ For blood it defileth the land: and the land cannot be cleansed of the blood that is shed therein, but by the blood of him that shed it.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 19. 13. Thine eye shall not pity him, but thou shalt put away *the guilt of* innocent blood from Israel, that it may go well with thee.

B. c. 700.] Prov. 28. 17. A man that doeth violence to the blood of *any* person shall flee to the pit; let no man stay him.

§ 366. *Thou shalt not hate thy Brother.*

B. c. 1480.] Lev. 19. 17. Thou shalt not hate thy brother in thine heart.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 2. 9. He that saith he is in the light, and hateth his brother, is in darkness even until now.

1 John 3. 15. Whosoever hateth his brother is a murderer: and ye know that no murderer hath eternal life abiding in him.

1 John 4. 20. If a man say, I love God, and hateth his brother, he is a liar: for he that loveth not his brother whom he hath seen, how can he love God whom he hath not seen?

§ 367. *Avenge not yourselves, neither bear any grudge; rejoice not when your enemy falls; but love your enemies; do good to them that hate you; pray for them that despitefully use you.*

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 23. 4. If thou meet thine enemy's ox or his ass going astray, thou shalt surely bring it back to him again. ⁵ If thou see the ass of him that hateth thee lying under his burden, and wouldest forbear to help him, thou shalt surely help with him.

B. c. 1490.] Lev. 19. 18. Thou shalt not avenge, nor bear any grudge against the children of thy people, but thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself: I *am* the Lord.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 20. 22. Say not thou, I will recompense evil; *but* wait on the Lord, and he shall save thee.

Prov. 24. 17. Rejoice not when thine enemy falleth, and let not thine heart be glad when he stumbleth: ¹⁸ Lest the Lord see *it*, and it displease him, and he turn away his wrath from him. ²⁹ Say not, I will do so to him as he hath done to me: I will render to the man according to his work.

Prov. 25. 21. If thine enemy be hungry, give him bread to eat; and if he be thirsty, give him water to drink: ²² For thou shalt heap coals of fire upon his head, and the Lord shall reward thee.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 38. Ye have heard that it hath been said, An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth: ³⁹ But I say unto you, That ye resist not evil: but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also. ⁴⁰ And if any man will sue thee at the law, and take away thy coat, let him have *thy* cloak also. ⁴³ Ye have heard that it hath been said, Thou shalt love thy neighbour, and hate thine enemy. ⁴⁴ But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you; ⁴⁵ That ye may be the children of your Father which is in heaven: for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust. ⁴⁶ For if ye love them which love you, what reward have ye? do not even the publicans the same? ⁴⁷ And if ye salute your brethren only, what do ye more *than others*? do not even the publicans so?

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 15. See that none render evil for evil unto any *man*: but ever follow that which is good, both among yourselves, and to all *men*.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 12. 17. Recompense to no man evil for evil. Provide things honest in the sight of all men. ¹⁹ Dearly beloved, avenge not yourselves, but *rather* give place unto wrath: for it is written, Vengeance *is* mine; I will repay, saith the Lord. ²⁰ Therefore if thine enemy hunger, feed him: if he thirst, give him drink: for in so doing thou shalt heap coals of fire on his head. ²¹ Be not overcome of evil, but overcome evil with good.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 2. 1. Wherefore laying aside all malice, and all guile, and hypocrisies, and envies, and all evil speakings.

1 Peter 3. 9. Not rendering evil for evil, nor railing for railing: but contrariwise blessing: knowing that ye are thereunto called, that ye should inherit a blessing.

§ 368. *Cease from Anger and forsake Wrath.*

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 14. 29. *He that is* slow to wrath *is* of great understanding: but *he that is* hasty in spirit exalteth folly.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 16. 32. *He that is slow to anger is better than the mighty: and he that ruleth his spirit than he that taketh a city.*

Prov. 19. 11. The discretion of a man deferreth his anger; and *it is* his glory to pass over a transgression.

B. c. 977.] Eccl. 7. 9. Be not hasty in thy spirit to be angry: for anger resteth in the bosom of fools.

B. c. 539.] Psa. 37. 8. Cease from anger, and forsake wrath: fret not thyself in any wise to do evil.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 22. But I say unto you, That whosoever is angry with his brother without a cause shall be in danger of the judgment: and whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council: but whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 4. 26. Be ye angry, and sin not: let not the sun go down upon your wrath: ²⁷ Neither give place to the devil. ³¹ Let all bitterness, and wrath, and anger, and clamour, and evil speaking, be put away from you, with all malice.

James 1. 19. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, slow to wrath: ²⁰ For the wrath of man worketh not the righteousness of God.

§ 369. *Avoid Contentions and Strife.*

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 3. 30. Strive not with a man without cause, if he have done thee no harm.

Prov. 17. 14. The beginning of strife *is as* when one letteth out water: therefore leave off contention, before it be meddled with.

Prov. 20. 3. *It is* an honour for a man to cease from strife: but every fool will be meddling.

Prov. 25. 8. Go not forth hastily to strife, lest *thou know not* what to do in the end thereof, when thy neighbour hath put thee to shame.

Prov. 26. 17. He that passeth by, *and* meddleth with strife *belonging* not to him, *is like* one that taketh a dog by the ears.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 3. 3. For whereas *there is* among you envying, and strife, and divisions, are ye not carnal, and walk as men?

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 12. 20. For I fear, lest, when I come, I shall not find you such as I would, and *that* I shall be found unto you such as ye would not: lest *there be* debates, envyings, wraths, strifes, backbitings, whisperings, swellings, tumults.

A. D. 68.] Rom. 13. 13. Let us walk honestly, as in the day;

not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying.

A. D. 61.] James 3. 14. But if ye have bitter envying and strife in your hearts, glory not, and lie not against the truth.
¹⁵ This wisdom descendeth not from above, but *is* earthly, sensual, devilish. ¹⁶ For where envying and strife *is*, there *is* confusion and every evil work.

A. D. 62.] Phil. 2. 3. *Let* nothing *be done* through strife or vainglory.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 2. 23. But foolish and unlearned questions avoid, knowing that they do gender strifes. ²⁴ And the servant of the Lord must not strive; but be gentle unto all *men*.

§ 370. *Follow after the things which make for peace.*

B. C. 1060.] Psa. 34. 14. Seek peace and pursue it.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 12. 20. But to the counsellors of peace *is* joy.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 9. Blessed *are* the peacemakers: for they shall be called the children of God. ²⁵ Agree with thine adversary quickly, while thou art in the way with him.

A. D. 28.] Mark 9. 50. And have peace one with another.

A. D. 62.] 1 Thess. 5. 13. Be at peace among yourselves.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 13. 11. Live in peace; and the God of love and peace shall be with you.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 12. 18. If it be possible, as much as lieth in you, live peaceably with all men.

Rom. 14. 19. Let us therefore follow after the things which make for peace, and things wherewith one may edify another.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 4. 3. Endeavouring to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 15. And let the peace of God rule in your hearts.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 12. 14. Follow peace with all *men*, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord: ¹⁵ Looking diligently lest any man fail of the grace of God; lest any root of bitterness springing up trouble *you*, and thereby many be defiled.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 2. 22. But follow righteousness, faith, charity, peace, with them that call on the Lord out of a pure heart.

§ 371. *If thy brother trespass against thee rebuke him, and if he repent, forgive him.*

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 19. 17. Thou shalt not hate thy brother in thine heart: thou shalt in any wise rebuke thy neighbour, and not suffer sin upon him.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 28. 23. He that rebuketh a man, afterwards shall find more favour than he that flattereth with the tongue.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 18. 15. Moreover if thy brother shall trespass against thee, go and tell him his fault between thee and him alone: if he shall hear thee, thou hast gained thy brother.¹⁶ But if he will not hear thee, *then* take with thee one or two more, that in the mouth of two or three witnesses every word may be established.¹⁷ And if he shall neglect to hear them, tell *it* unto the church: but if he neglect to hear the church, let him be unto thee as a heathen man and a publican.²¹ Then came Peter to him, and said, Lord, how oft shall my brother sin against me, and I forgive him? till seven times?²² Jesus saith unto him, I say not unto thee, Until seven times: but, Until seventy times seven.

Mark 11. 26. But if ye do not forgive, neither will your Father which is in heaven forgive your trespasses.

Luke 17. 3. Take heed to yourselves: If thy brother trespass against thee, rebuke him; and if he repent, forgive him.⁴ And if he trespass against thee seven times in a day, and seven times in a day turn again to thee, saying, I repent; thou shalt forgive him.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 6. 1. Brethren, if a man be overtaken in a fault, ye which are spiritual, restore such a one in the spirit of meekness; considering thyself, lest thou also be tempted.

§ 372. *Thou shalt not commit adultery nor fornication.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 20. 14. Thou shalt not commit adultery.

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 18. 20. Moreover, thou shalt not lie carnally with thy neighbour's wife, to defile thyself with her.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 5. 3. For the lips of a strange woman drop *as* a honeycomb, and her mouth *is* smoother than oil.⁴ But her end is bitter as wormwood, sharp as a two edged sword.⁵ Her feet go down to death; her steps take hold on hell.⁶ Remove thy way far from her, and come not nigh the door of her house.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 6. 25. Lust not after her beauty in thine heart; neither let her take thee with her eyelids.²⁶ For by means of a whorish woman *a man is brought* to a piece of bread: and the adulteress will hunt for the precious life.²⁷ Can a man take fire in his bosom, and his clothes not be burned?²⁸ Can one go upon hot coals, and his feet not be burned?²⁹ So he that goeth in to his neighbour's wife; whosoever toucheth her shall not be innocent.³² *But* whoso committeth adultery with a woman lacketh understanding: he *that* doeth it destroyeth his own soul.³³ A wound and dishonour shall he get; and his reproach shall not be wiped away.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 27. Ye have heard that it was said by them of old time, Thou shalt not commit adultery: ²⁸ But I say unto you, That whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her hath committed adultery with her already in his heart.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 5. 19. Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are *these*: Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness. ²¹ Of the which I tell you before, as I have also told *you* in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.

1 Thess. 4. 3. For this is the will of God, *even* your sanctification, that ye should abstain from fornication.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 5. 9. I wrote unto you in an epistle not to company with fornicators. ¹⁰ Yet not altogether with the fornicators of this world, or with the covetous, or extortioners, or with idolaters; for then must ye needs go out of the world. ¹¹ But now I have written unto you not to keep company, if any man that is called a brother be a fornicator, or covetous, or an idolater, or a railer, or a drunkard, or an extortioner; with such a one no not to eat.

1 Cor. 6. 15. Know ye not that your bodies are the members of Christ? shall I then take the members of Christ, and make *them* the members of a harlot? God forbid. ¹⁶ What! know ye not that he which is joined to a harlot is one body? for two, saith he, shall be one flesh. ¹⁸ Flee fornication. Every sin that a man doeth is without the body; but he that committeth fornication sinneth against his own body.

1 Cor. 10. 8. Neither let us commit fornication, as some of them committed, and fell in one day three and twenty thousand.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 5. 5. For this ye know, that no whoremonger, nor unclean person, nor covetous man, who is an idolater, hath any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God. ⁶ Let no man deceive you with vain words: for because of these things cometh the wrath of God upon the children of disobedience. ⁷ Be not ye therefore partakers with them.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 13. 4. Marriage *is* honourable in all, and the bed undefiled: but whoremongers and adulterers God will judge.

A. D. 65.] Jude 7. Even as Sodom and Gomorrah and the cities about them, in like manner giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 21. 8. But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.

§ 373. *Let every man have his own wife, and every woman her own husband, and they twain shall be one flesh.*

B. C. 4004.] Gen. 2. 18. And the Lord God said, *It is* not good that the man should be alone; I will make him a helpmeet for him. ²³ And Adam said, *This is* now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh: she shall be called Woman, because she was taken out of man. ²⁴ Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife, and they shall be one flesh.

Gen. 1. 27. So God created man in his *own* image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them. ²⁸ And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 19. 4. And he answered and said unto them, Have ye not read, that he which made *them* at the beginning made them male and female, ⁵ And said, For this cause shall a man leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife: and they twain shall be one flesh? ⁶ Wherefore they are no more twain, but one flesh.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 7. 2. Let every man have his own wife, and let every woman have her own husband.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 13. 4. Marriage *is* honourable in all, and the bed undefiled: but whoremongers and adulterers God will judge.

§ 374. *The husband and wife cannot be divorced except for fornication; but if they live apart, let them remain unmarried to any other.*

B. C. 397.] Mal. 2. 14. Because the Lord hath been witness between thee and the wife of thy youth, against whom thou hast dealt treacherously: yet *is* she thy companion, and the wife of thy covenant. ¹⁵ And did not he make one? Yet had he the residue of the spirit. And wherefore one? That he might seek a godly seed. Therefore take heed to your spirit, and let none deal treacherously against the wife of his youth. ¹⁶ For the Lord, the God of Israel, saith that he hateth putting away: for *one* covereth violence with his garment, saith the Lord of hosts: therefore take heed to your spirit, that ye deal not treacherously.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 31. It hath been said, Whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement: ³² But I say unto you, That whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery: and whosoever shall marry her that is divorced committeth adultery.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 19. 3. The Pharisees also came unto him, tempting him, and saying unto him, Is it lawful for a man to put away his wife for every cause? ⁴ And he answered and said unto them, Have ye not read, that he which made them at the beginning made them male and female. ⁵ And said, For this cause shall a man leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife: and they twain shall be one flesh? ⁶ Wherefore they are no more twain, but one flesh. What therefore God hath joined together, let not man put asunder. ⁷ They say unto him, Why did Moses then command to give a writing of divorcement, and to put her away? ⁸ He saith unto them, Moses because of the hardness of your hearts suffered you to put away your wives: but from the beginning it was not so. ⁹ And I say unto you, Whosoever shall put away his wife, except *it be* for fornication, and shall marry another, committeth adultery: and whoso marrieth her which is put away doth commit adultery.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 7. 10. And unto the married I command, *yet* not I, but the Lord, Let not the wife depart from *her* husband: ¹¹ But and if she depart, let her remain unmarried, or be reconciled to *her* husband: and let not the husband put away *his* wife.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 7. 2. For the woman which hath a husband is bound by the law to *her* husband so long as he liveth: but if the husband be dead, she is loosed from the law of *her* husband. ³ So then if, while *her* husband liveth, she be married to another man, she shall be called an adulteress: but if her husband be dead, she is free from that law; so that she is no adulteress, though she be married to another man.

§ 375. *Let the husband and wife render due benevolence to each other.*

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 7. 3. Let the husband render unto the wife due benevolence: and likewise also the wife unto the husband. ⁴ The wife hath not power of her own body, but the husband: and likewise also the husband hath not power of his own body, but the wife. ⁵ Defraud ye not one the other, except *it be* with consent for a time, that ye may give yourselves to fasting and prayer; and come together again, that Satan tempt you not for your incontinency.

§ 376. *Husbands, love your wives, as Christ loves the Church, and dwell with them according to the spirit of the Gospel.*

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 5. 18. Rejoice with the wife of thy youth.
¹⁹ Be thou ravished always with her love.

B. c. 977.] Eccl. 9. 9. Live joyfully with the wife whom thou lovest all the days of the life of thy vanity, which he hath given thee under the sun, all the days of thy vanity: for that *is* thy portion in *this* life, and in thy labour which thou takest under the sun.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 3. 7. Likewise, ye husbands, dwell with *them* according to knowledge, giving honour unto the wife, as unto the weaker vessel, and as being heirs together of the grace of life; that your prayers be not hindered.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 5. 25. Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it; ²⁶ That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word, ²⁷ That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing: but that it should be holy and without blemish. ²⁸ So ought men to love their wives as their own bodies. He that loveth his wife loveth himself. ²⁹ For no man ever yet hated his own flesh; but nourisheth and cherisheth it, even as the Lord the church: ³⁰ For we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones. ³¹ For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh. ³² This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church. ³³ Nevertheless, let every one of you in particular so love his wife even as himself.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 19. Husbands, love *your* wives, and be not bitter against them.

§ 377. *Wives, care for your households; be not idle: reverence, love, and submit to, your husbands; care not for the outward so much as for the inward adornment—even a meek and quiet spirit.*

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 12. 4. A virtuous woman *is* a crown to her husband: but she that maketh ashamed *is* as rottenness in his bones.

Prov. 14. 1. Every wise woman buildeth her house: but the foolish plucketh it down with her hands.

B. c. 700.] Prov. 31. 10. Who can find a virtuous woman? for her price *is* far above rubies. ¹¹ The heart of her husband doth safely trust in her, so that he shall have no need of spoil. ¹² She will do him good and not evil all the days of her life. ²⁷ She looketh well to the ways of her household, and eateth not the bread of idleness.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 3. 1. Likewise, ye wives, *be* in subjection to your own husbands; that, if any obey not the word, they also may without the word be won by the conversation of the wives; ² While they behold your chaste conversation *coupled*

with fear. ³ Whose adorning, let it not be that outward *adorning* of plaiting the hair, and of wearing of gold, or of putting on of apparel; ⁴ But *let it be* the hidden man of the heart, in that which is not corruptible, *even the ornament* of a meek and quiet spirit, which is in the sight of God of great price. ⁵ For after this manner in the old time the holy women also, who trusted in God, adorned themselves, being in subjection unto their own husbands.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 5. 22. Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord. ²³ For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the church: and he is the Saviour of the body. ²⁴ Therefore as the church is subject unto Christ, so *let the wives be* to their own husbands in every thing. ³³ And the wife *see* that she reverence *her* husband.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 18. Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as it is fit in the Lord.

A. D. 65.] Titus 2. 3. The aged women likewise, that *they be* in behaviour as becometh holiness, not false accusers, not given to much wine, teachers of good things; ⁴ That they may teach the young women to be sober, to love their husbands, to love their children, ⁵ *To be* discreet, chaste, keepers at home, good, obedient to their own husbands, that the word of God be not blasphemed.

1 Tim. 2. 9. In like manner also, that women adorn themselves in modest apparel, with shamefacedness and sobriety; not with braided hair, or gold, or pearls, or costly array; ¹⁰ But, which becometh women professing godliness, with good works.

1 Tim. 5. 14. I will therefore that the younger women marry, bear children, guide the house, give none occasion to the adversary to speak reproachfully.

§ 378. *Parents must provide for their children.*

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 12. 14. For the children ought not to lay up for the parents, but the parents for the children.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 5. 8. But if any provide not for his own, and especially for those of his own house, he hath denied the faith, and is worse than an infidel.

§ 379. *Bring up the children in the nurture and admonition of the Lord.*

B. C. 1897.] Gen. 18. 19. For I know him, that he will command his children and his household after him, and they shall keep the way of the Lord, to do justice and judgment; that

the Lord may bring upon Abraham that which he hath spoken of him.

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 6. 6. And these words, which I command thee this day, shall be in thine heart: ⁷ And thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up.

Deut. 11. 19. And ye shall teach them your children, speaking of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, when thou liest down, and when thou risest up. ²⁰ And thou shalt write them upon the doorposts of thine house, and upon thy gates.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 22. 6. Train up a child in the way he should go: and when he is old, he will not depart from it.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 38. 19. The father to the children shall make known thy truth.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 6. 4. But bring them up in the nurture and admonition of the Lord.

§ 380. *Do not provoke the child.*

A. D. 61.] Eph. 6. 4. And, ye fathers, provoke not your children to wrath: but bring them up in the nurture and admonition of the Lord.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 21. Fathers, provoke not your children to anger, lest they be discouraged.

§ 381. *Do not leave children to themselves, but correct them and have them in subjection.*

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 13. 24. He that spareth his rod hateth his son: but he that loveth him chasteneth him betimes.

Prov. 19. 18. Chasten thy son while there is hope, and let not thy soul spare for his crying.

Prov. 22. 15. Foolishness is bound in the heart of a child: but the rod of correction shall drive it far from him.

Prov. 23. 13. Withhold not correction from the child: for if thou beatest him with the rod, he shall not die. ¹⁴ Thou shalt beat him with the rod, and shalt deliver his soul from hell.

Prov. 29. 15. The rod and reproof give wisdom, but a child left to himself bringeth his mother to shame. ¹⁷ Correct thy son, and he shall give thee rest; yea, he shall give delight unto thy soul.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 12. 9. Furthermore, we have had fathers of our flesh which corrected us, and we gave them reverence: shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the Father of spirits, and live? ¹¹ Now no chastening for the present

seemeth to be joyous, but grievous: nevertheless, afterward it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness unto them which are exercised thereby.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 3. 2. A bishop then must be blameless. ⁴ One that ruleth well his own house, having his children in subjection with all gravity.

§ 382. *Children, obey your parents in the Lord. Honour your father and your mother, and regard their instruction.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 20. 12. Honour thy father and thy mother: that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 19. 3. Ye shall fear every man his mother, and his father.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 1. 8. My son, hear the instruction of thy father, and forsake not the law of thy mother. ⁹ For they *shall be* an ornament of grace unto thy head, and chains about thy neck.

Prov. 3. 1. My son, forget not my law; but let thine heart keep my commandments: ² For length of days, and long life, and peace, shall they add to thee.

Prov. 4. 1. Hear, ye children, the instruction of a father, and attend to know understanding. ² For I give you good doctrine, forsake ye not my law. ²⁰ My son, attend to my words; incline thine ear unto my sayings. ²¹ Let them not depart from thine eyes; keep them in the midst of thine heart. ²² For they *are* life unto those that find them, and health to all their flesh.

Prov. 5. 1. My son, attend unto my wisdom, *and* bow thine ear to my understanding: ² That thou mayest regard discretion, and *that* thy lips may keep knowledge.

Prov. 6. 20. My son, keep thy father's commandment, and forsake not the law of thy mother. ²³ For the commandment *is* a lamp; and the law *is* light; and reproofs of instruction *are* the way of life.

Prov. 7. 1. My son, keep my words, and lay up my commandments with thee. ² Keep my commandments, and live; and my law as the apple of thine eye.

Prov. 23. 22. Harken unto thy father that begat thee, and despise not thy mother when she is old.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 6. 1. Children, obey your parents in the Lord: for this is right. ² Honour thy father and mother; which is the first commandment with promise; ³ That it may be well with thee, and thou mayest live long on the earth.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 20. Children, obey *your* parents in all things; for this is well pleasing unto the Lord.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 5. 4. But if any widow have children or nephews, let them learn first to show piety at home, and to requite their parents: for that is good and acceptable before God.

§ 383. *Do not set light by your father or mother, nor mock nor despise them.*

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 27. 16. Cursed *be* he that setteth light by his father or his mother: and all the people shall say, Amen.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 15. 5. A fool despiseth his father's instruction: but he that regardeth reproof is prudent. ¹⁰ Correction *is* grievous unto him that forsaketh the way: *and* he that hateth reproof shall die. ²⁰ A wise son maketh a glad father: but a foolish man despiseth his mother.

Prov. 17. 25. A foolish son *is* a grief to his father, and bitterness to her that bare him.

Prov. 19. 26. He that wasteth *his* father, *and* chaseth away *his* mother, *is* a son that causeth shame, and bringeth reproach.

Prov. 20. 20. Whoso curseth his father or his mother, his lamp shall be put out in obscure darkness.

Prov. 28. 24. Whoso robbeth his father or his mother, and saith, *It is* no transgression; the same *is* the companion of a destroyer.

Prov. 30. 11. *There is* a generation *that* curseth their father, and doth not bless their mother. ¹⁷ The eye *that* mocketh at *his* father, and despiseth to obey *his* mother, the ravens of the valley shall pick it out, and the young eagles shall eat it.

§ 384. *Do not oppress servants, nor require excessively hard labour of them: but pay their wages when due, giving them that which is just and equal.*

B. C. 1520.] Job 31. 13. If I did despise the cause of my manservant or of my maidservant, when they contended with me; ¹⁴ What then shall I do when God riseth up? and when he visiteth, what shall I answer him? ¹⁵ Did not he that made me in the womb make him? and did not one fashion us in the womb?

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 24. 14. Thou shalt not oppress a hired servant *that is* poor and needy, *whether he be* of thy brethren, or of thy strangers *that are* in thy land within thy gates: ¹⁵ At his day thou shalt give *him* his hire, neither shall the sun go down upon it; for he *is* poor, and setteth his heart upon it: lest he cry against thee unto the Lord, and it be sin unto thee.

B. C. 600.] Hab. 2. 12. Woe to him that buildeth a town

with blood, and establisheth a city by iniquity ! ¹⁵ Behold, *is it* not of the Lord of hosts that the people shall labour in the very fire, and the people shall weary themselves for very vanity ?

B. C. 598.] Jer. 22. 13. Woe unto him that buildeth his house by unrighteousness, and his chambers by wrong ; *that* useth his neighbour's service without wages, and giveth him not for his work.

A. D. 28.] Luke 10. 7. The labourer is worthy of his hire.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 6. 9. And, ye masters, do the same things unto them, forbearing threatening : knowing that your Master also is in heaven ; neither is there respect of persons with him.

James 5. 4. Behold, the hire of the labourers who have reaped down your fields, which is of you kept back by fraud, crieth : and the cries of them which have reaped are entered into the ears of the Lord of Sabaoth.

A. D. 62.] Col. 4. 1. Masters, give unto *your* servants that which is just and equal ; knowing that ye also have a Master in heaven.

§ 385. *Servants, obey your masters, not with eyeservice, but in the fear of God.*

A. D. 61.] Eph. 6. 5. Servants, be obedient to them that are *your* masters according to the flesh, with fear and trembling, in singleness of your heart, as unto Christ ; ⁶ Not with eyeservice, as menpleasers ; but as the servants of Christ, doing the will of God from the heart ; ⁷ With good will doing service, as to the Lord, and not to men : ⁸ Knowing that whatsoever good thing any man doeth, the same shall he receive of the Lord, whether *he* be bond or free.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 22. Servants, obey in all things *your* masters according to the flesh ; not with eyeservice, as menpleasers ; but in singleness of heart, fearing God : ²³ And whatsoever ye do, do it heartily, as to the Lord, and not unto men ; ²⁴ Knowing that of the Lord ye shall receive the reward of the inheritance : for ye serve the Lord Christ. ²⁵ But he that doeth wrong shall receive for the wrong which he hath done : and there is no respect of persons.

A. D. 65.] Titus 2. 9. *Exhort* servants to be obedient unto their own masters, *and* to please *them* well in all *things* ; not answering again ; ¹⁰ Not purloining, but showing all good fidelity ; that they may adorn the doctrine of God our Saviour in all things.

§ 386. *Take able men, that are well known among the people; men of truth, who fear God; and place such to be rulers.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 18. 21. Moreover thou shalt provide out of all the people able men, such as fear God, men of truth, hating covetousness; and place *such* over them, *to be* rulers.

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 1. 13. Take you wise men, and understanding, and known among your tribes, and I will make them rulers over you.

B. C. 1044.] Psal. 2. 10. Be wise now therefore, O ye kings: be instructed, ye judges of the earth. ¹¹ Serve the Lord with fear.

B. C. 1018.] 2 Sam. 23. 3. The God of Israel said, the Rock of Israel spake to me, He that ruleth over men *must be* just, ruling in the fear of God.

B. C. 700.] Prov. 29. 2. When the righteous are in authority, the people rejoice: but when the wicked beareth rule, the people mourn.

§ 387. *In all manner of trespasses the cause of both parties shall come before the judges.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 22. 8. If the thief be not found, then the master of the house shall be brought unto the judges, *to see* whether he have put his hand unto his neighbour's goods. ⁹ For all manner of trespass, *whether it be* for ox, for ass, for sheep, for raiment, *or* for any manner of lost things which *another* challengeth to be his, the cause of both parties shall come before the judges; *and* whom the judges shall condemn, he shall pay double unto his neighbour.

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 19. 17. Then both the men, between whom the controversy *is*, shall stand before the Lord, before the priests and the judges, which shall be in those days; ¹⁸ And the judges shall make diligent inquisition.

§ 388. *Judges and officers shall not be respecters of persons, they shall not take gifts nor bribes, but shall judge righteously between men.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 23. 6. Thou shalt not wrest the judgment of thy poor in his cause. ⁷ Keep thee far from a false matter; and the innocent and righteous slay thou not: for I will not justify the wicked. ⁸ And thou shalt take no gift: for the gift blindeth the wise, and perverteth the words of the righteous.

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 19. 15. Ye shall do no unrighteousness in judgment; thou shalt not respect the person of the poor, nor

honour the person of the mighty: *but* in righteousness shalt thou judge thy neighbour.

B. c. 1490.] Deut. 1. 16. And I charged your judges at that time, saying, Hear the *causes* between your brethren, and judge righteously between *every* man and his brother, and the stranger *that is* with him. ¹⁷ Ye shall not respect persons in judgment; *but* ye shall hear the small as well as the great; ye shall not be afraid of the face of man; for the judgment *is* God's.

Deut. 16. 18. Judges and officers shalt thou make thee in all thy gates, which the Lord thy God giveth thee, throughout thy tribes: and they shall judge the people with just judgment. ¹⁹ Thou shalt not wrest judgment; thou shalt not respect persons, neither take a gift: for a gift doth blind the eyes of the wise, and pervert the words of the righteous. ²⁰ That which is altogether just shalt thou follow, that thou mayest live, and inherit the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

B. c. 896.] 2 Chron. 19. 5. And he set judges in the land. ⁶ And said to the judges, Take heed what ye do: for ye judge not for man, but for the Lord, who *is* with you in the judgment. ⁷ Wherefore now let the fear of the Lord be upon you; take heed and do *it*: for *there is* no iniquity with the Lord our God, nor respect of persons, nor taking of gifts. ¹⁰ And what cause soever shall come to you of your brethren that dwell in their cities, between blood and blood, between law and commandment, statutes and judgments, ye shall even warn them that they trespass not against the Lord, and *so* wrath come upon you, and upon your brethren: this do, and ye shall not trespass.

B. c. 713.] Isa. 10. 1. Woe unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness *which* they have prescribed; ² To turn aside the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that *they* may rob the fatherless!

B. c. 598.] Jer. 22. 3. Thus saith the Lord; Execute ye judgment and righteousness, and deliver the spoiled out of the hand of the oppressor: and do no wrong, do no violence to the stranger, the fatherless, nor the widow, neither shed innocent blood in this place.

B. c. 574.] Ezek. 45. 9. Thus saith the Lord God; Let it suffice you, O princes of Israel: remove violence and spoil, and execute judgment and justice, take away your exactions from my people, saith the Lord God. ¹⁰ Ye shall have just balances, and a just ephah, and a just bath.

B. c. 518.] Zech. 8. 16. Execute the judgment of truth and peace in your gates.

§ 389. *Pay government taxes and obey magistrates.*

A. D. 28.] Matt. 17. 24. And when they were come to Capernaum, they that received tribute *money* came to Peter, and said, Doth not your master pay tribute? ²⁵ He saith, Yes. And when he was come into the house, Jesus prevented him, saying, What thinkest thou, Simon? of whom do the kings of the earth take custom or tribute? of their own children, or of strangers? ²⁶ Peter saith unto him, Of strangers. Jesus saith unto him, Then are the children free. ²⁷ Notwithstanding, lest we should offend them, go thou to the sea, and cast a hook, and take up the fish that first cometh up; and when thou hast opened his mouth, thou shalt find a piece of money: that take, and give unto them for me and thee.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 22. 16. And they sent out unto him their disciples with the Herodians, saying, Master, we know that thou art true, and teachest the way of God in truth, neither carest thou for any *man*: for thou regardest not the person of men. ¹⁷ Tell us therefore, What thinkest thou? Is it lawful to give tribute unto Cesar, or not? ¹⁸ But Jesus perceived their wickedness, and said, Why tempt ye me, ye hypocrites? ¹⁹ Show me the tribute money. And they brought unto him a penny. ²⁰ And he saith unto them, Whose *is* this image and superscription? ²¹ They say unto him, Cesar's. Then saith he unto them, Render therefore unto Cesar the things which are Cesar's; and unto God the things that are God's.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 13. 1. Let every soul be subject unto the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God. ² Whosoever therefore resisteth the power, resisteth the ordinance of God: and they that resist shall receive to themselves damnation. ³ For rulers are not a terror to good works, but to the evil. Wilt thou then not be afraid of the power? do that which is good, and thou shalt have praise of the same: ⁴ For he is the minister of God to thee for good. But if thou do that which is evil, be afraid; for he beareth not the sword in vain: for he is the minister of God, a revenger to *execute* wrath upon him that doeth evil. ⁵ Wherefore *ye* must needs be subject, not only for wrath, but also for conscience' sake. ⁶ For, for this cause pay ye tribute also, for they are God's ministers, attending continually upon this very thing. ⁷ Render therefore to all their dues: tribute to whom tribute *is due*; custom to whom custom; fear to whom fear; honour to whom honour.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 2. 13. Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord's sake: whether it be to the king, as supreme; ¹⁴ Or unto governors, as unto them that are sent by him for the punishment of evil doers, and for the praise of them that do well. ¹⁵ For so is the will of God, that with

well doing ye may put to silence the ignorance of foolish men; ¹⁶ As free, and not using *your* liberty for a cloak of maliciousness, but as the servants of God. ¹⁷ Honour all *men*. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honour the king.

A. D. 65.] Titus 3. 1. Put them in mind to be subject to principalities and powers, to obey magistrates, to be ready to every good work.

§ 390. *Pray for all that are in authority.*

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 2. 1. I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers, intercessions, *and* giving of thanks, be made for all men; ² For kings, and *for* all that are in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty. ³ For this *is* good and acceptable in the sight of God our Saviour.

§ 391. *Rulers are not to be obeyed contrary to the commandments of God.*

B. C. 580.] Dan. 3. 13. Then Nebuchadnezzar in *his* rage and fury commanded to bring Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. Then they brought these men before the king. ¹⁴ Nebuchadnezzar spake and said unto them, *Is it true*, O Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego? do not ye serve my gods, nor worship the golden image which I have set up? ¹⁵ Now if ye be ready that at what time ye hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and dulcimer, and all kinds of music, ye fall down and worship the image which I have made; *well*: but if ye worship not, ye shall be cast the same hour into the midst of a burning fiery furnace; and who *is* that God that shall deliver you out of my hands? ¹⁶ Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, answered and said to the king, O Nebuchadnezzar, we *are* not careful to answer thee in this matter. ¹⁷ If it be *so*, our God whom we serve is able to deliver us from the burning fiery furnace, and he will deliver *us* out of thine hand, O king. ¹⁸ But if not, be it known unto thee, O king, that we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up.

A. D. 29.] Acts 4. 18. And they called them, and commanded them not to speak at all nor teach in the name of Jesus. ¹⁹ But Peter and John answered and said unto them, Whether it be right in the sight of God to hearken unto you more than unto God, judge ye. ²⁰ For we cannot but speak the things which we have seen and heard.

Acts 5. 27. And when they had brought them, they set *them* before the council: and the high priest asked them, ²⁸ Saying, Did not we straitly command you that ye should

not teach in this name? and, behold, ye have filled Jerusalem with your doctrine, and intend to bring this man's blood upon us. ²⁹ Then Peter and the *other* apostles answered and said, We ought to obey God rather than men. (See also Exod. 1. 17; 1 Sam. 14. 45; 22. 17; Dan. 6. 10.)

§ 392. *Thou shalt not steal, neither rob nor defraud.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 20. 15. Thou shalt not steal.

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 19. 11. Ye shall not steal, neither deal falsely, neither lie one to another. ¹³ Thou shalt not defraud thy neighbour, neither rob *him*: the wages of him that is hired shall not abide with thee all night until the morning.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 61. 8. For I the Lord love judgment, I hate robbery.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 13. 9. For this, Thou shalt not commit adultery, Thou shalt not kill, Thou shalt not steal, Thou shalt not bear false witness, Thou shalt not covet; and if *there be* any other commandment, it is briefly comprehended in this saying, namely, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 4. 28. Let him that stole steal no more: but rather let him labour, working with *his* hands the thing which is good, that he may have to give to him that needeth.

§ 393. *The thief shall restore double for that which he stole, and if he has nothing else, he shall pay with labour.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 22. 3. If the sun be risen upon him, *there shall be blood shed* for him; *for* he should make full restitution: IF HE HAVE NOTHING, THEN HE SHALL BE SOLD for his theft. ⁴ If the theft be certainly found in his hand alive, whether it be ox, or ass, or sheep; he shall restore double. ⁷ If a man shall deliver unto his neighbour money or stuff to keep, and it be stolen out of the man's house; if the thief be found, let him pay double. ⁸ If the thief be not found, then the master of the house shall be brought unto the judges, *to see* whether he have put his hand unto his neighbour's goods. ⁹ For all manner of trespass, *whether it be* for ox, for ass, for sheep, for raiment, or for any manner of lost thing, which *another* challengeth to be his, the cause of both parties shall come before the judges; *and* whom the judges shall condemn, he shall pay double unto his neighbour.

§ 394. *Whoever is partner with a thief God will reprove.*

B. C. 700.] Prov. 29. 24. Whoso is partner with a thief hateth his own soul: he heareth cursing, and bewrayeth *it* not.

B. C. 679.] Psa. 50. 18. When thou sawest a thief, then thou consentedst with him. ²¹ I will reprove thee.

§ 395. *In buying and selling do not cheat, nor over-reach, nor defraud in any matter.*

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 6. 2. If a soul sin, and commit a trespass against the Lord, and lie unto his neighbour in that which was delivered him to keep, or in fellowship, or in a thing taken away by violence, or hath deceived his neighbour; ³ Or have found that which was lost, and lieth concerning it, and sweareth falsely; in any of all these that a man doeth, sinning therein: ⁴ Then it shall be, because he hath sinned, and is guilty, that he shall restore that which he took violently away, or the thing which he hath deceitfully gotten, or that which was delivered him to keep, or the lost thing which he found, ⁵ Or all that about which he hath sworn falsely; he shall even restore it in the principal, and shall add the fifth part more thereto, *and* give it unto him to whom it appertaineth, in the day of his trespass offering.

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 19. 35. Ye shall do no unrighteousness in judgment, in meteyard, in weight, or in measure. ³⁶ Just balances, just weights, a just ephah, and a just hin, shall ye have.

Lev. 25. 14, And if thou sell aught unto thy neighbour, or buyest *aught* of thy neighbour's hand, ye shall not oppress one another.

Deut. 25. 13. Thou shalt not have in thy bag divers weights, a great and a small: ¹⁴ Thou shalt not have in thine house divers measures, a great and a small: ¹⁵ *But* thou shalt have a perfect and just weight, a perfect and just measure shalt thou have: that thy days may be lengthened in the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee. ¹⁶ For all that do such things, *and* all that do unrighteously, *are* an abomination unto the Lord thy God.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 11. 1. A false balance *is* abomination to the Lord: but a just weight *is* his delight.

Prov. 16. 11. A just weight and balance *are* the Lord's: all the weights of the bag *are* his work.

Prov. 20. 10. Divers weights, *and* divers measures, both of them *are* alike abomination to the Lord. ²³ Divers weights *are* an abomination unto the Lord; and a false balance *is* not good.

B. C. 710.] Micah 6. 11. Shall I count *them* pure with the wicked balances, and with the bag of deceitful weights?

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 4. 6. That no *man* go beyond and defraud his brother in *any* matter: because that the Lord *is* the avenger of all such, as we also have forewarned you and testified.

§ 396. *Thou shalt not covet.*

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 20. 17. Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's wife, nor his manservant, nor his maidservant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor any thing that *is* thy neighbour's.

B. c. 730.] Micah 2. 1. Woe to them that devise iniquity, and work evil upon their beds! when the morning is light, they practice it, because it is in the power of their hand.
² And they covet fields, and take *them* by violence; and houses, and take *them* away: so they oppress a man and his house, even a man and his heritage. ³ Therefore thus saith the Lord; Behold, against this family do I devise an evil, from which ye shall not remove your necks; neither shall ye go haughtily: for this time *is* evil.

B. c. 600.] Hab. 2. 9. Woe to him that coveteth an evil covetousness to his house, that he may set his nest on high, that he may be delivered from the power of evil!

A. D. 29.] Luke 12. 15. And he said unto them, Take heed and beware of covetousness: for a man's life consisteth not in the abundance of the things which he possesseth.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 5. 11. But now I have written unto you not to keep company, if any man that is called a brother be a fornicator, or covetous.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 7. 7. What shall we say then? *Is* the law sin? God forbid. Nay, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, Thou shalt not covet.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 5. 5. For this ye know, that no whoremonger, nor unclean person, nor covetous man, who is an idolater, hath any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 13. 5. *Let your* conversation *be* without covetousness; *and be* content with such things as ye have: for he hath said, I will never leave thee, nor forsake thee.

§ 397. *Every one must work and be diligent: doing with their might whatsoever they have to do.*

B. c. 4004.] Gen. 3. 19. In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread, till thou return unto the ground: for out of it wast thou taken: for dust thou *art*, and unto dust shalt thou return.

B. c. 1481.] Exod. 20. 9. Six days shalt thou labour, and do all thy work.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 22. 29. Seest thou a man diligent in his business? he shall stand before kings; he shall not stand before mean *men*.

B. C. 977.] Eccl. 9. 10. Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do *it* with thy might.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 4. 11. And that ye study to be quiet, and to do your own business, and to work with your own hands, as we commanded you; ¹² That ye may walk honestly toward them that are without, and *that* ye may have lack of nothing.

2 Thess. 3. 10. For even when we were with you, this we commanded you, that if any would not work, neither should he eat. ¹¹ For we hear that there are some which walk among you disorderly, working not at all, but are busybodies. ¹² Now them that are such we command and exhort by our Lord Jesus Christ, that with quietness they work, and eat their own bread. ¹³ But ye, brethren, be not weary in well doing. ¹⁴ And if any man obey not our word by this epistle, note that man, and have no company with him, that he may be ashamed. ¹⁵ Yet count *him* not as an enemy, but admonish *him* as a brother.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 12. 11. Not slothful in business; fervent in spirit; serving the Lord.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 4. 28. Let him that stole steal no more: but rather let him labour, working with *his* hands the thing which is good, that he may have to give to him that needeth.

§ 398. *Labour not to be rich.*

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 13. 11. Wealth *gotten* by vanity shall be diminished: but he that gathereth by labour shall increase.

Prov. 15. 27. He that is greedy of gain troubleth his own house.

Prov. 20. 21. An inheritance *may be* gotten hastily at the beginning; but the end thereof shall not be blessed.

Prov. 23. 4. Labour not to be rich: cease from thine own wisdom.

B. C. 760.] Isa. 5. 8. Woe unto them that join house to house, *that* lay field to field, till *there be* no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!

B. C. 700.] Prov. 28. 8. He that by usury and unjust gain increaseth his substance, he shall gather it for him that will pity the poor. ²⁰ A faithful man shall abound with blessings: but he that maketh haste to be rich shall not be innocent. ²² He that hasteth to be rich *hath* an evil eye, and considereth not that poverty shall come upon him.

B. C. 604.] Jer. 17. 11. *As* the partridge sitteth *on eggs*, and hatcheth *them* not; *so* he that getteth riches, and not by right, shall leave them in the midst of his days, and at his end shall be a fool.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 13. 22. He also that received seed among

the thorns is he that heareth the word; and the care of this world, and the deceitfulness of richness, choke the word, and he becometh unfruitful.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 6. 9. But they that will be rich fall into temptation and a snare, and *into* many foolish and hurtful lusts, which drown men in destruction and perdition. ¹⁰ For the love of money is the root of all evil: which while some coveted after, they have erred from the faith, and pierced themselves through with many sorrows. ¹¹ But thou, O man of God, flee these things; and follow after righteousness, godliness, faith, love, patience, meekness.

§ 399. *If riches increase, set not your heart upon them, neither trust in them.*

B. C. 1023.] Psa. 62. 10. If riches increase, set not your heart upon them.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 11. 28. He that trusteth in his riches shall fall.

B. C. 660.] Jer. 9. 23. Thus saith the Lord, Let not the wise *man* glory in his wisdom, neither let the mighty *man* glory in his might, let not the rich *man* glory in his riches.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 2. Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 6. 10. For the love of money is the root of all evil: which while some coveted after, they have erred from the faith, and pierced themselves through with many sorrows. ¹⁷ Charge them that are rich in this world, that they be not highminded, nor trust in uncertain riches, but in the living God, who giveth us richly all things to enjoy.

§ 400. *Forget not that it is God who gives power to get wealth.*

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 8. 11. Beware that thou forget not the Lord thy God, in not keeping his commandments, and his judgments, and his statutes, which I command thee this day: ¹² Lest *when* thou hast eaten and art full, and hast built goodly houses, and dwelt *therein*; ¹³ And *when* thy herds and thy flocks multiply, and thy silver and thy gold is multiplied, and all that thou hast is multiplied; ¹⁴ Then thine heart be lifted up, and thou forget the Lord thy God; ¹⁷ And thou say in thine heart, My power and the might of *mine* hand hath gotten me this wealth. ¹⁸ But thou shalt remember the Lord thy God: for *it is* he that giveth thee power to get wealth.

B. C. 1165.] 1 Sam. 2. 7. The Lord maketh poor, and maketh rich: he bringeth low, and lifteth up.

B. c. 1015.] 1 Chron. 29. 12. Both riches and honour *come* of thee, and thou reignest over all; and in thy hand *is* power and might; and in thy hand *it is* to make great, and to give strength unto all.

B. c. 1014.] 1 Kings 3. 11. And God said unto him, ¹² I have also given thee that which thou hast not asked, both riches, and honour: so that there shall not be any among the kings like unto thee all thy days.

§ 401. *Honour the Lord with thy substance: devise liberal things: give to him that is in need: be ready to distribute: see that ye abound in this grace; for it is more blessed to give than to receive.*

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 41. 1. Blessed *is* he that considereth the poor: the Lord will deliver him in time of trouble.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 3. 9. Honour the Lord with thy substance, and with the first fruits of all thine increase: ¹⁰ So shall thy barns be filled with plenty, and thy presses shall burst out with new wine. ²⁷ Withhold not good from them to whom it is due, when it is in the power of thine hand to do *it*. ²⁸ Say not unto thy neighbour, Go, and come again, and tomorrow I will give; when thou hast it by thee.

Prov. 11. 24. There is that scattereth, and yet increaseth; and *there is* that withholdeth more than is meet, but *it tendeth* to poverty. ²⁵ The liberal soul shall be made fat: and he that watereth shall be watered also himself.

Prov. 19. 17. He that hath pity upon the poor lendeth unto the Lord; and that which he hath given will he pay him again.

Prov. 21. 26. The righteous giveth and spareth not.

Prov. 22. 9. He that hath a bountiful eye shall be blessed; for he giveth of his bread to the poor.

B. c. 713.] Isa. 32. 8. But the liberal deviseth liberal things; and by liberal things shall he stand.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 58. 7. *Is it* not to deal thy bread to the hungry, and that thou bring the poor that are cast out to thy house? when thou seest the naked, that thou cover him: and that thou hide not thyself from thine own flesh? ¹⁰ And *if* thou draw out thy soul to the hungry, and satisfy the afflicted soul; then shall thy light rise in obscurity, and thy darkness *be* as the noonday.

A. D. 26.] Luke 3. 11. He that hath two coats, let him impart to him that hath none; and he that hath meat, let him do likewise.

Luke 6. 38. Give, and it shall be given unto you; good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running

over, shall men give into your bosom. For with the same measure that ye mete withal it shall be measured to you again.

A. D. 26.] Luke 14. 13. But when thou makest a feast, call the poor, the maimed, the lame, the blind: ¹⁴ And thou shalt be blessed: for they cannot recompense thee: for thou shalt be recompensed at the resurrection of the just.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 8. 1. Moreover, brethren, we do you to wit of the grace of God bestowed on the churches of Macedonia; ² How that, in a great trial of affliction, the abundance of their joy and their deep poverty abounded unto the riches of their liberality. ⁷ Therefore, as ye abound in every *thing*, in faith, and utterance, and knowledge, and in all diligence, and in your love to us, see that ye abound in this grace also. ⁹ For ye know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that, though he was rich, yet for your sakes he became poor, that ye through his poverty might be rich. ¹¹ Now therefore perform the doing of *it*; that as *there was* a readiness to will, so *there may be* a performance also out of that which ye have. ¹² For if there be first a willing mind, *it is* accepted according to that a man hath, *and* not according to that he hath not. ¹³ For *I mean* not that other men be eased, and you burdened. ¹⁴ But by an equality, *that* now at this time your abundance *may be a supply* for their want, that their abundance also may be a *supply* for your want; that there may be equality.

2 Cor. 9. 6. But this *I say*, He which soweth sparingly shall reap also sparingly; and he which soweth bountifully shall reap also bountifully. ⁷ Every man according as he purposeth in his heart, *so let him give*; not grudgingly, or of necessity: for God loveth a cheerful giver. ¹⁰ Now he that ministereth seed to the sower both minister bread for *your* food, and multiply your seed sown, and increase the fruits of your righteousness: ¹¹ Being enriched in every thing to all bountifulness, which causeth through us thanksgiving to God. ¹² For the administration of this service not only supplieth the want of the saints, but is abundant also by many thanksgivings unto God; ¹³ While by the experiment of this ministration they glorify God for your professed subjection unto the gospel of Christ, and for *your* liberal distribution unto them, and unto all *men*.

A. D. 61.] Acts 20. 35. I have showed you all things, how that so labouring ye ought to support the weak, and to remember the words of the Lord Jesus, how he said, It is more blessed to give than to receive.

Eph. 4. 28. Let him that stole steal no more: but rather let him labour, working with *his* hands the thing which is good, that he may have to give to him that needeth.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 13. 16. But to do good and to com-

municate forget not: for with such sacrifices God is well pleased.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 6. 17. Charge them that are rich in this world, that they be not highminded, nor trust in uncertain riches, but in the living God, who giveth us richly all things to enjoy; ¹⁸ That they do good, that they be rich in good works, ready to distribute, willing to communicate; ¹⁹ Laying up in store for themselves a good foundation against the time to come, that they may lay hold on eternal life.

§ 402. *Let every man lay by on the first day of the week, according as God hath prospered him, not grudgingly, or of necessity, for God loveth a cheerful giver.*

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 25. 2. Speak unto the children of Israel, that they bring me an offering: of every man that giveth it willingly with his heart ye shall take my offering.

Exod. 35. 4. And Moses spake unto all the congregation of the children of Israel, saying, This *is* the thing which the Lord commanded, saying, ⁵ Take ye from among you an offering unto the Lord: whosoever *is* of a willing heart, let him bring it, an offering of the Lord.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 16. 1. Now concerning the collection for the saints, as I have given order to the churches of Galatia, even so do ye. ² Upon the first *day* of the week let every one of you lay by him in store, as *God* hath prospered him.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 9. 5. Therefore I thought it necessary to exhort the brethren, that they would go before unto you, and make up beforehand your bounty, whereof ye had notice before, that the same might be ready, as a *matter of* bounty, and not as of covetousness. ⁷ Every man according as he purposeth in his heart, *so let him give*; not grudgingly, or of necessity: for God loveth a cheerful giver.

§ 403. *Do not give to be seen of men, but do it with simplicity.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 6. 1. Take heed that ye do not your alms before men, to be seen of them: otherwise ye have no reward of your Father which is in heaven. ² Therefore when thou doest *thine* alms, do not sound a trumpet before thee, as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, They have their reward. ³ But when thou doest alms, let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth: ⁴ That thine alms

may be in secret: and thy Father which seeth in secret himself shall reward thee openly.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 12. 8. He that giveth *let him do it* with simplicity.

§ 404. *Harden not thy heart, nor shut thy hand from the poor.*

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 15. 7. If there be among you a poor man of one of thy brethren within any of thy gates in thy land which the Lord thy God giveth thee, thou shalt not harden thine heart, nor shut thine hand from thy poor brother: ⁸ But thou shalt open thine hand wide unto him, and shalt surely lend him sufficient for his need, *in that* which he wanteth. ¹⁰ Thou shalt surely give him, and thine heart shall not be grieved when thou givest unto him: because that for this thing the Lord thy God shall bless thee in all thy works, and in all that thou putteth thine hand unto. ¹¹ For the poor shall never cease out of the land: therefore I command thee, saying, Thou shalt open thine hand wide unto thy brother, to thy poor, and to thy needy, in thy land.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 11. 26. He that withholdeth corn, the people shall curse him.

Prov. 14. 31. He that oppresseth the poor reproacheth his Maker: but he that honoureth him hath mercy on the poor.

Prov. 17. 5. Whoso mocketh the poor reproacheth his Maker.

B. C. 713.] Isa. 32. 7. The instruments also of the churl *are* evil: he deviseth wicked devices to destroy the poor with lying words, even when the needy speaketh right.

B. C. 700.] Prov. 28. 27. He that giveth unto the poor shall not lack: but he that hideth his eyes shall have many a curse.

A. D. 61.] James 2. 15. If a brother or sister be naked, and destitute of daily food, ¹⁶ And one of you say unto them, Depart in peace, be *ye* warmed and filled; notwithstanding ye give them not those things which are needful to the body; what *doth it* profit?

A. D. 69.] 1 John 3. 17. But whoso hath this world's good, and seeth his brother have need, and shutteth up his bowels *of compassion* from him, how dwelleth the love of God in him?

§ 405. *The foreigner shall be treated with justice the same as a citizen.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 22. 21. Thou shalt neither vex a stranger, nor oppress him.

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 19. 33. And if a stranger sojourn with thee

in your land, ye shall not vex him. ³⁴ *But* the stranger that dwelleth with you shall be unto you as one born among you, and thou shalt love him as thyself.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 1. 16. And I charged your judges at that time, saying, Hear *the causes* between your brethren, and judge righteously between *every* man and his brother, and the stranger *that is* with him. ¹⁷ Ye shall not respect persons in judgment.

Deut. 24. 17. Thou shalt not pervert the judgment of the stranger.

§ 406. *Thou shalt not bear false witness.*

B. c. 1591.] Exod. 20. 16. Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour.

B. c. 1490.] Deut. 19. 16. If a false witness rise up against any man to testify against him *that which is* wrong; ¹⁷ Then both the men, between whom the controversy *is*, shall stand before the Lord, before the priests and the judges, which shall be in those days; ¹⁸ And the judges shall make diligent inquisition.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 19. 5. A false witness shall not be unpunished; and *he that* speaketh lies shall not escape.

§ 407. *No man shall be condemned by the testimony of one witness only.*

B. c. 1451.] Num. 35. 30. Whoso killeth any person, the murderer shall be put to death by the mouth of witnesses: but one witness shall not testify against any person *to cause him* to die.

Deut. 17. 6. At the mouth of two witnesses, or three witnesses, shall he that is worthy of death be put to death; *but* at the mouth of one witness he shall not be put to death.

Deut. 19. 18. One witness shall not rise up against a man for any iniquity, or for any sin, in any sin that he sinneth: at the mouth of two witnesses, or at the mouth of three witnesses, shall the matter be established.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 18. 16. But if he will not hear *thee*, *then* take with thee one or two more, that in the mouth of two or three witnesses every word may be established.

A. D. 58.] 2 Cor. 13. 1. In the mouth of two or three witnesses shall every word be established.

§ 408. *Do not lie, but speak the truth.*

B. c. 1490.] Lev. 19. 11. Neither deal falsely, neither lie one to another.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 12. 19. The lip of truth shall be established for ever: but a lying tongue *is* but for a moment. ²² Lying lips *are* abomination to the Lord: but they that deal truly *are* his delight.

B. C. 518.] Zech. 8. 16. These *are* the things that ye shall do; Speak ye every man the truth to his neighbour: execute the judgment of truth and peace in your gates: ¹⁷ And let none of you imagine evil in your hearts against his neighbour; and love no false oath: for all these *are things* that I hate, saith the Lord.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 4. 25. Wherefore putting away lying, speak every man truth with his neighbour: for we are members one of another.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 9. Lie not one to another, seeing that ye have put off the old man with his deeds.

§ 409. *Speak evil of no man.*

B. C. 1060.] Psa. 34. 13. Keep thy tongue from evil, and thy lips from speaking guile.

Psa. 140. 11. Let not an evil speaker be established in the earth: evil shall hunt the violent man to overthrow *him*.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 2. 1. Wherefore laying aside all malice, and all guile, and hypocrisies, and envies, and all evil speakings, ² As new born babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby.

1 Peter 3. 10. For he that will love life, and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil, and his lips that they speak no guile.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 4. 31. Let all bitterness, and wrath, and anger, and clamour, and evil speaking, be put away from you, with all malice.

James 4. 11. Speak not evil one of another, brethren. He that speaketh evil of *his* brother, and judgeth his brother, speaketh evil of the law, and judgeth the law: but if thou judge the law, thou art not a doer of the law, but a judge.

A. D. 65.] Titus 3. 1. Put them in mind to be subject to principalities and powers, to obey magistrates, to be ready to every good work, ² To speak evil of no man, to be no brawlers, *but* gentle, showing all meekness unto all men.

§ 410. *Be swift to hear, slow to speak.*

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 10. 8. A prating fool shall fall. ¹⁹ In the multitude of words there wanteth not sin: but he that refraineth his lips *is* wise.

Prov. 13. 3. He that keepeth his mouth keepeth his life, *but* he that openeth wide his lips shall have destruction.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 15. 28. The heart of the righteous studieth to answer: but the mouth of the wicked poureth out evil things.

Prov. 17. 27. He that hath knowledge spareth his words: *and* a man of understanding is of an excellent spirit. ²⁸ Even a fool, when he holdeth his peace, is counted wise: and he that shutteth his lips *is esteemed* a man of understanding.

Prov. 21. 23. Whoso keepeth his mouth and his tongue, keepeth his soul from troubles.

Eccl. 5. 2. Be not rash with thy mouth, and let not thine heart be hasty to utter *any* thing before God: for God *is* in heaven, and thou upon earth: therefore let thy words be few. ³ For a dream cometh through the multitude of business; and a fool's voice *is known* by multitude of words.

B. c. 700.] Prov. 29. 11. A fool uttereth all his mind: but a wise *man* keepeth it in till afterwards. ²⁰ Seest thou a man *that is* hasty in his words? *there is* more hope of a fool than of him.

A. D. 61.] James 1. 19. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, slow to wrath. ²⁶ If any man among you seem to be religious, and bridleth not his tongue, but deceiveth his own heart, this man's religion *is* vain.

James 3. 2. If any man offend not in word, the same *is* a perfect man, *and* able also to bridle the whole body.

§ 411. *Do not flatter.*

B. c. 1016.] Psal. 12. 3. The Lord shall cut off all flattering lips, *and* the tongue that speaketh proud things.

B. c. 700.] Prov. 26. 28. A flattering mouth worketh ruin.

Prov. 28. 23. He that rebuketh a man, afterwards shall find more favour than he that flattereth with the tongue.

Prov. 29. 5. A man that flattereth his neighbour spreadeth a net for his feet.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 2. 4. But as we were allowed of God to be put in trust with the gospel, even so we speak: not as pleasing men, but God, which trieth our hearts. ⁵ For neither at any time use we flattering words, as ye know, nor a cloak of covetousness; God *is* witness.

§ 412. *Do not be a talebearer.*

B. c. 1490.] Lev. 19. 16. Thou shalt not go up and down as a talebearer among thy people.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 11. 13. A talebearer revealeth secrets: but he that is of a faithful spirit concealeth the matter.

Prov. 17. 9. He that covereth a transgression seeketh love; but he that repeateth a matter separateth *very* friends.

Prov. 18. 8. The words of a talebearer *are* as wounds, and they go down into the innermost parts of the belly.

Prov. 20. 13. He that goeth about *as* a tale-bearer revealeth secrets: therefore meddle not with him that flattereth with his lips.

§ 413. *Do not revile nor curse.*

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 22. 28. Thou shalt not revile the gods, nor curse the ruler of thy people.

B. c. 977.] Eccl. 10. 20. Curse not the king, no not in thy thought; and curse not the rich in thy bedchamber.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 44. Bless them that curse you.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 12. 14. Bless them which persecute you: bless, and curse not.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 2. 21. Because Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example, that ye should follow his steps: ²³ Who, when he was reviled, reviled not again; when he suffered, he threatened not; but committed *himself* to him that judgeth righteously.

A. D. 61.] James 3. 10. Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing. My brethren, these things ought not so to be.

§ 414. *Do not speak harshly nor use grievous words, but speak pleasantly and be courteous.*

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 12. 18. There is that speaketh like the piercings of a sword: but the tongue of the wise *is* health. ²⁵ Heaviness in the heart of man maketh it stoop: but a good word maketh it glad.

Prov. 15. 1. A soft answer turneth away wrath: but grievous words stir up anger. ²³ A man hath joy by the answer of his mouth: and a word *spoken* in due season, how good *is it!*

Prov. 16. 21. The wise in heart shall be called prudent: and the sweetness of the lips increaseth learning. ²⁴ Pleasant words *are as* a honeycomb, sweet to the soul, and health to the bones.

B. c. 977.] Eccl. 10. 12. The words of a wise man's mouth *are* gracious; but the lips of a fool will swallow up himself.

B. c. 700.] Prov. 25. 11. A word fitly spoken *is like* apples of gold in pictures of silver. ¹⁵ A soft tongue breaketh the bone.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 3. 8. Be courteous: ⁹ Not rendering evil for evil, or railing for railing: but contrariwise blessing; knowing that ye are thereunto called, that ye should inherit a blessing.

§ 415. *Do not talk about lewd actions. Let nothing corrupt proceed from your mouth—no filthiness or foolish talking or jesting: but let your words be acceptable to God, and beneficial to men.*

B. c. 1015.] Psal. 19. 14. Let the words of my mouth, and the meditations of my heart, be acceptable in thy sight, O Lord, my strength, and my redeemer.

B. c. 539.] Psal. 50. 23. To him that ordereth *his* conversation *aright* will I show the salvation of God.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 12. 34. For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh. ³⁵ A good man out of the good treasure of the heart bringeth forth good things: and an evil man out of the evil treasure bringeth forth evil things. ³⁶ But I say unto you, That every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment. ³⁷ For by thy words thou shalt be justified, and by thy words thou shalt be condemned.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 15. 33. Evil communications corrupt good manners.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 4. 29. Let no corrupt communication proceed out of your mouth, but that which is good to the use of edifying, that it may minister grace unto the hearers.

Eph. 5. 3. But fornication, and all uncleanness, or covetousness, let it not be once named among you, as becometh saints; ⁴ Neither filthiness, nor foolish talking, nor jesting.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 8. But now ye also put off all these; anger, wrath, malice, blasphemy, filthy communication out of your mouth. ¹⁶ Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom.

Col. 4. 5. Walk in wisdom toward them that are without, redeeming the time. ⁶ Let your speech *be* always with grace, seasoned with salt, that ye may know how ye ought to answer every man.

§ 416. *Be careful to maintain good works, and be zealous therein.*

B. c. 539.] Psal. 37. 3. Trust in the Lord, and do good; so shalt thou dwell in the land, and verily thou shalt be fed. ²⁷ Depart from evil, and do good; and dwell for evermore.

B. c. 760.] Isa. 1. 17. Learn to do well; seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge the fatherless, plead for the widow.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 16. Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven.

A. D. 29.] John 15. 8. Herein is my Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit; so shall ye be my disciples.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 4. 18. But *it is* good to be zealously affected always in a good *thing*.

Gal. 6. 9. And let us not be weary in well doing: for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not. ¹⁰ As we have therefore opportunity, let us do good unto all *men*, especially unto them who are of the household of faith.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 2. 15. For so is the will of God, that with well doing ye may put to silence the ignorance of foolish men.

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 10. That ye might walk worthy of the Lord unto all pleasing, being fruitful in every good work, and increasing in the knowledge of God.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 10. 24. And let us consider one another to provoke unto love and to good works.

A. D. 65.] Titus 2. 7. In all things showing thyself a pattern of good works: ¹³ Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ; ¹⁴ Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works.

Titus 3. 1. Put them in mind to be subject to principalities and powers, to obey magistrates, to be ready to every good work. ¹⁴ And let ours also learn to maintain good works for necessary uses, that they be not unfruitful.

§ 417. *Give the oppressed their rights, and visit the fatherless and widows.*

B. C. 760.] Isa. 1. 17. Learn to do well; seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge the fatherless, plead for the widow.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 58. 6. *Is* not this the fast that I have chosen? to loose the bands of wickedness, to undo the heavy burdens, and to let the oppressed go free, and that ye break every yoke? ⁷ *Is it* not to deal thy bread to the hungry, and that thou bring the poor that are cast out to thy house? when thou seest the naked, that thou cover him; and that thou hide not thyself from thine own flesh?

A. D. 29.] Matt. 25. 34. Then shall the King say unto them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world: ³⁵ For I was ahungered, and ye gave me meat: I was thirsty, and ye gave me drink: I was a stranger, and ye took me in: ³⁶ Naked, and ye clothed me: I was sick, and ye visited me: I was in prison, and ye came unto me. ³⁷ Then shall the righteous answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee ahungered, and fed *thee*? or thirsty, and gave *thee* drink? ³⁸ When saw we thee a stranger, and took *thee* in? or naked, and clothed *thee*? ³⁹ Or when saw we thee sick, or in prison, and came unto thee? ⁴⁰ And the King shall answer and say unto them,

Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye have done *it* unto one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done *it* unto me.

A. D. 61.] James 1. 27. Pure religion and undefiled before God and the Father is this, To visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, *and* to keep himself unspotted from the world.

§ 418. *Impose no voluntary humiliation on yourself.*

A. D. 62.] Col. 2. 18. Let no man beguile you of your reward in a voluntary humility and worshipping of angels, intruding into those things which he hath not seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind. ²⁰ Why...are ye subject to ordinances: ²¹ (Touch not, taste not, handle not;) ²² Which all are to perish with the using, after the commandments and doctrines of men? ²³ Which things have indeed a show of wisdom in will-worship, and humility, and neglecting of the body; not in any honour to the satisfying of the flesh.

§ 419. *We are not justified by the works of the law, but by God's grace, through faith in the redemption that is in Christ Jesus.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 53. 11. By his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 2. 16. Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified. ²¹ For if righteousness *come* by the law, then Christ is dead in vain.

Gal. 3. 2. Received ye the Spirit by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith? ³ Are ye so foolish? having begun in the Spirit, are ye now made perfect by the flesh? ⁴ And the Scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel unto Abraham, *saying*, In thee shall all nations be blessed. ⁵ So then they which be of faith are blessed with faithful Abraham. ¹⁴ That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

Gal. 5. 4. Christ is become of no effect unto you, whosoever of you are justified by the law; ye are fallen from grace.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 3. 20. Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law *is* the knowledge of sin. ²¹ But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets. ²² Even the righteousness of God *which is* by

faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe; for there is no difference; ²³ For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God; ²⁴ Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus: ²⁵ Whom God hath set forth *to be* a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins, that are past, through the forbearance of God; ²⁶ To declare, *I say*, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believeth in Jesus. ²⁷ Where is boasting then? It is excluded. By what law? of works? Nay; but by the law of faith. ²⁸ Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith without the deeds of the law. ³¹ Do we then make void the law through faith? God forbid: yea, we establish the law.

A. D. 65.] Titus 3. 7. That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life.

§ 420. *We are saved, not by our good works, but by the forbearance, mercy, and grace of God and of our Lord Jesus Christ.*

A. D. 52.] Acts 15. 11. But we believe that through the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ we shall be saved.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 3. 24. Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus: ²⁵ Whom God hath set forth *to be* a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God.

Rom. 6. 14. For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 1. 7. In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 2. 8. For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: *it is* the gift of God: ⁹ Not of works, lest any man should boast.

A. D. 65.] Titus 2. 11. For the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared to all men, ¹² Teaching us that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world,

Titus 3. 3. For we ourselves also were sometime foolish, disobedient, deceived, serving divers lusts and pleasures, living in malice and envy, hateful, *and* hating one another. ⁴ But after that the kindness and love of God our Saviour toward man appeared, ⁵ Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost.

§ 421. *The righteous, through faith in Christ, are the children of God by adoption.*

A. D. 26.] John 1. 12. As many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, *even* to them that believe on his name.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 9. Blessed are the peacemakers: for they shall be called the children of God.

A. D. 29.] Luke 20. 35 They which shall be accounted worthy to obtain that world, and the resurrection from the dead, ³⁶Are the children of God, being the children of the resurrection.

John 11. 51. He prophesied that Jesus should die for that nation; ⁵²And not for that nation only, but that also he should gather together in one the children of God that were scattered abroad.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 3. 26. For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.

Gal. 4. 4. But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law, ⁵To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons. ⁶And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father. ⁷Wherefore thou art no more a servant, but a son; and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 6. 17. And I will receive you, ¹⁸And will be a Father unto you, and ye shall be my sons and daughters, saith the Lord Almighty.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 8. 14. For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God. ¹⁵For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the spirit of ADOPTION, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. ¹⁶The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: ¹⁷And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with *him*, that we may be also glorified together.

A. D. 62.] Phil. 2. 15. That ye may be blameless and harmless, the sons of God, without rebuke, in the midst of a crooked and perverse nation, among whom ye shine as lights in the world.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 3. 1. Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not. ²Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is. ¹⁰In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother.

§ 422. *Love one another.*

A. D. 29.] John 13. 34. A new commandment I give unto you, That ye love one another; as I have loved you, that ye also love one another. ³⁵ By this shall all *men* know that ye are my disciples, if ye have love one to another.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 1. 22. Seeing ye have purified your souls in obeying the truth through the Spirit unto unfeigned love of the brethren, *see that ye love one another with a pure heart fervently.*

1 Peter 3. 8. Finally, *be ye* all of one mind, having compassion one of another; love as brethren, *be* pitiful, *be* courteous.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 5. 2. And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 10. 24. And let us consider one another to provoke unto love and to good works.

Heb. 13. 1. Let brotherly love continue.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 3. 11. For this is the message that ye heard from the beginning, that we should love one another. ¹⁴ We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not *his* brother abideth in death. ²³ And this is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and love one another, as he gave us commandment.

1 John 4. 10. Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son *to be* the propitiation for our sins. ¹¹ Beloved, if God so loved us, we ought also to love one another. ¹² If we love one another, God dwelleth in us, and his love is perfected in us. ²⁰ If a man say, I love God, and hateth his brother, he is a liar: for he that loveth not his brother whom he hath seen, how can he love God whom he hath not seen? ²¹ And this commandment have we from him, That he who loveth God love his brother also.

§ 423. *He that loves his neighbour as himself fulfils all the law.*

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 19. 18. Thou shalt not avenge, nor bear any grudge against the children of thy people, but thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself: I *am* the Lord.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 22. 37. Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. ³⁸ This is the first and great commandment. ³⁹ And the second *is* like unto it, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. ⁴⁰ On these two commandments hang all the law and the prophets.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 5. 13. By love serve one another. ¹⁴ For all

the law is fulfilled in one word, *even* in this: Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 13. 8. Owe no man any thing, but to love one another: for he that loveth another hath fulfilled the law. ⁹ For this, Thou shalt not commit adultery, Thou shalt not kill, Thou shalt not steal, Thou shalt not bear false witness, Thou shalt not covet; and if *there be* any other commandment, it is briefly comprehended in this saying, namely, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. ¹⁰ Love worketh no ill to his neighbour; therefore love *is* the fulfilling of the law.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 2. 10. He that loveth his brother abideth in the light, and there is none occasion of stumbling in him.

§ 424. *Walk before God and be perfect.*

B. C. 1897.] Gen. 17. 1. I *am* the Almighty God; walk before me, and be thou perfect.

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 18. 13. Thou shalt be perfect with the Lord thy God.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 5. 48. Be ye therefore perfect, even as your Father which is in heaven is perfect.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 7. 1. Let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 12. 2. That ye may prove what *is* that good, and acceptable, and perfect will of God.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 5. 10. But the God of all grace, who hath called us unto his eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after that ye have suffered a while, make you perfect, stablish, strengthen, settle *you*.

A. D. 61.] James 1. 4. But let patience have *her* perfect work, that ye may be perfect and entire, wanting nothing.

A. D. 62.] Col. 4. 12. That ye may stand perfect and complete in all the will of God.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 6. 1. Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection.

Heb. 10. 14. For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

Heb. 13. 20. Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great Shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant, ²¹ Make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you that which is well pleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom *be* glory for ever and ever. Amen.

§ 425. *Be holy, for this is the will of God, even your sanctification.*

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 19. 2. Ye shall be holy: for I the Lord your God *am* holy.

B. C. 1490.] Lev. 20. 7. Sanctify yourselves therefore, and be ye holy: for I *am* the Lord your God.

A. D. 29.] John 17. 17. Sanctify them through thy truth: thy word is truth. ¹⁸ As thou hast sent me into the world, even so have I also sent them into the world. ¹⁹ And for their sakes I sanctify myself, that they also might be sanctified through the truth. ²⁰ Neither pray I for these alone, but for them also which shall believe on me through their word.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 4. 3. For this is the will of God, *even* your sanctification, that ye should abstain from fornication: ⁴ That every one of you should know how to possess his vessel in sanctification and honour; ⁷ For God hath not called us unto uncleanness, but unto holiness.

1 Thess. 5. 23. And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and *I pray God* your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

2 Thess. 2. 13. Because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth.

A. D. 60.] Acts 20. 32. And now, brethren, I commend you to God, and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all them which are sanctified.

1 Peter 1. 2. Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace unto you, and peace, be multiplied. ¹⁶ But as he which hath called you is holy, so be ye holy in all manner of conversation; ¹⁶ Because it is written, Be ye holy; for I am holy.

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 12. Giving thanks unto the Father, which hath made us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 3. 3. And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure.

§ 426. *We are purchased by the blood of Christ Jesus, and through faith in his redemption we have justification, forgiveness of sins, and peace with God.*

A. D. 58.] Rom. 3. 24. Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus: ²⁵ Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God.

Rom. 5. 9. Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him.

A. D. 60.] 1 Pet. 1. 18. Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, *as* silver and gold, from your vain conversation *received* by tradition from your fathers; ¹⁹ But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot.

Acts 20. 28. Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over the which the Holy Ghost hath made you overseers, to feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 1. 7. In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace.

A. D. 62.] Col. 1. 14. In whom we have redemption through his blood, *even* the forgiveness of sins. ²⁰ Having made peace through the blood of his cross.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 9. 12. Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption *for us*. ¹³ For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of a heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh; ¹⁴ How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

A. D. 96.] Rev. 5. 9. For thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation.

§ 427. *By the blood of Christ Jesus we have liberty to enter into the holiest, are sanctified, and cleansed from all sin.*

A. D. 63.] Heb. 10. 19. Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus.

Heb. 13. 12. Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, suffered without the gate.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 1. 7. But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 1. 5. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood, ⁶ And hath made us kings and priests unto God and his Father: to him *be* glory and dominion for ever and ever, Amen.

Rev. 7. 14. And he said to me, These are they which came out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

§ 428. *They that obey from the heart are free from the dominion of sin.*

A. D. 29.] John 8. 31. Then said Jesus to those Jews which believed on him, If ye continue in my word, *then* are ye my disciples indeed; ³² And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 6. 14. For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace. ¹⁷ But God be thanked, that ye were the servants of sin, but ye have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you. ¹⁸ Being then made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness. ²² But now being made free from sin, and become servants to God, ye have your fruit unto holiness, and the end everlasting life.

Rom. 8. 2. For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 3. 6. Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not: whosoever sinneth hath not seen him, neither known him.

⁹ Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.

1 John 5. 18. We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not: but he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not.

§ 429. *All the children of God are priests—offering spiritual sacrifices—entering into the holiest.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 61. 6. But ye shall be named the priests of the Lord: *men* shall call you the ministers of our God.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 2. 5. Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ. ⁹ But ye *are* a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should show forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 10. 19. Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 1. 5. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood, ⁶ And hath made us kings and priests unto God and his Father; to him *be* glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.

§ 430. *There shall be one fold, without division, that all the members may have the same care one for another, and that the world may believe in Christ.*

A. D. 29.] John 10. 16. And other sheep I have, which are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice: and there shall be one fold, *and* one shepherd.

A. D. 29.] John 17. 11. And now I am no more in the world, but these are in the world, and I come to thee. Holy Father, keep through thine own name those whom thou hast given me, that they may be one as we *are*. ²⁰ Neither pray I for these alone, but for them also which shall believe on me through their word. ²¹ That they all may be one; as thou, Father, *art* in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us: that the world may believe that thou hast sent me. ²² And the glory which thou gavest me I have given them; that they may be one, even as we are one.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 12. 24. God hath tempered the body together, having given more abundant honour to that *part* which lacked: ²⁵ That there should be no schism in the body; but *that* the members should have the same care one for another. ²⁶ And whether one member suffer, all the members suffer with it; or one member be honoured, all the members rejoice with it. ²⁷ Now ye are the body of Christ, and members in particular,

§ 431. *God has given to the Church apostles, prophets, evangelists, pastors, and teachers, for the work of the ministry, for the building up of the body of Christ.*

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 12. 27. Now ye are the body of Christ, and members in particular. ²⁸ And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 4. 7. But unto every one of us is given grace according to the measure of the gift of Christ. ⁸ Wherefore he saith, When he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men. ¹¹ And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers; ¹² For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ: ¹³ Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ: ¹⁶ From whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by that which every joint supplieth, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the body unto the edifying of itself in love.

§ 432. *The abilities and duties of gospel ministers differ in different persons.*

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 12. 4. Now there are diversities of gifts, but the same spirit. ⁵ And there are differences of administrations, but the same Lord. ⁶ And there are diversities of

operations, but it is the same God which worketh all in all. ⁷ But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal. ⁸ For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom; to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit; ⁹ To another faith by the same Spirit; to another the gifts of healing by the same Spirit; ¹⁰ To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another *divers* kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues: ¹¹ But all these worketh that one and the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as he will. ¹² For as the body is one, and hath many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body: so also is Christ. ¹³ For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether *we be* Jews or Gentiles, whether *we be* bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit. ¹⁴ For the body is not one member, but many. ¹⁵ If the foot shall say, Because I am not the hand, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? ¹⁶ And if the ear shall say, Because I am not the eye, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? ¹⁷ If the whole body *were* an eye, where *were* the hearing? If the whole *were* hearing, where *were* the smelling? ¹⁸ But now hath God set the members every one of them in the body, as it hath pleased him. ¹⁹ And if they were all one member, where *were* the body? ²⁰ But now *are they* many members, yet but one body. ²² Nay, much more those members of the body, which seem to be more feeble, are necessary: ²³ And those *members* of the body, which we think to be less honourable, upon these we bestow more abundant honour; and our uncomely *parts* have more abundant comeliness. ²⁴ For our comely *parts* have no need: but God hath tempered the body together, having given more abundant honour to that *part* which lacked: ²⁵ That there should be no schism in the body; but *that* the members should have the same care one for another. ²⁶ And whether one member suffer, all the members suffer with it; or one member be honoured, all the members rejoice with it. ²⁷ Now ye are the body of Christ, and members in particular.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 12. 4. For as we have many members in one body, and all members have not the same office: ⁵ So we, *being* many, are one body in Christ, and every one members one of another.

§ 433. *No one person has all gifts, and each person is responsible only for the use of the gifts which he has.*

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 12. 14. For the body is not one member, but many. ¹⁵ If the foot shall say, Because I am not the hand, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? ¹⁶ And

if the ear shall say, Because I am not the eye, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? ¹⁷If the whole body *were* an eye, where *were* the hearing? If the whole *were* hearing, where *were* the smelling? ¹⁸But now hath God set the members every one of them in the body, as it hath pleased him. ¹⁹And if they were all one member, where *were* the body? ²⁰But now *are they* many members, yet but one body. ²¹And the eye cannot say unto the hand, I have no need of thee: nor again the head to the feet, I have no need of you. ²²Nay, much more those members of the body, which seem to be more feeble, are necessary. ²⁹*Are* all apostles? *are* all prophets? *are* all teachers? *are* all workers of miracles? ³⁰Have all the gifts of healing? do all speak with tongues? do all interpret?

A. D. 58.] Rom. 12. 6. Having then gifts differing according to the grace that is given to us, whether prophecy, *let us prophesy* according to the proportion of faith; ⁷Or ministry, *let us wait on our* ministering; or he that teacheth, on teaching; ⁸Or he that exhorteth, on exhortation: he that giveth, *let him do it* with simplicity; he that ruleth, with diligence; he that sheweth mercy, with cheerfulness.

§ 434. *Colleagues and successors of the apostles in the general superintendency of the Church are acknowledged as such by laying on of the hands of the Presbytery.*

A. D. 45.] Acts 13. 2. As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them. ³And when they had fasted and prayed, and laid *their* hands on them, they sent *them* away.

A. D. 53.] Acts 16. 1. Then came he to Derbe and Lystra: and, behold, a certain disciple was there, named Timotheus, the son of a certain woman, which was a Jewess, and believed; but his father *was* a Greek: ²Which was well reported of by the brethren that were at Lystra and Iconium. ³Him would Paul have to go forth with him.

1 Tim. 4. 14. Neglect not the gift that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with the laying on of the hands of the presbytery.

§ 435. *Suitable persons are appointed to be Elders in the Church by the general Superintendent.*

A. D. 45.] Acts 14. 23. And when they had ordained them elders in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they commended them to the Lord, on whom they believed.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 2. 2. And the things that thou hast heard of me among many witnesses, the same commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also.

Titus 1. 5. For this cause left I thee in Crete, that thou shouldest set in order the things that are wanting, and ordain elders in every city, as I had appointed thee.

§ 436. *Personal character and reputation which is essential in an Elder or Bishop.*

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 3. 1. This is a true saying, If a man desire the office of a bishop, he desireth a good work. ² A bishop then must be blameless, the husband of one wife, vigilant, sober, of good behaviour, given to hospitality, apt to teach; ³ Not given to wine, no striker, not greedy of filthy lucre; but patient, not a brawler, not covetous; ⁴ One that ruleth well his own house, having his children in subjection with all gravity; ⁵ (For if a man know not how to rule his own house, how shall he take care of the church of God?) ⁶ Not a novice, lest being lifted up with pride he fall into the condemnation of the devil. ⁷ Moreover he must have a good report of them which are without; lest he fall into reproach and the snare of the devil.

Titus 1. 6. If any be blameless, the husband of one wife, having faithful children not accused of riot or unruly. ⁷ For a bishop must be blameless, as the steward of God; not self-willed, not soon angry, not given to wine, no striker, not given to filthy lucre; ⁸ But a lover of hospitality, a lover of good men, sober, just, holy, temperate; ⁹ Holding fast the faithful word as he hath been taught, that he may be able by sound doctrine both to exhort and to convince the gainsayers.

§ 437. *The general Superintendents advise other Elders where their services are needed.*

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 3. 1. Wherefore when we could no longer forbear, we thought it good to be left at Athens alone; ² And sent Timotheus, our brother, and minister of God, and our fellow labourer in the gospel of Christ, to establish you, and to comfort you concerning your faith.

A. D. 53.] Acts 17. 14. And then immediately the brethren sent away Paul to go as it were to the sea: but Silas and Timotheus abode there still. ¹⁵ And they that conducted Paul brought him unto Athens: and receiving a commandment unto Silas and Timotheus for to come to him with all speed, they departed.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 16. 3. And when I come, whomsoever ye shall approve by *your* letters, them will I send to bring your

liberality unto Jerusalem. ⁴ And if it be meet that I go also, they shall go with me. ¹⁰ Now if Timotheus come, see that he may be with you without fear: for he worketh the work of the Lord, as I also *do*. ¹¹ Let no man therefore despise him: but conduct him forth in peace, that he may come unto me: for I look for him with the brethren. ¹² As touching *our* brother Apollos, I greatly desired him to come unto you with the brethren: but his will was not at all to come at this time: but he will come when he shall have convenient time.

A. D. 59.] Acts 19. 22. So he sent into Macedonia two of them that ministered unto him, Timotheus and Erastus; but he himself stayed in Asia for a season.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 5. 12. By Sylvanus, a faithful brother unto you, as I suppose, I have written briefly, exhorting, and testifying that this is the true grace of God wherein ye stand.

A. D. 68.] Eph. 6. 21. But that ye also may know my affairs, *and* how I do, Tychicus, a beloved brother and faithful minister in the Lord, shall make known to you all things: ²² Whom I have sent unto you for the same purpose, that ye might know our affairs, and *that* he might comfort your hearts.

A. D. 62.] Phil. 2. 19. But I trust in the Lord Jesus to send Timotheus shortly unto you, that I also may be of good comfort, when I know your state. ²⁰ For I have no man like-minded, who will naturally care for your state. ²¹ For all seek their own, not the things which are Jesus Christ's. ²² But ye know the proof of him, that, as a son with the father, he hath served with me in the gospel. ²³ Him therefore I hope to send presently, so soon as I shall see how it will go with me. ²⁴ But I trust in the Lord that I also myself shall come shortly. ²⁵ Yet I supposed it necessary to send to you Epaphroditus, my brother, and companion in labour, and fellow soldier, but your messenger, and he that ministered to my wants. ²⁶ For he longed after you all, and was full of heaviness, because that ye had heard that he had been sick. ²⁷ For indeed he was sick nigh unto death: but God had mercy on him: and not on him only, but on me also, lest I should have sorrow upon sorrow. ²⁸ I sent him therefore the more carefully, that, when ye see him again, ye may rejoice, and that I may be the less sorrowful. ²⁹ Receive him therefore in the Lord with all gladness; and hold such in reputation.

A. D. 62.] Col. 4. 7. All my state shall Tychicus declare unto you, *who is* a beloved brother, and a faithful minister and fellow servant in the Lord: ⁸ Whom I have sent unto you for the same purpose, that he might know your estate, and comfort your hearts; ⁹ With Onesimus, a faithful and beloved

brother, who is *one* of you. They shall make known unto you all things which *are done* here.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 1. 3. As I besought thee to abide still at Ephesus, when I went into Macedonia, that thou mightest charge some that they teach no other doctrine, ⁴ Neither give heed to fables and endless genealogies, which minister questions, rather than godly edifying which is in faith: *so do*.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 4. 9. Do thy diligence to come shortly unto me: ¹⁰ For Demas hath forsaken me, having loved this present world, and is departed unto Thessalonica; Crescens to Galatia, Titus unto Dalmatia. ¹¹ Only Luke is with me. Take Mark, and bring him with thee, for he is profitable to me for the ministry. ¹² And Tychicus have I sent to Ephesus. ²⁰ Erastus abode at Corinth: but Trophimus have I left at Miletum sick. ²¹ Do thy diligence to come before winter.

Titus 1. 5. For this cause left I thee in Crete, that thou shouldest set in order the things that are wanting, and ordain elders in every city, as I had appointed thee.

Titus 3. 12. When I shall send Artemas unto thee, or Tychicus, be diligent to come unto me to Nicopolis: for I have determined there to winter. ¹³ Bring Zenas the lawyer and Apollos on their journey diligently, that nothing be wanting unto them.

§ 438. *The general Superintendents advise Churches where to apply their benevolent gifts.*

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 16. 3. And when I come, whomsoever ye shall approve by *your* letters, them will I send to bring your liberality unto Jerusalem. ⁴ And if it be meet that I go also, they shall go with me.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 8. 13. For I *mean* not that other men be eased, and ye burdened: ¹⁴ But by an equality, *that* now at this time your abundance *may be a supply* for their want, that their abundance also may be *a supply* for your want, that there may be equality: ¹⁵ As it is written, He that *had gathered* much had nothing over; and he that *had gathered* little had no lack. ¹⁶ But thanks *be* to God, which put the same earnest care into the heart of Titus for you. ¹⁷ For indeed he accepted the exhortation; but being more forward, of his own accord he went unto you. ¹⁸ And we have sent with him the brother, whose praise *is* in the gospel throughout all the churches; ¹⁹ And not *that* only, but who was also chosen of the churches to travel with us with this grace, which is administered by us to the glory of the same Lord, and *declaration of* your ready mind: ²⁰ Avoiding this, that no man should blame us in this abundance which is administered by us.

§ 439. *The Elders must warn sinners, preach the gospel, baptize, oversee and feed the Church, and be examples to the people.*

B. c. 712.] Isa. 58. 1. Cry aloud, spare not, lift up thy voice like a trumpet, and show my people their transgression, and the house of Jacob their sins.

B. c. 612.] Jer. 3. 15. And I will give you pastors according to my heart, which shall feed you with knowledge and understanding.

B. c. 595.] Ezek. 2. 6. And thou, son of man, be not afraid of them, neither be afraid of their words, though briers and thorns *be* with thee, and thou dost dwell among scorpions: be not afraid of their words, nor be dismayed at their looks, though they *be* a rebellious house. ⁷ And thou shalt speak my words unto them, whether they will hear, or whether they will forbear: for they *are* most rebellious.

Ezek. 3. 17. Son of man, I have made thee a watchman unto the house of Israel: therefore hear the word at my mouth, and give them warning from me. ¹⁸ When I say unto the wicked, Thou shalt surely die; and thou givest him not warning, nor speakest to warn the wicked from his wicked way, to save his life; the same wicked *man* shall die in his iniquity; but his blood will I require at thy hand. ¹⁹ Yet if thou warn the wicked, and he turn not from his wickedness, nor from his wicked way, he shall die in his iniquity; but thou hast delivered thy soul.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 28. 16. Then the eleven disciples went away into Galilee, into a mountain where Jesus had appointed them. ¹⁸ And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth. ¹⁹ Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: ²⁰ Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, *even* unto the end of the world. Amen.

A. D. 60.] Acts 20. 17. And from Miletus he sent to Ephesus, and called the elders of the church. ¹⁸ And when they were come to him, he said unto them, Ye know, from the first day that I came into Asia, after what manner I have been with you at all seasons. ²⁸ Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over the which the Holy Ghost hath made you overseers, to feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood.

1 Peter 5. 1. The elders which are among you I exhort, who am also an elder, and a witness of the sufferings of Christ, and also a partaker of the glory that shall be revealed: ² Feed the flock of God which is among you, taking the oversight

thereof, not by constraint, but willingly; not for filthy lucre, but of a ready mind; ³ Neither as being lords over *God's* heritage, but being ensamples to the flock.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 3. 2. A bishop then must be blameless, apt to teach. ⁴ One that ruleth well his own house, having his children in subjection with all gravity. ⁵ For if a man know not how to rule his own house, how shall he take care of the church of God?

1 Tim. 4. 11. These things command and teach. ¹² Let no man despise thy youth; but be thou an example of the believers, in word, in conversation, in charity, in spirit, in faith, in purity. ¹³ Till I come, give attendance to reading, to exhortation, to doctrine.

1 Tim. 5. 17. Let the elders that rule well be counted worthy of double honour, especially they who labour in the word and doctrine.

2 Tim. 2. 2. And the things that thou hast heard of me among many witnesses, the same commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also.

2 Tim. 4. 2. Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all longsuffering and doctrine.

Titus 1. 7. For a bishop must be blameless, as the steward of God; ⁹ Holding fast the faithful word as he hath been taught, that he may be able by sound doctrine both to exhort and to convince the gainsayers.

Titus 2. 1. But speak thou the things which become sound doctrine. ¹⁵ These things speak, and exhort, and rebuke with all authority. Let no man despise thee.

§ 440. *God, having called a person to the office of an Elder, holds him to account for any neglect of his calling.*

B. C. 595.] Ezek. 3. 17. Son of man, I have made thee a watchman unto the house of Israel: therefore hear the word at my mouth, and give them warning from me. ¹⁸ When I say unto the wicked, Thou shalt surely die; and thou givest him not warning, nor speakest to warn the wicked from his wicked way, to save his life; the same wicked *man* shall die in his iniquity; but his blood will I require at thy hand. ¹⁹ Yet if thou warn the wicked, and he turn not from his wickedness, nor from his wicked way, he shall die in his iniquity; but thou hast delivered thy soul. ²⁰ Again, When a righteous *man* doth turn from his righteousness, and commit iniquity, and I lay a stumbling block before him, he shall die: because thou hast not given him warning, he shall die in his sin, and his righteousness which he hath done shall not be remem-

bered; but his blood will I require at thy hand. ²¹ Nevertheless, if thou warn the righteous *man*, that the righteous sin not, and he doth not sin, he shall surely live, because he is warned; also thou hast delivered thy soul.

A. D. 29.] Acts 4. 18. And they called them, and commanded them not to speak at all nor teach in the name of Jesus. ¹⁹ But Peter and John answered and said unto them, Whether it be right in the sight of God to hearken unto you more than unto God, judge ye. ²⁰ For we cannot but speak the things which we have seen and heard. ²¹ So when they had further threatened them, they let them go, finding nothing how they might punish them, because of the people: for all *men* glorified God for that which was done.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 9. 16. For though I preach the gospel, I have nothing to glory of: for necessity is laid upon me; yea, woe is unto me, if I preach not the gospel! ¹⁷ For if I do this thing willingly, I have a reward: but if against my will, a dispensation of *the gospel* is committed unto me.

§ 441. *Be careful to maintain sound doctrine.*

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 1. 19. Holding faith, and a good conscience; which some having put away concerning faith have made shipwreck.

1 Tim. 4. 16. Take heed unto thyself, and unto the doctrine; continue in them: for in doing this thou shalt both save thyself, and them that hear thee.

1 Tim. 6. 12. Fight the good fight of faith, lay hold on eternal life, whereunto thou art also called, and hast professed a good profession before many witnesses. ¹³ I give thee charge in the sight of God, who quickeneth all things, and *before* Christ Jesus, who before Pontius Pilate witnessed a good confession; ¹⁴ That thou keep *this* commandment without spot, unrebukeable, until the appearing of our Lord Jesus Christ.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 1. 13. Hold fast the form of sound words, which thou hast heard of me, in faith and love which is in Christ Jesus.

2 Tim. 3. 14. But continue thou in the things which thou hast learned and hast been assured of, knowing of whom thou hast learned *them*; ¹⁵ And that from a child thou hast known the holy Scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

Titus 1. 9. Holding fast the faithful word as he hath been taught, that he may be able by sound doctrine both to exhort and to convince the gainsayers.

Titus 2. 7. In all things showing thyself a pattern of good works: in doctrine *showing* uncorruptness, gravity, sincerity,

⁸ Sound speech, that cannot be condemned ; that he that is of the contrary part may be ashamed, having no evil thing to say of you.

A. D. 65.] Jude 3. Beloved, when I gave all diligence to write unto you of the common salvation, it was needful for me to write unto you, and exhort *you* that ye should earnestly contend for the faith which was once delivered unto the saints. ⁴ For there are certain men crept in unawares, who were before of old ordained to this condemnation, ungodly men, turning the grace of our God into lasciviousness, and denying the only Lord God, and our Lord Jesus Christ.

§ 442. *Avoid superstitious, fables, and all insincere disputations.*

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 1. 4. Neither give heed to fables and endless genealogies, which minister questions, rather than godly edifying which is in faith. ⁵ Now the end of the commandment is charity out of a pure heart, and *of* a good conscience, and *of* faith unfeigned: ⁶ From which some having swerved have turned aside unto vain jangling; ⁷ Desiring to be teachers of the law; understanding neither what they say, nor whereof they affirm.

1 Tim. 4. 7. But refuse profane and old wives' fables, and exercise thyself *rather* unto godliness.

1 Tim. 6. 3. If any man teach otherwise, and consent not to wholesome words, *even* the words of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to the doctrine which is according to godliness; ⁴ He is proud, knowing nothing, but doting about questions and strifes of words, whereof cometh envy, strife, railings, evil surmisings, ⁵ Perverse disputings of men of corrupt minds, and destitute of the truth, supposing that gain is godliness: from such withdraw thyself. ²⁰ O Timothy, keep that which is committed to thy trust, avoiding profane *and* vain babblings, and oppositions of science falsely so called: ²¹ Which some professing have erred concerning the faith.

2 Tim. 2. 14. Of these things put *them* in remembrance, charging *them* before the Lord that they strive not about words to no profit, *but* to the subverting of the hearers. ¹⁵ Study to show thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth. ¹⁶ But shun profane *and* vain babblings: for they will increase unto more ungodliness. ¹⁷ And their word will eat as doth a canker: of whom is Hymeneus and Philetus. ²³ But foolish and unlearned questions avoid, knowing that they do gender strifes. ²⁴ And the servant of the Lord must not strive; but be gentle unto all *men*, apt to teach, patient; ²⁵ In meekness instructing those that oppose themselves; if God

peradventure will give them repentance to the acknowledging of the truth; ²⁶ And *that* they may recover themselves out of the snare of the devil, who are taken captive by him at his will.

A. D. 65.] Titus 3. 9. But avoid foolish questions, and genealogies, and contentions, and strivings about the law; for they are unprofitable and vain.

§ 443. *Let the Elders live holily and unblameably, obtaining the confidence of all classes of people for the gospel's sake; giving no offence in any thing, that the ministry be not blamed.*

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 2. 10. Ye are witnesses, and God also, how holily and justly and unblameably we behaved ourselves among you that believed: ¹¹ As ye know how we exhorted and comforted and charged every one of you, as a father *doth* his children, ¹² That ye would walk worthy of God, who hath called you unto his kingdom and glory.

2 Thess. 3. 7. For yourselves know how ye ought to follow us: for we behaved not ourselves disorderly among you; ⁸ Neither did we eat any man's bread for nought: but wrought with labour and travail night and day, that we might not be chargeable to any of you: ⁹ Not because we have not power, but to make ourselves an ensample unto you to follow us.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 4. 1. Let a man so account of us, as of the ministers of Christ, and stewards of the mysteries of God. ² Moreover it is required in stewards, that a man be found faithful.

1 Cor. 9. 19. For though I be free from all *men*, yet have I made myself servant unto all, that I might gain the more. ²⁰ And unto the Jews I became as a Jew, that I might gain the Jews; to them that are under the law, as under the law, that I might gain them that are under the law; ²¹ To them that are without law, as without law, (being not without law to God, but under the law to Christ,) that I might gain them that are without law. ²² To the weak became I as weak, that I might gain the weak: I am made all things to all *men*, that I might by all means save some. ²³ And this I do for the gospel's sake, that I might be partaker thereof with *you*. ²⁷ But I keep under my body, and bring *it* into subjection: lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway.

2 Cor. 4. 1. Therefore, seeing we have this ministry, as we have received mercy, we faint not; ² But have renounced the hidden things of dishonesty, not walking in craftiness, nor handling the word of God deceitfully; but, by manifestation

of the truth, commending ourselves to every man's conscience in the sight of God.

A. D. 56.] 2 Cor. 6. 3. Giving no offence in any thing, that the ministry be not blamed: ⁴ But in all *things* approving ourselves as the ministers of God, in much patience, in afflictions, in necessities, in distresses, ⁵ In stripes, in imprisonments, in tumults, in labours, in watchings, in fastings; ⁶ By pureness, by knowledge, by longsuffering, by kindness, by the Holy Ghost, by love unfeigned, ⁷ By the word of truth, by the power of God, by the armour of righteousness on the right hand and on the left, ⁸ By honour and dishonour, by evil report and good report: as deceivers, and *yet* true; ⁹ As unknown, and *yet* well known; as dying, and, behold, we live; as chastened, and not killed; ¹⁰ As sorrowful, yet always rejoicing; as poor, yet making many rich; as having nothing, and *yet* possessing all things.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 4. 12. Let no man despise thy youth; but be thou an example of the believers, in word, in conversation, in charity, in spirit, in faith, in purity.

1 Tim. 5. 22. Keep thyself pure.

§ 444. *Do not fear, and be not ashamed of the testimonies of the Lord; but study to show thyself approved unto God.*

A. D. 58.] Rom. 1. 16. For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 1. 7. For God hath not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind. ⁸ Be not thou therefore ashamed of the testimony of our Lord, nor of me his prisoner: but be thou partaker of the afflictions of the gospel according to the power of God.

2 Tim. 2. 15. Study to show thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth.

§ 445. *Temporal necessities of Elders who labour in the word and doctrine are supplied by those for whom they labour.*

A. D. 27.] Matt. 10. 7. And as ye go, preach, saying, The kingdom of heaven is at hand. ⁹ Provide neither gold, nor silver, nor brass in your purses; ¹⁰ Nor scrip for *your* journey, neither two coats, neither shoes, nor yet staves: for the workman is worthy of his meat.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 6. 6. Let him that is taught in the word communicate unto him that teacheth in all good things.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 9. 7. Who goeth a warfare any time at his own charges? who planteth a vineyard, and eateth not of the fruit thereof? or who feedeth a flock, and eateth not of the milk of the flock? ⁸ Say I these things as a man? or saith not the law the same also? ⁹ For it is written in the law of Moses, Thou shalt not muzzle the mouth of the ox that treadeth out the corn. Doth God take care for oxen? ¹⁰ Or saith he *it* altogether for our sakes? For our sakes, no doubt; *this* is written: that he that plougheth should plough in hope: and that he that thresheth in hope should be partaker of his hope. ¹¹ If we have sown unto you spiritual things, *is it* a great thing if we shall reap your carnal things? ¹² If others be partakers of *this* power over you, *are* not we rather? Nevertheless we have not used this power; but suffer all things, lest we should hinder the gospel of Christ. ¹³ Do ye not know that they which minister about holy things live *of the things* of the temple? and they which wait at the altar are partakers with the altar? ¹⁴ Even so hath the Lord ordained that they which preach the gospel should live of the gospel.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 5. 17. Let the elders that rule well be counted worthy of double honour, especially they who labour in the word and doctrine. ¹⁸ For the Scripture saith, Thou shalt not muzzle the ox that treadeth out the corn. And, The labourer *is* worthy of his reward.

2 Tim. 2. 4. No man that warreth entangleth himself with the affairs of *this* life; that he may please him who hath chosen him to be a soldier. ⁶ The husbandman that laboureth must be first partaker of the fruits.

§ 446. *Esteem and honour the Elders for their works' sake.*

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 12. And we beseech you, brethren, to know them which labour among you, and are over you in the Lord, and admonish you; ¹³ And to esteem them very highly in love for their works' sake.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 16. 16. That ye submit yourselves unto such, and to every one that helpeth with *us*, and laboureth.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 13. 7. Remember them which have the rule over you, who have spoken unto you the word of God: whose faith follow, considering the end of *their* conversation. ¹⁷ Obey them that have the rule over you, and submit yourselves: for they watch for your souls, as they that must give account, that they may do it with joy, and not with grief: for that *is* unprofitable for you.

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 5. 17. Let the elders that rule well be counted worthy of double honour, especially they who labour in the word and doctrine.

§ 447. *Pray for the Elders that they may be protected from evil, that they may have utterance, and that the word may have free course.*

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 25. Brethren, pray for us.

2 Thess. 3. 1. Finally, brethren, pray for us, that the word of the Lord may have *free* course, and be glorified, even as *it is* with you: ² And that we may be delivered from unreasonable and wicked men: for all *men* have not faith.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 15. 30. Now I beseech you, brethren, for the Lord Jesus Christ's sake, and for the love of the Spirit, that ye strive together with me in *your* prayers to God for me; ³¹ That I may be delivered from them that do not believe in Judea; and that my service which I *have* for Jerusalem may be accepted of the saints; ³² That I may come unto you with joy by the will of God, and may with you be refreshed.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 6. 18. Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints; ¹⁹ And for me, that utterance may be given unto me, that I may open my mouth boldly, to make known the mystery of the gospel, ²⁰ For which I am an ambassador in bonds; that therein I may speak boldly, as I ought to speak.

A. D. 62.] Col. 4. 3. Withal praying also for us, that God would open unto us a door of utterance, to speak the mystery of Christ, for which I am also in bonds: ⁴ That I may make it manifest, as I ought to speak.

A. D. 65.] Heb. 13. 18. Pray for us: for we trust we have a good conscience, in all things willing to live honestly. ¹⁹ But I beseech *you* the rather to do this, that I may be restored to you the sooner.

§ 448. *Deacons attend especially to the temporal affairs of the Church.*

A. D. 31.] Acts 6. 1. And in those days, when the number of the disciples was multiplied, there arose a murmuring of the Grecians against the Hebrews, because their widows were neglected in the daily ministration. ² Then the twelve called the multitude of the disciples *unto them*, and said, It is not reason that we should leave the word of God, and serve tables. ³ Wherefore, brethren, look ye out among you seven men of honest report, full of the Holy Ghost and wisdom, whom we may appoint over this business. ⁴ But we will give ourselves continually to prayer, and to the ministry of the word.

§ 449. *Deacons are chosen by the people, and appointed by the laying on of the hands of the Elders.*

A. D. 31.] Acts 6. 2. Then the twelve called the multitude of the disciples *unto them*, and said, It is not reason that we should leave the word of God, and serve tables. ³ Wherefore, brethren, look ye out among you seven men of honest report, full of the Holy Ghost and wisdom, whom we may appoint over this business. ⁵ And the saying pleased the whole multitude: and they chose Stephen, a man full of faith and of the Holy Ghost, and Philip, and Prochorus, and Nicanor, and Timon, and Parmenas, and Nicolas a proselyte of Antioch; ⁶ Whom they set before the apostles: and when they had prayed, they laid *their* hands on them.

§ 450. *Character, reputation, and circumstances essential for a Deacon.*

A. D. 65.] 1 Tim. 3. 8. Likewise *must* the deacons *be* grave, not double-tongued, not given to much wine, not greedy of filthy lucre; ⁹ Holding the mystery of the faith in a pure conscience. ¹⁰ And let these also first be proved; then let them use the office of a deacon, being *found* blameless. ¹¹ Even so *must their* wives *be* grave, not slanderers, sober, faithful in all things. ¹² Let the deacons be the husbands of one wife, ruling their children and their own houses well. ¹³ For they that have used the office of a deacon well purchase to themselves a good degree, and great boldness in the faith which is in Christ Jesus.

§ 451. *If any brother is accused of perverseness or of crime he shall be tried by the Church, and if guilty, he shall be excommunicated.*

A. D. 29.] Matt. 18. 15. Moreover if thy brother shall trespass against thee, go and tell him his fault between thee and him alone: if he shall hear thee, thou hast gained thy brother. ¹⁶ But if he will not hear *thee*, *then* take with thee one or two more, that in the mouth of two or three witnesses every word may be established. ¹⁷ And if he shall neglect to hear them, tell *it* unto the church: but if he neglect to hear the church, let him be unto thee as a heathen man and a publican. ¹⁸ Verily I say unto you, Whatsoever ye shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 5. 1. It is reported commonly *that there is* fornication among you, and such fornication as is not so much

as named among the Gentiles, that one should have his father's wife. ² And ye are puffed up, and have not rather mourned, that he that hath done this deed might be taken away from among you. ³ For I verily, as absent in body, but present in spirit, have judged already, as though I were present, *concerning* him that hath so done this deed, ⁴ In the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, when ye are gathered together, and my spirit, with the power of our Lord Jesus Christ, ⁵ To deliver such a one unto Satan for the destruction of the flesh, that the spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord Jesus. ⁷ Purge out therefore the old leaven.

§ 452. *If any who is called a brother lives contrary to the commandments of God, put away from among yourselves that wicked person.*

A. D. 52.] 2 Thess. 3. 6. Now we command you, brethren, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that ye withdraw yourselves from every brother that walketh disorderly, and not after the tradition which he received of us. ¹⁴ And if any man obey not our word by this epistle, note that man, and have no company with him, that he may be ashamed.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 5. 9. I wrote unto you in an epistle not to company with fornicators: ¹⁰ Yet not altogether with the fornicators of this world, or with the covetous, or extortioners, or with idolaters; for then must ye needs go out of the world. ¹¹ But now I have written unto you not to keep company, if any man that is called a brother be a fornicator, or covetous, or an idolater, or a railer, or a drunkard, or an extortioner; with such a one no not to eat. ¹² For what have I to do to judge them also that are without? do not ye judge them that are within? ¹³ But them that are without God judgeth. Therefore put away from among yourselves that wicked person.

§ 453. *Exclude any that teach doctrines contrary to the doctrines of Christ and of the apostles.*

A. D. 52.] Gal. 1. 7. There be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ. ⁸ But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed. ⁹ As we said before, so say I now again, If any *man* preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 16. 17. Now I beseech you, brethren, mark them which cause divisions and offences contrary to the doctrine which ye have learned; and avoid them. ¹⁸ For they

that are such serve not our Lord Jesus Christ, but their own belly: and by good words and fair speeches deceive the hearts of the simple.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 3. 5. Having a form of godliness, but denying the power thereof: from such turn away. ⁶ For of this sort are they which creep into houses, and lead captive silly women laden with sins, led away with divers lusts, ⁷ Ever learning, and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth.

Titus 3. 10. A man that is a heretic, after the first and second admonition, reject; ¹¹ Knowing that he that is such is subverted, and sinneth, being condemned of himself.

Jude 16. These are murmurers, complainers, walking after their own lusts; and their mouth speaketh great swelling words, having men's persons in admiration because of advantage. ¹⁷ But, beloved, remember ye the words which were spoken before of the apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ; ¹⁸ How that they told you there should be mockers in the last time, who should walk after their own ungodly lusts. ¹⁹ These be they who separate themselves, sensual, having not the Spirit.

A. D. 85.] 2 John 9. Whosoever transgresseth, and abideth not in the doctrine of Christ, hath not God. He that abideth in the doctrine of Christ, he hath both the Father and the Son. ¹⁰ If there come any unto you, and bring not this doctrine, receive him not into *your* house, neither bid him God speed: ¹¹ For he that biddeth him God speed is partaker of his evil deeds.

§ 454. *God will punish the Church if wicked persons and false teachers are permitted to remain in its communion.*

A. D. 96.] Rev. 2. 12. And to the angel of the church in Pergamos write; These things saith he which hath the sharp sword with two edges; ¹³ I know thy works, and where thou dwellest, *even* where Satan's seat is: and thou holdest fast my name, and hast not denied my faith, even in those days wherein Antipas *was* my faithful martyr, who was slain among you, where Satan dwelleth. ¹⁴ But I have a few things against thee, because thou hast there them that hold the doctrine of Balaam, who taught Balak to cast a stumblingblock before the children of Israel, to eat things sacrificed unto idols, and to commit fornication. ¹⁵ So hast thou also them that hold the doctrine of the Nicolaitans, which thing I hate. ¹⁶ Repent; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will fight against them with the sword of my mouth. ¹⁸ And unto the angel of the church in Thyatira write; These things saith the Son of God, who hath his eyes like unto a flame of fire, and

his feet *are* like fine brass. ¹⁹ I know thy works, and charity, and service, and faith, and thy patience, and thy works; and the last *to be* more than the first. ²⁰ Notwithstanding I have a few things against thee, because thou sufferest that woman Jezebel, which calleth herself a prophetess, to teach and to seduce my servants to commit fornication, and to eat things sacrificed unto idols. ²¹ And I gave her space to repent of her fornication; and she repenteth not. ²² Behold, I will cast her into a bed, and them that commit adultery with her into great tribulation, except they repent of their deeds. ²³ And I will kill her children with death; and all the churches shall know that I am he which searcheth the reins and hearts: and I will give unto every one of you according to your works.

§ 455. *Strangers who are recommended by letter from the Church where they are known, are to be received and helped.*

A. D. 58.] Rom. 16. 1. I commend unto you Phebe our sister, which is a servant of the church which is at Cenchrea: ² That ye receive her in the Lord, as becometh saints, and that ye assist her in whatsoever business she hath need of you: for she hath been a succourer of many, and of myself also.

§ 456. *All Scripture is given by inspiration of God.*

B. c. 1018.] 2 Sam. 23. 1. Now these *be* the last words of David. David the son of Jesse said, and the man *who was* raised up on high, the anointed of the God of Jacob, and the sweet psalmist of Israel, said, ² The Spirit of the Lord spake by me, and his word *was* in my tongue. ³ The God of Israel said, the Rock of Israel spake to me.

B. c. 445.] Neh. 9. 13. Thou camest down also upon mount Sinai, and spakest with them from heaven, and gavest them right judgments, and true laws, good statutes and commandments: ¹⁴ And madest known unto them thy holy sabbath, and commandest them precepts, statutes, and laws, by the hand of Moses thy servant.

A. D. 52.] Gal. 1. 11. But I certify you, brethren, that the gospel which was preached of me is not after man. ¹² For I neither received it of man, neither was I taught *it*, but by the revelation of Jesus Christ.

1 Thess. 2. 13. For this cause also thank we God without ceasing, because, when ye received the word of God which ye heard of us, ye received *it* not *as* the word of men, but, as it is in truth, the word of God, which effectually worketh also in you that believe.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 2. 1. And I, brethren, when I came to you, came not with excellency of speech or of wisdom, declaring unto you the testimony of God. ⁴ And my speech and my preaching *was* not with enticing words of man's wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power: ⁵ That your faith should not stand in the wisdom of men, but in the power of God. ⁶ Howbeit we speak wisdom among them that are perfect: yet not the wisdom of this world, nor of the princes of this world, that come to nought: ⁷ But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, *even* the hidden *wisdom*, which God ordained before the world unto our glory; ¹³ Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.

1 Cor. 14. 37. If any man think himself to be a prophet, or spiritual, let him acknowledge that the things that I write unto you are the commandments of the Lord.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 1. 9. Receiving the end of your faith, *even* the salvation of *your* souls. ¹⁰ Of which salvation the prophets have inquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace *that should come* upon you: ¹¹ Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow. ¹² Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us they did minister the things, which are now reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into. ¹³ Wherefore gird up the loins of your mind, be sober, and hope to the end for the grace that is to be brought unto you at the revelation of Jesus Christ.

2 Peter 1. 20. Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the Scripture is of any private interpretation. ²¹ For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake *as they were* moved by the Holy Ghost.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 3. 2. If ye have heard of the dispensation of the grace of God which is given me to you-ward: ³ How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery; as I wrote afore in few words; ⁴ Whereby, when ye read, ye may understand my knowledge in the mystery of Christ, ⁵ Which in other ages was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 3. 16. All Scripture *is* given by inspiration of God, and *is* profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: ¹⁷ That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 22. 6. And the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to show unto his servants the things which must shortly be done.

§ 457. *The word of God gives light and understanding, and is able to make thee wise unto salvation.*

B. C. 1015.] Psa. 19. 1. The law of the Lord *is* perfect, converting the soul: the testimony of the Lord *is* sure, making wise the simple. ⁸ The statutes of the Lord *are* right, rejoicing the heart: the commandment of the Lord *is* pure, enlightening the eyes. ⁹ The fear of the Lord is clean, enduring forever: the judgments of the Lord *are* true *and* righteous altogether. ¹⁰ More to be desired *are they* than gold, yea, than much fine gold: sweeter also than honey and the honeycomb. ¹¹ Moreover by them is thy servant warned: *and* in keeping of them *there is* great reward.

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 6. 23. For the commandment *is* a lamp; and the law *is* light; and reproofs of instruction *are* the way of life.

B. C. 444.] Psa. 119. 9. Wherewithal shall a young man cleanse his way? by taking heed *thereto* according to thy word. ⁹⁸ Thou through thy commandments hast made me wiser than mine enemies: for they *are* ever with me. ⁹⁹ I have more understanding than all my teachers: for thy testimonies *are* my meditation. ¹⁰⁰ I understand more than the ancients, because I keep thy precepts. ¹⁰⁴ Through thy precepts I get understanding: therefore I hate every false way. ¹⁰⁵ Thy word *is* a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path. ¹³⁰ The entrance of thy words giveth light; it giveth understanding unto the simple.

A. D. 61.] James 1. 21. Wherefore lay apart all filthiness and superfluity of naughtiness, and receive with meekness the engrafted word, which is able to save your souls.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 3. 14. But continue thou in the things which thou hast learned and hast been assured of, knowing of whom thou hast learned *them*; ¹⁵ And that from a child thou hast known the holy Scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

§ 458. *No commandments shall be added to, and none taken from, those which God has given. Beware of the traditions of men, and have regard only for the law and the testimony.*

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 4. 2. Ye shall not add unto the word which I command you, neither shall ye diminish *ought* from

it, that ye may keep the commandments of the Lord your God which I command you.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 12. 32. What thing soever I command you, observe to do it: thou shalt not add thereto, nor diminish from it.

B. c. 740.] Isa. 8. 20. To the law and to the testimony: if they speak not according to this word, *it is* because *there is* no light in them.

B. c. 700.] Prov. 30. 5. Every word of God *is* pure: he *is* a shield unto them that put their trust in him. ⁶ Add thou not unto his words, lest he reprove thee, and thou be found a liar.

A. D. 28.] Matt. 15. 1. Then came to Jesus scribes and Pharisees, which were of Jerusalem, saying, ² Why do thy disciples transgress the tradition of the elders? for they wash not their hands when they eat bread. ³ But he answered and said unto them, Why do ye also transgress the commandment of God by your tradition?

Mark 7. 7. Howbeit in vain do they worship me, teaching *for* doctrines the commandments of men. ⁸ For laying aside the commandment of God, ye hold the tradition of men, *as* the washing of pots and cups: and many other such like things ye do. ⁹ And he said unto them, Full well ye reject the commandment of God, that ye may keep your own tradition. ¹³ Making the word of God of none effect through your tradition, which ye have delivered: and many such like things do ye.

A. D. 62.] Col. 2. 8. Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 22. 18. For I testify unto every man that heareth the words of the prophecy of this book, If any man shall add unto these things, God shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book: ¹⁹ And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city, and *from* the things which are written in this book.

§ 459. *The word of God is able to accomplish that for which he has given it.*

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 32. 2. My doctrine shall drop as the rain, my speech shall distil as the dew, as the small rain upon the tender herb, and as the showers upon the grass.

B. c. 712.] Isa. 55. 10. For as the rain cometh down, and the snow from heaven, and returneth not thither, but watereth the earth, and maketh it bring forth and bud, that it may give seed to the sower, and bread to the eater: ¹¹ So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto

me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper *in the thing* whereto I sent it.

B. c. 598.] Jer. 23. 38. The prophet that hath a dream, let him tell a dream; and he that hath my word, let him speak my word faithfully. What *is* the chaff to the wheat? saith the Lord. ²⁹ *Is* not my word like as a fire? saith the Lord; and like a hammer *that* breaketh the rock in pieces?

B. c. 519.] Psa. 138. 2. For thou hast magnified thy word above all thy name.

A. D. 57.] 2 Cor. 10. 4. For the weapons of our warfare *are* not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strongholds: ⁵ Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ.

A. D. 61.] Eph. 6. 12. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high *places*. ¹³ Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. ¹⁴ Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; ¹⁵ And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; ¹⁶ Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. ¹⁷ And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 4. 12. For the word of God *is* quick, and powerful, and sharper than any twoedged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and *is* a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.

§ 460. *All must hear and know the word of God, both old and young, rich and poor, high and low.*

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 4. 8. And what nation *is there so* great, that hath statutes and judgments *so* righteous as all this law, which I set before you this day? ⁹ Only take heed to thyself, and keep thy soul diligently, lest thou forget the things which thine eyes have seen, and lest they depart from thy heart all the days of thy life; but teach them thy sons, and thy sons' sons.

Deut. 6. 6. And these words, which I command thee this day, shall be in thine heart: ⁷ And thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up. ⁸ And thou shalt bind them for a sign upon thine hand, and they shall be

as frontlets between thine eyes. ⁹ And thou shalt write them upon the posts of thy house, and on thy gates.

B. C. 1451.] Deut. 29. 29. The secret *things* belong unto the Lord our God: but those *things which are revealed belong* unto us and to our children for ever, that *we* may do all the words of this law.

Deut. 31. 11. When all Israel is come to appear before the Lord thy God in the place which he shall choose, thou shalt read this law before all Israel in their hearing. ¹² Gather the people together, men, and women, and children, and thy stranger that *is* within thy gates, that they may hear, and that they may learn, and fear the Lord your God, and observe to do all the words of this law: ¹³ And *that* their children, which have not known *any thing*, may hear, and learn to fear the Lord your God.

B. C. 1015.] Psal. 78. 4. We will not hide *them* from their children, showing to the generation to come the praises of the Lord, and his strength, and his wonderful works that he hath done. ⁵ For he established a testimony in Jacob, and appointed a law in Israel, which he commanded our fathers, that they should make them known to their children: ⁶ That the generation to come might know *them*, *even* the children *which* should be born; *who* should arise and declare *them* to their children: ⁷ That they might set their hope in God, and not forget the works of God, but keep his commandments.

B. C. 725.] Isa. 28. 9. Whom shall he teach knowledge? and whom shall he make to understand doctrine? *them that are* weaned from the milk, *and* drawn from the breasts. ¹⁰ For precept *must be* upon precept, precept upon precept; line upon line, line upon line; here a little, *and* there a little.

B. C. 539.] Psal. 49. 1. Hear this all *ye* people; give ear, all *ye* inhabitants of the world: ² Both low and high, rich and poor, together.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 11. 15. He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.

A. D. 52.] 1 Thess. 5. 27. I charge you by the Lord, that this epistle be read unto all the holy brethren.

A. D. 62.] Col. 4. 16. And when this epistle is read among you, cause that it be read also in the church of the Laodiceans; and that ye likewise read the *epistle* from Laodicea.

A. D. 69.] 1 John 2. 12. I write unto you, little children, because your sins are forgiven you for his name's sake. ¹³ I write unto you, fathers, because ye have known him *that is* from the beginning. I write unto you, young men, because ye have overcome the wicked one. I write unto you, little children, because ye have known the Father. ¹⁴ I have written unto you, fathers, because ye have known him *that is* from the beginning. I have written unto you, young men, because

ye are strong, and the word of God abideth in you, and ye have overcome the wicked one.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 2. 29. He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.

§ 461. *Search the Scriptures, remember them, meditate on them, and measure all doctrines by them.*

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 17. 19. And it shall be with him, and he shall read therein all the days of his life, that he may learn to fear the Lord his God, to keep all the words of this law and these statutes, to do them.

Josh. 1. 8. This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but thou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein.

B. c. 732.] Isa. 8. 20. To the law and to the testimony: if they speak not according to this word, *it is* because *there is* no light in them.

B. c. 713.] Isa. 34. 1. Come near, ye nations, to hear; and hearken, ye people: let the earth hear, and all that is therein: the world, and all things that come forth of it. ¹⁶ Seek ye out of the book of the Lord, and read: no one of these shall fail, none shall want her mate: for my mouth it hath commanded, and his spirit it hath gathered them.

B. c. 444.] Psal. 1. 1. Blessed *is* the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful. ² But his delight *is* in the law of the Lord; and in his law doth he meditate day and night.

Psal. 119. 15. I will meditate in thy precepts, and have respect unto thy ways. ¹⁶ I will delight myself in thy statutes: I will not forget thy word. ²³ Princes also did sit *and* speak against me: *but* thy servant did meditate in thy statutes. ²⁴ Thy testimonies also *are* my delight, *and* my counsellors. ⁹⁷ Oh how love I thy law! *it is* my meditation all the day. ¹⁴⁸ Mine eyes prevent the *night* watches, that I might meditate in thy word.

B. c. 397.] Mal. 4. 4. Remember ye the law of Moses my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, *with* the statutes and judgments.

A. D. 27.] John 5. 39. Search the Scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

A. D. 53.] Acts 17. 11. These were more noble than those in Thessalonica, in that they received the word with all readiness of mind, and searched the Scriptures daily, whether those things were so. ¹² Therefore many of them believed; also of honourable women which were Greeks, and of men, not a few.

A. D. 60.] 2 Pet. 3. 1. This second epistle, beloved, I now write unto you; in *both* which I stir up your pure minds by way of remembrance. ² That ye may be mindful of the words which were spoken before by the holy prophets, and of the commandment of us the apostles of the Lord and Saviour: ³ Knowing this first, that there shall come in the last days scoffers, walking after their own lusts, ⁴ And saying, Where is the promise of his coming? for since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue as *they were* from the beginning of the creation.

A. D. 63.] Heb. 2. 1. Therefore we ought to give the more earnest heed to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we should let *them* slip. ² For if the word spoken by angels was steadfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompense of reward; ³ How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard *him*.

A. D. 65.] Jude 17. But, beloved, remember ye the words which were spoken before of the apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 1. 3. Blessed *is* he that readeth, and they that hear the words of this prophecy, and keep those things which are written therein: for the time *is* at hand.

§ 462. *All Scripture is written for our admonition and instruction, that we may be thoroughly furnished unto all good work.*

A. D. 29.] John 20. 31. But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 9. 9. For it is written in the law of Moses, Thou shalt not muzzle the mouth of the ox that treadeth out the corn. Doth God take care for oxen? ¹⁰ Or saith he *it* altogether for our sakes? For our sakes, no doubt, *this* is written: that he that plougheth should plough in hope; and that he that thresheth in hope should be partaker of his hope.

1 Cor. 10. 1. Moreover, brethren, I would not that ye should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea. ⁵ But with many of them God was not well pleased: for they were overthrown in the wilderness. ⁶ Now these things were our examples, to the intent we should not lust after evil things, as they also lusted. ⁷ Neither be ye idolaters, as *were* some of them; as it is written, The people sat down to eat and drink, and rose up to play. ⁸ Neither let us commit fornication, as some of them committed, and fell in one day three and twenty thousand.

⁹ Neither let us tempt Christ, as some of them also tempted, and were destroyed of serpents. ¹⁰ Neither murmur ye, as some of them also murmured, and were destroyed of the destroyer. ¹¹ Now all these things happened unto them for ensamples: and they are written for our admonition, upon whom the ends of the world are come.

A. D. 58.] Rom. 4. 3. For what saith the Scripture? Abraham believed God, and it was counted unto him for righteousness. ²⁰ He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God; ²¹ And being fully persuaded, that what he had promised, he was able also to perform. ²² And therefore it was imputed to him for righteousness. ²³ Now it was not written for his sake alone, that it was imputed to him; ²⁴ But for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead.

A. D. 65.] 2 Tim. 3. 16. All Scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: ¹⁷ That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.

§ 463. *Let the word of God be fitted to your lips, that you may answer the word of truth to every opponent and to every one that asks a reason of the hope that is in you.*

B. C. 1000.] Prov. 22. 17. Bow down thine ear, and hear the words of the wise, and apply thine heart unto my knowledge. ¹⁸ For it is a pleasant thing if thou keep them within thee; they shall withal be fitted in thy lips. ¹⁹ That thy trust may be in the Lord, I have made known to thee this day, even to thee. ²⁰ Have not I written to thee excellent things in counsels and knowledge, ²¹ That I might make thee know the certainty of the words of truth.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 4. 3. And when the tempter came to him, he said, If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread. ⁴ But he answered and said, It is WRITTEN, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God. ⁵ Then the devil taketh him up into the holy city, and setteth him on a pinnacle of the temple, ⁶ And saith unto him, If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down: for it is written, He shall give his angels charge concerning thee: and in *their* hands they shall bear thee up, lest at any time thou dash thy foot against a stone. ⁷ Jesus said unto him, It is WRITTEN AGAIN, Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God. ⁸ Again, the devil taketh him up into an exceeding high mountain, and sheweth him all the king-

doms of the world, and the glory of them; ⁹ And saith unto him, All these things will I give thee, if thou wilt fall down and worship me. ¹⁰ Then saith Jesus unto him, Get thee hence, Satan: for it is WRITTEN, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve.

A. D. 60.] 1 Peter 3. 15. But sanctify the Lord God in your hearts: and *be* ready always to *give* an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you, with meekness and fear.

A. D. 62.] Col. 3. 16. Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.

Col. 4. 6. Let your speech *be* always with grace, seasoned with salt, that ye may know how ye ought to answer every man.

§ 464. *All the nations of the earth shall turn unto the Lord, wars shall cease, and the world shall be full of the knowledge of God.*

B. C. 1044.] Psal. 22. 27. All the ends of the world shall remember and turn unto the Lord: and all the kindreds of the nations shall worship before thee. ²⁸ For the kingdom *is* the Lord's: and he *is* the governor among the nations.

B. C. 1015.] Psal. 86. 9. All nations whom thou hast made shall come and worship before thee, O Lord; and shall glorify thy name. ¹⁰ For *thou art* great, and doest wondrous things: *thou art* God alone.

B. C. 740.] Isa. 2. 2. And it shall come to pass in the last days, *that* the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it. ³ And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem. ⁴ And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into ploughshares, and their spears into pruning-hooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 49. 7. Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, *and* his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nation abhorreth, to a servant of rulers, Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful, *and* the Holy One of Israel, and he shall choose thee. ⁶ Thus saith the Lord, In an acceptable time have I heard thee, and in a day of salvation have I helped

thee: and I will preserve thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages. ¹¹ And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall be exalted. ¹² Behold, these shall come from far: and, lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim. ¹⁸ Lift up thine eyes round about, and behold: all these gather themselves together, and come to thee. *As I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on thee, as a bride doeth.* ²² Thus saith the Lord God, Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people: and they shall bring thy sons in *their* arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon *their* shoulders.

B. c. 710.] Micah 4. 1. But in the last days it shall come to pass, *that* the mountain of the house of the Lord shall be established in the top of the mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills: and people shall flow unto it. ² And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem. ³ And he shall judge among many people, and rebuke strong nations afar off; and they shall beat their swords into ploughshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up a sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more. ⁴ But they shall sit every man under his vine and under his fig tree; and none shall make *them* afraid: for the mouth of the Lord of hosts hath spoken *it*. ⁵ For all people will walk every one in the name of his god, and we will walk in the name of the Lord our God for ever and ever. ⁶ In that day, saith the Lord, will I assemble her that halteth, and I will gather her that is driven out, and her that I have afflicted; ⁷ And I will make her that halted a remnant, and her that was cast far off a strong nation; and the Lord shall reign over them in mount Zion from henceforth, even for ever.

B. c. 590.] Hab. 2. 14. For the earth shall be filled with the knowledge of the glory of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

B. c. 538.] Psal. 102. 15. So the heathen shall fear the name of the Lord, and all the kings of the earth thy glory. ¹⁸ This shall be written for the generation to come: and the people which shall be created shall praise the Lord. ²² When the people are gathered together, and the kingdoms, to serve the Lord.

A. D. 96.] Rev. 14. 6. And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people.

CHAPTER VII.

THE HEAVENS AND THE EARTH.

§ 465. *The heavens and the earth were created by God.*

B. C. 4004.] Gen. 1. 1. In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth. ² And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness *was* upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters. ³ And God said, Let there be light: and there was light. ⁴ And God saw the light, that *it was* good: and God divided the light from the darkness. ⁷ And God made the firmament, and divided the waters which *were* under the firmament from the waters which *were* above the firmament: and it was so. ⁹ And God said, Let the waters under the heaven be gathered together unto one place, and let the dry *land* appear: and it was so. ¹⁰ And God called the dry *land* Earth; and the gathering together of the waters called he Seas: and God saw that *it was* good. ¹⁴ And God said, Let there be lights in the firmament of the heaven to divide the day from the night; and let them be for signs, and for seasons, and for days, and years: ¹⁵ And let them be for lights in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth: and it was so. ¹⁶ And God made two great lights: the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night: *he made* the stars also. ¹⁷ And God set them in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth, ¹⁸ And to rule over the day and over the night, and to divide the light from the darkness: and God saw that *it was* good.

B. C. 1034.] Psa. 33. 6. By the word of the Lord were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth. ⁷ He gathereth the waters of the sea together as a heap: he layeth up the depth in storehouses.

B. C. 712.] Isa. 44. 24. Thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, and he that formed thee from the womb, I *am* the Lord that maketh all *things*; that stretcheth forth the heavens alone; that spreadeth abroad the earth by myself.

B. C. 607.] Jer. 10. 12. He hath made the earth by his power, he hath established the world by his wisdom, and hath stretched out the heavens by his discretion.

§ 466. *The earth and all that is in it belongs unto God.*

B. C. 1520.] Job 41. 11. *Whatsoever is* under the whole heaven is mine.

B. c. 1491.] Exod. 19. 5. Now therefore, if ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto me above all people: for all the earth *is* mine.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 10. 14. Behold, the heaven and the heaven of heavens *is* the Lord's thy God, the earth *also*, with all that therein is.

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 24. 1. The earth *is* the Lord's, and the fulness thereof; the world, and they that dwell therein.

Psa. 95. 4. In his hand *are* the deep places of the earth: the strength of the hills *is* his also. ⁵ The sea *is* his, and he made it: and his hands formed the dry *land*.

B. c. 896.] Psa. 115. 16. The heaven, *even* the heavens, *are* the Lord's: but the earth hath he given to the children of men.

B. c. 571.] Hag. 2. 8. The silver *is* mine, and the gold *is* mine, saith the Lord of hosts.

B. c. 539.] Psa. 50. 12. If I were hungry, I would not tell thee: for the world *is* mine, and the fulness thereof.

A. D. 56.] 1 Cor. 10. 26. For the earth *is* the Lord's, and the fulness thereof.

§ 467. *Rain and dew are under the control of God, and are given or withheld according to his will.*

B. c. 4004.] Gen. 2. 4. These are the generations of the heavens and the earth when they were created, in the day that the Lord God made the earth and the heavens. ⁵ And every plant of the field before it was in the earth, and every herb of the field before it grew: for the Lord God had not caused it to rain upon the earth, and *there was* not a man to till the ground. ⁶ But there went up a mist from the earth, and watered the whole face of the ground.

B. c. 1779.] Gen. 27. 28. Therefore God give thee of the dew of heaven, and the fatness of the earth, and plenty of corn and wine.

B. c. 1520.] Job 38. 25. Who hath divided a watercourse for the overflowing of waters, or a way for the lightning of thunder; ²⁶ To cause it to rain on the earth, *where* no man *is*; on the wilderness, wherein *there is* no man. ²⁷ To satisfy the desolate and waste *ground*; and to cause the bud of the tender herb to spring forth? ²⁸ Hath the rain a father? or who hath begotten the drops of dew?

B. c. 994.] 1 Kings 8. 35. When heaven is shut up, and there is no rain, because they have sinned against thee; if they pray toward this place, and confess thy name, and turn from their sin, when thou afflictest them: ³⁶ Then hear thou in heaven, and forgive the sin of thy servants, and of thy people Israel, that thou teach them the good way wherein they

should walk, and give rain upon thy land, which thou hast given to thy people for an inheritance.

B. c. 994.] 1 Kings 17. 1. And Elijah the Tishbite, *who was* of the inhabitants of Gilead, said unto Ahab, *As* the Lord God of Israel liveth, before whom I stand, there shall not be dew nor rain these years, but according to my word.

1 Kings 18. 1. And it came to pass *after* many days, that the word of the Lord came to Elijah in the third year, saying, Go, show thyself unto Ahab; and I will send rain upon the earth. ² And Elijah went to show himself unto Ahab. *And there was* a sore famine in Samaria. ⁴¹ And Elijah said unto Ahab, Get thee up, eat and drink; for *there is* a sound of abundance of rain. ⁴⁵ And it came to pass in the meanwhile, that the heaven was black with clouds and wind, and there was a great rain.

B. c. 787.] Amos 4. 7. And also I have withholden the rain from you, when *there were* yet three months to the harvest: and I caused it to rain upon one city, and caused it not to rain upon another city: one piece was rained upon, and the piece whereupon it rained not withered. ⁸ So two *or* three cities wandered unto one city, to drink water; but they were not satisfied: yet have ye not returned unto me, saith the Lord.

B. c. 696.] Joel 2. 23. Be glad then, ye children of Zion, and rejoice in the Lord your God: for he hath given you the former rain moderately, and he will cause to come down for you the rain, the former rain, and the latter rain in the first month.

B. c. 605.] Jer. 14. 22. Are there *any* among the vanities of the Gentiles that can cause rain? or can the heavens give showers? *art* not thou he, O Lord our God? therefore we will wait upon thee: for thou hast made all these *things*.

B. c. 587.] Zech. 10. 1. Ask ye of the Lord rain in the time of the latter rain; *so* the Lord shall make bright clouds, and give them showers of rain, to every one grass in the field.

B. c. 520.] Hag. 1. 10. Therefore the heaven over you is stayed from dew, and the earth is stayed *from* her fruit. ¹¹ And I called for a drought upon the land, and upon the mountains, and upon the corn, and upon the new wine, and upon the oil, and upon *that* which the ground bringeth forth, and upon men, and upon cattle, and upon all the labour of the hands.

A. D. 61.] James 5. 17. Elias was a man subject to like passions as we are, and he prayed earnestly that it might not rain: and it rained not on the earth by the space of three years and six months. ¹⁸ And he prayed again, and the heaven gave rain, and the earth brought forth her fruit.

§ 468. *Storms and floods are sent by God, and he controls them.*

B. C. 2448.] Gen. 6. 13. And God said unto Noah, The end of all flesh is come before me; for the earth is filled with violence through them; and, behold, I will destroy them with the earth. ¹⁷ And, behold, I, even I, do bring a flood of waters upon the earth, to destroy all flesh, wherein *is* the breath of life, from under heaven; *and* every thing that *is* in the earth shall die.

B. C. 2348.] Gen. 7. 6. And Noah *was* six hundred years old when the flood of waters was upon the earth. ¹² And the rain was upon the earth forty days and forty nights. ¹⁷ And the flood was forty days upon the earth; and the waters increased, and bare up the ark, and it was lifted up above the earth. ¹⁸ And the waters prevailed, and were increased greatly upon the earth; and the ark went upon the face of the waters. ¹⁹ And the waters prevailed exceedingly upon the earth; and all the high hills, that *were* under the whole heaven, were covered. ²⁴ And the waters prevailed upon the earth a hundred and fifty days.

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 9. 13. And the Lord said unto Moses, Rise up early in the morning, and stand before Pharaoh, and say unto him, Thus saith the Lord God of the Hebrews, Let my people go, that they may serve me. ¹⁸ Behold, to-morrow about this time I will cause it to rain a very grievous hail, such as hath not been in Egypt since the foundation thereof even until now. ²² And the Lord said unto Moses, Stretch forth thine hand toward heaven, that there may be hail in all the land of Egypt, upon man, and upon beast, and upon every herb of the field, throughout the land of Egypt. ²³ And Moses stretched forth his hand toward heaven: and the Lord sent thunder and hail, and the fire ran along upon the ground; and the Lord rained hail upon the land of Egypt. ²⁴ So there was hail, and fire mingled with hail, very grievous, such as there was none like it in all the land of Egypt since it became a nation. ²⁵ And the hail smote throughout all the land of Egypt all that *was* in the field, both man and beast; and the hail smote every herb of the field, and brake every tree of the field. ³¹ And the flax and the barley was smitten: for the barley *was* in the ear, and the flax *was* balled. ³³ And Moses went out of the city from Pharaoh, and spread abroad his hands unto the Lord: and the thunders and hail ceased, and the rain was not poured upon the earth.

B. C. 1031.] Psa. 105. 32. He gave them hail for rain, *and* flaming fire in their land. ³³ He smote their vines also and their fig trees; and brake the trees of their coasts.

B. C. 560.] Hag. 2. 17. I smote you with blasting and with mildew and with hail in all the labours of your hands; yet ye *turned* not to me, saith the Lord.

§ 469. *The winds and the sea are controlled by God.*

B. C. 1481.] Exod. 14. 21. And Moses stretched out his hand over the sea; and the Lord caused the sea to go *back* by a strong east wind all that night, and made the sea dry *land*, and the waters were divided. ²² And the children of Israel went into the midst of the sea upon the dry *ground*: and the waters *were* a wall unto them on their right hand and on the left. ²⁶ And the Lord said unto Moses, Stretch out thine hand over the sea, that the waters may come again upon the Egyptians, upon their chariots, and upon their horsemen. ²⁷ And Moses stretched forth his hand over the sea, and the sea returned to his strength when the morning appeared; and the Egyptians fled against it; and the Lord overthrew the Egyptians in the midst of the sea. ²⁸ And the waters returned, and covered the chariots, and the horsemen, *and* all the host of Pharaoh that came into the sea after them; there remained not so much as one of them.

B. C. 539.] Psa. 89. 8. O Lord God of hosts, who is a strong Lord like unto thee? or to thy faithfulness round about thee? ⁹ Thou rulest the raging of the sea: when the waves thereof arise, thou stillest them.

Psa. 93. 4. The Lord on high *is* mightier than the noise of many waters, *yea*, *than* the mighty waves of the sea.

Psa. 107. 29. He maketh the storm a calm, so that the waves thereof are still.

A. D. 27.] Matt. 8. 23. And when he was entered into a ship, his disciples followed him. ²⁴ And, behold, there arose a great tempest in the sea, insomuch that the ship was covered with the waves: but he was asleep. ²⁵ And his disciples came to *him*, and awoke him, saying, Lord, save us: we perish. ²⁷ And he saith unto them, Why are ye fearful, O ye of little faith? Then he arose, and rebuked the winds and the sea; and there was a great calm.

§ 470. *This earth shall be consumed with fire and pass away.*

B. C. 712.] Isa. 51. 6. Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath: for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment, and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner: but my salvation shall be for ever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

B. C. 538.] Psa. 102. 25. Of old hast thou laid the foundations of the earth: and the heavens *are* the work of thy hands. ²⁶ They shall perish, but thou shalt endure: yea, all of them shall wax old like a garment; as a vesture shalt thou change them, and they shall be changed.

A. D. 29.] Matt. 24. 35. Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away. ³⁶ But of that day and hour knoweth no *man*, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only.

A. D. 60.] 2 Peter 3. 7. But the heavens and the earth, which are now, by the same word are kept in store, reserved unto fire against the day of judgment and perdition of ungodly men. ⁸ But, beloved, be not ignorant of this one thing, that one day *is* with the Lord as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day. ¹⁰ But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up. ¹¹ *Seeing* then *that* all these things shall be dissolved, what manner *of persons* ought ye to be in *all* holy conversation and godliness, ¹² Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of God, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat?

CHAPTER VIII.

ANIMALS.

§ 471. *All animals are created by God.*

B. c. 4004.] Gen. 1. 20. And God said, Let the waters bring forth abundantly the moving creature that hath life, and fowl *that* may fly above the earth in the open firmament of heaven.

²¹ And God created great whales, and every living creature that moveth, which the waters brought forth abundantly, after their kind, and every winged fowl after his kind: and God saw that *it was* good. ²² And God blessed them, saying, Be fruitful, and multiply, and fill the waters in the seas, and let fowl multiply in the earth. ²⁴ And God said, Let the earth bring forth the living creature after his kind, cattle, and creeping thing, and beast of the earth after his kind: and it was so. ²⁵ And God made the beast of the earth after his kind, and cattle after their kind, and every thing that creepeth upon the earth after his kind: and God saw that *it was* good.

Gen. 2. 19. And out of the ground the Lord God formed every beast of the field, and every fowl of the air; and brought *them* unto Adam to see what he would call them: and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that *was* the name thereof. ²⁰ And Adam gave names to all cattle, and to the fowl of the air, and to every beast of the field.

§ 472. *All animals are placed under the dominion of man.*

B. c. 4004.] Gen. 1. 26. And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. ²⁸ And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.

B. c. 2347.] Gen. 9. 1. And God blessed Noah and his sons, and said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth. ² And the fear of you and the dread of you shall be upon every beast of the earth, and upon every fowl of the air, upon

all that moveth *upon* the earth, and upon all the fishes of the sea; into your hand are they delivered. ³ Every moving thing that liveth shall be meat for you; even as the green herb have I given you all things.

B. c. 1015.] Psa. 8. 4. What is man, that thou art mindful of him? and the son of man, that thou visitest him? ⁶ Thou madest him to have dominion over the works of thy hands; thou hast put all *things* under his feet: ⁷ All sheep and oxen, yea, and the beasts of the field; ⁸ The fowl of the air, and the fish of the sea, *and whatsoever* passeth through the paths of the seas.

A. D. 61.] James 3. 7. For every kind of beasts, and of birds, and of serpents, and of things in the sea, is tamed, and hath been tamed of mankind.

§ 473. *Fully feed the beast that works, and have regard to its life: and if it is in trouble help it.*

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 22. 4. Thou shalt not see thy brother's ass or his ox fall down by the way, and hide thyself from them: thou shalt surely help him to lift *them* up again.

Deut. 25. 4. Thou shalt not muzzle the ox when he treadeth out *the corn*.

B. c. 1000.] Prov. 12. 10. A righteous *man* regardeth the life of his beast: but the tender mercies of the wicked *are* cruel.

§ 474. *The flesh of all beasts may be eaten, but the blood shall not be eaten.*

B. c. 2347.] Gen. 9. 3. Every moving thing that liveth shall be meat for you; even as the green herb have I given you all things. ⁴ But flesh with the life thereof, *which is* the blood thereof, shall ye not eat. ⁶ And surely your blood of your lives will I require: at the hand of every beast will I require it.

B. c. 1451.] Deut. 12. 15. Notwithstanding, thou mayest kill and eat flesh in all thy gates, whatsoever thy soul lusteth after, according to the blessing of the Lord thy God which he hath given thee: the unclean and the clean may eat thereof, as of the roebuck, and as of the hart. ¹⁶ Only ye shall not eat the blood; ye shall pour it upon the earth as water.

A. D. 52.] Acts 15. 28. For it seemed good to the Holy Ghost, and to us, to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things; ²⁹ That ye abstain from meats offered to idols, and from blood, and from things strangled, and from fornication: from which if ye keep yourselves, ye shall do well. Fare ye well.

§ 475. *Beasts and insects are sometimes used by God to punish disobedient people.*

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 8. 5. And the Lord spake unto Moses, Say unto Aaron, Stretch forth thine hand with thy rod over the streams, over the rivers, and over the ponds, and cause frogs to come up upon the land of Egypt. ⁶ And Aaron stretched out his hand over the waters of Egypt; and the frogs came up, and covered the land of Egypt. ⁸ Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron, and said, Entreat the Lord, that he may take away the frogs from me, and from my people; and I will let the people go, that they may do sacrifice unto the Lord. ¹² And Moses and Aaron went out from Pharaoh: and Moses cried unto the Lord because of the frogs which he had brought against Pharaoh. ¹³ And the Lord did according to the word of Moses; and the frogs died out of the houses, out of the villages, and out of the fields. ¹⁴ And they gathered them together upon heaps: and the land stank. ¹⁵ But when Pharaoh saw that there was respite, he hardened his heart, and hearkened not unto them; as the Lord had said. ¹⁶ And the Lord said unto Moses, Say unto Aaron, Stretch out thy rod, and smite the dust of the land, that it may become lice throughout all the land of Egypt. ¹⁷ And they did so; for Aaron stretched out his hand with his rod, and smote the dust of the earth, and it became lice in man, and in beast; all the dust of the land became lice throughout all the land of Egypt. ¹⁹ Then the magicians said unto Pharaoh, This is the finger of God: and Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he hearkened not unto them; as the Lord had said. ²⁰ And the Lord said unto Moses, Rise up early in the morning, and stand before Pharaoh; lo, he cometh forth to the water; and say unto him, Thus saith the Lord, Let my people go, that they may serve me. ²¹ Else, if thou wilt not let my people go, behold, I will send swarms of flies upon thee, and upon thy servants, and upon thy people, and into thy houses: and the houses of the Egyptians shall be full of swarms of flies, and also the ground whereon they are. ²² And I will sever in that day the land of Goshen, in which my people dwell, that no swarms of flies shall be there; to the end thou mayest know that I *am* the Lord in the midst of the earth. ²⁴ And the Lord did so; and there came a grievous swarm of flies into the house of Pharaoh, and into his servants' houses, and into all the land of Egypt; the land was corrupted by reason of the swarm of flies. ³¹ And the Lord did according to the word of Moses; and he removed the swarms of flies from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people; there remained not one.

B. C. 1491.] Exod. 10. 12. And the Lord said unto Moses, Stretch out thine hand over the land of Egypt for the locusts, that they may come up upon the land of Egypt, and eat every herb of the land, *even* all that the hail hath left. ¹³ And Moses stretched forth his rod over the land of Egypt, and the Lord brought an east wind upon the land all that day, and all *that* night; *and* when it was morning, the east wind brought the locusts. ¹⁴ And the locusts went up over all the land of Egypt, and rested in all the coasts of Egypt: very grievous *were they*; before them there were no such locusts as they, neither after them shall be such. ¹⁵ For they covered the face of the whole earth, so that the land was darkened; and they did eat every herb of the land, and all the fruit of the trees which the hail had left: and there remained not any green thing in the trees, or in the herbs of the field, through all the land of Egypt. ¹⁶ Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron in haste; and he said, I have sinned against the Lord your God, and against you. ¹⁷ Now therefore forgive, I pray thee, my sin only this once, and entreat the Lord your God, that he may take away from me this death only. ¹⁸ And he went out from Pharaoh, and entreated the Lord. ¹⁹ And the Lord turned a mighty strong west wind, which took away the locusts, and cast them into the Red sea; there remained not one locust in all the coasts of Egypt.

Exod. 23. 28. I will send hornets before thee, which shall drive out the Hivite, the Canaanite, and the Hittite, from before thee.

B. c. 1451.] Num. 21. 6. And the Lord sent fiery serpents among the people, and they bit the people; and much people of Israel died. ⁷ Therefore the people came to Moses, and said, We have sinned, for we have spoken against the Lord, and against thee; pray unto the Lord, that he take away the serpents from us. And Moses prayed for the people. ⁸ And the Lord said unto Moses, Make thee a fiery serpent, and set it upon a pole; and it shall come to pass, that every one that is bitten, when he looketh upon it, shall live. ⁹ And Moses made a serpent of brass, and put it upon a pole; and it came to pass, that if a serpent had bitten any man, when he beheld the serpent of brass, he lived.

B. c. 1443.] Josh. 24. 12. And I sent the hornet before you, which drove them out from before you, *even* the two kings of the Amorites; *but* not with thy sword, nor with thy bow.

B. c. 1041.] Psal. 105. 30. Their land brought forth frogs in abundance, in the chambers of their kings. ³¹ He spake, and there came divers sorts of flies, *and* lice in all their coasts. ³⁴ He spake, and the locusts came, and caterpillars, and that without number.

B. c. 1015.] Psal. 78. 45. He sent divers sorts of flies among

them, which devoured them; and frogs, which destroyed them.
⁴⁰ He gave also their increase unto the caterpillar, and their labour unto the locust.

B. C. 974.] 1 Kings 13. 24. And when he was gone, a lion met him by the way, and slew him: and his carcass was cast in the way, and the ass stood by it, the lion also stood by the carcass. ²⁶ And when the prophet that brought him back from the way heard *thereof*, he said, It *is* the man of God, who was disobedient unto the word of the Lord: therefore the Lord hath delivered him unto the lion, which hath torn him, and slain him, according to the word of the Lord, which he spake unto him.

B. C. 678.] 2 Kings 17. 25. And *so* it was at the beginning of their dwelling there, *that* they feared not the Lord: therefore the Lord sent lions among them, which slew *some* of them.

INDEX.

[The figures denote the sections.]

- Abilities, different in persons, 432.
- Account for every word and action, 298.
- Accused brethren tried, 451.
- Adoption, 421.
- Adultery, 372.
- After this manner pray, 329.
- Angels appeared in material bodies, 262.
- Angels ate food, 262.
- Angels, devils contend against, 279.
- Angels restrained Abraham, 259.
- Anger, wrath of man, 343.
- Animals fed and cared for, 473.
- Animals used for food, 474.
- Apostles, etc., some to be, 431.
- Appetites in subjection, 355.
- Bad characters excommunicated, 452.
- Baptism, 346-348.
- Blessing, a, promised, 66.
- Blind healed, 131.
- Body incorruptible, immortal, 294.
- Body not subject to laws controlling the natural body, 296.
- Buying and selling, 395.
- Cheating, 395.
- Children in subjection, 381.
- Children mocking parents, 383.
- Children, obey your parents, 382.
- Children provided for, 378.
- Children trained, 379.
- Children, training, 371, 381.
- Choice, every one makes his own, 310.
- Choosing rulers, 386.
- Christ able to save, 123.
- Christ able to subdue, 122.
- Christ able to subdue all things, 124.
- Christ able to succour, 122.
- Christ above all creatures, 195.
- Christ, all are drawn to, 308.
- Christ, all power given unto, 117.
- Christ, all things delivered unto, 116.
- Christ always with his disciples, 163.
- Christ, angels worship, 268.
- Christ anointed, 98.
- Christ appeared after ascension, 162.
- Christ appeared after resurrection, 159.
- Christ a prophet, 104.
- Christ arose from the dead, 158.
- Christ a sacrifice, 166.
- Christ before all things, 69-72.
- Christ begotten, born, 75.
- Christ, belief in, necessary, 301-303.
- Christ, blood of, 426, 427.
- Christ, body like that of, 295.
- Christ called Adonai, 212.
- Christ called Elohim, 211.
- Christ called Jehovah, 213.
- Christ came from heaven, 199.
- Christ came in the Father's name, 200.
- Christ carried up into heaven, 160.
- Christ cast out devils, 133.
- Christ, Comforter foretold by, 108.
- Christ coming again, 161.
- Christ commended his spirit to God, 156.
- Christ compassionate, 135.
- Christ, confession of and faith in, 313.
- Christ, counsel taken against, 144.
- Christ crucified, 149.
- Christ, death and resurrection of, foretold, 107.
- Christ delivered for our offenses, 167.
- Christ, denying, 314.
- Christ died, 156.
- Christ died for our sins, 163.
- Christ equal with God, 118.
- Christ exalted, 221.
- Christ, faith in, necessary, 313.
- Christ, Father greater than, 196.
- Christ fed the multitude, 130.
- Christ first and the last, 72.
- Christ firstborn, 71.
- Christ forgive sins, 185.
- Christ form of God, 74.
- Christ forsaken of God, 150.
- Christ foundation of the Church, 192.
- Christ fullness of God, 209.
- Christ gave himself a sacrifice, 166.
- Christ gave power, 120.
- Christ gave thanks, 91.
- Christ giver of grace, 183.
- Christ gives eternal life, 207.
- Christ gives power, 121.
- Christ gives rest to the weary, 183.
- Christ Good Shepherd, 181.
- Christ greater than angels, 194.
- Christ greater than any man, 193.
- Christ grew in stature and wisdom, 84.
- Christ grieved and troubled, 89.
- Christ groaned and wept, 136.
- Christ has power to forgive sins, 185.
- Christ has the words of eternal life, 206.
- Christ head of the Church, 192.
- Christ healed the blind, etc., 181, 182.
- Christ helped, 95.
- Christ high-priest, 175.
- Christ holy, 187.
- Christ honoured, 201, 202.
- Christ hungered, 87.
- Christian priesthood, 429.

- Christ is just, 187.
 Christ is King, 223.
 Christ is life, 205.
 Christ is Master, 222.
 Christ, Judas hired to betray, 145.
 Christ kept, 95.
 Christ knew not the day of the end, 115.
 Christ knew who should betray him, 114.
 Christ knows his own, 113.
 Christ knows the Father, 109, 110.
 Christ knows the thoughts of men, 112.
 Christ laid in the sepulchre, 157.
 Christ Lamb of God, 165.
 Christ led by the Spirit, 97.
 Christ light of the world, 189.
 Christ Lord, 222.
 Christ made flesh, 73.
 Christ makes known, 102, 103.
 Christ meek and lowly, 140.
 Christ mocked, 148, 154.
 Christ of quick understanding, 111.
 Christ our brother, 92.
 Christ our example, 93.
 Christ performed miracles, 125.
 Christ, power given by, 120, 121.
 Christ, power given to, 117, 119.
 Christ preached, 99.
 Christ, priesthood of, 175, 176.
 Christ proceeds from the Father, 193.
 Christ quickens whom he will, 208.
 Christ raised dead to life, 134.
 Christ rejoiced in spirit, 137.
 Christ, resurrection of, 158, 159.
 Christ returned to the Father, 193.
 Christ reviled, 154.
 Christ's coat, lots cast for, 152.
 Christ, sea obeys, 126.
 Christ scourged, 148.
 Christ sends the Holy Spirit, 231.
 Christ shall deliver up the kingdom, 226.
 Christ, sick healed by, 132.
 Christ slain, 165.
 Christ, Son of God, 76-81.
 Christ suffered for our sins, 163.
 Christ taught and preached, 99.
 Christ taught by the Father, 101.
 Christ the Advocate, 174.
 Christ the author of salvation, 203.
 Christ the bishop, 181.
 Christ the bread of life, 164.
 Christ the deliverer, 173.
 Christ the image of God, 210.
 Christ the Judge, 186.
 Christ the only Mediator, 173.
 Christ, sanctification by the blood of, 427.
 Christ the propitiation, 107.
 Christ the Redeemer, 177.
 Christ the Saviour, 179.
 Christ the sinner's intercessor, 174.
 Christ the wisdom of God, 190.
 Christ thirsted, 87.
 Christ, thoughts of men known to, 112.
 Christ touched with our infirmities, 182.
 Christ's troubles, 89.
 Christ trusting in God, 154.
 Christ upholds all things, 220.
 Christ, vinegar given to, 153.
 Christ walked on the water, 127.
 Christ was baptized, 85.
 Christ was circumcised, 85.
 Christ washed disciples' feet, 141.
 Christ was weary, 88.
 Christ wept, 136.
 Christ, wind obeys, 126.
 Christ, wisdom to, by the Holy Spirit, 235.
 Christ without sin, 133, 139.
 Churches advised, 438.
 Church to be without divisions, 430.
 Come, whosoever will may, 309.
 Contention and strife, 369.
 Covetousness, 396.
 Deacons, character, etc., 450.
 Deacons, duty of, 445.
 Deacons, how appointed, 449.
 Dead, condition of the, 287-291.
 Dead raised to life, 134.
 Death and sin, 286.
 Devils have powers to do evil, 275.
 Devils instigate wickedness, 272.
 Devils know Christ and tremble, 280.
 Devils not to be worshipped, 281.
 Devils, temporary success of, 378.
 Devils tempt men to wickedness, 273.
 Devils tremble, 280.
 Disputations, 442.
 Divination, 388.
 Divorce, 374.
 Doctrine maintained, 441.
 Drunkenness, 353.
 Dumb, etc., healed, 131.
 Duties differ in persons, 432.
 Duty of all persons to work, 397.
 Earth, blessing promised to all the, 66.
 Earth to be consumed, 470.
 Elders advised where to labour, 437.
 Elders, character and reputation, 436.
 Elders, duty of, 439.
 Elders esteemed and honoured, 446.
 Elders, how appointed, 435.
 Elders, how supported, 445.
 Elders maintain doctrine, 441.
 Elders, neglect of duty, 440.
 Elders obtain confidence of people, 443.
 Elders, pray for, 447.
 Elders, superstitions, disputations, 442.
 Evidences sufficient, 315.
 Evil doing, 358.
 Evil speaking, 409.
 Faith, stand fast in the, 316.
 False teachers excluded, 453.
 False witness, 406.
 Fasting, 351, 352.
 Father, kingdom delivered up to the, 226.
 Food, give thanks for, 334.
 Foolish talking and jesting, 415.
 Foreigners, treatment of, 405.
 Forgiveness and salvation, 301.
 Fornication, 372.
 Fraud, 392.
 General superintendents appointed, 434.
 Giving benevolently, 401-404.

- Giving offense, 359.
 God able to perform, 32.
 God, actions of men known unto, 19.
 God, all should repent and turn to, 300.
 God, all things possible with, 31.
 God, angels worship, 256.
 God angry with the wicked, 47.
 God, animals created by, 471.
 God, animals used by, 475.
 God a Spirit, 7.
 God, believing, necessary, 312.
 God, be perfect before, 428.
 God blesses the righteous, 60.
 God, children of, 421.
 God created all things by Christ, 219.
 God created animals, 471.
 God created man, 288.
 God created the heavens and the earth, 465.
 God compassionate, 43.
 God does what he pleases, and wills, 33.
 God, earth created by, 465.
 God, elders fearless, pleasing, 444.
 God, enemies of, 49.
 God eternal, 4.
 God faithful, 42.
 God Father of Jesus Christ, 65.
 God Father of the righteous, 62.
 God favours the righteous, 60.
 God, fear, 319, 320.
 God first and the last, 6.
 God giver of wisdom, etc., 15-17.
 God gives power to get wealth, 400.
 God good, 36.
 God governor, 45.
 God has done for you, tell what, 332.
 God, heavens and earth created by, 465.
 God helps the righteous, 56.
 God holy, 37.
 God is in heaven and earth, 8.
 God immortal, 4, 5.
 God in Christ reconciling the world, 217.
 God infinite in wisdom, 13.
 God invisible, 3.
 God is just, 40.
 God is King, 45.
 God is love, 63.
 God is true, 41.
 God keeps the righteous, 57.
 God knows how to deliver or punish, 24.
 God knows the end from the beginning, 25.
 God knows the heart, 20.
 God knows the hearts of men, 20.
 God knows the thoughts, etc., of men, 19.
 God knows what we need, 23.
 God knows who love and trust, 21.
 God knows who will teach children, 22.
 God leads the righteous, 59.
 God longsuffering, 50.
 God, love, 318.
 God manifest in Christ, 215.
 God, man worship, 323.
 God merciful, 43.
 God, name of, taken in vain, 340.
 God, none hide from presence of, 10.
 God not contained in the heavens, 7.
 God, one only, 2.
 God perfect in knowledge, 18.
 God pleasing, 312.
 God, power belongs unto, 34.
 God, presence of, 10.
 God preserves the righteous, 58.
 God pure, 38.
 God remembers covenants, 29.
 God remembers individuals, 28.
 God remembers righteousness, 26.
 God remembers wickedness, 27.
 God, reverence, 321.
 God, seek, 322.
 God sees every thing, 5.
 God's fury against the wicked, 48.
 Gods, have no other, 336.
 God, show forth the glory, etc., of, 330.
 God's judgments, angels execute, 258.
 God's name, swearing by, 339, 340.
 God's will, asking according to, 327.
 God's will, asking contrary to, 326.
 God, taking the name of, 340.
 God teaches, 59.
 God the Creator, 44.
 God the deliverer, 52.
 God the giver of wisdom in arts, 17.
 God the giver of judicial wisdom, 16.
 God the giver of strength and power, 35.
 God the God of Jesus Christ, 65.
 God the Judge, 46.
 God the Lawgiver, 45.
 God the Redeemer, 51.
 God the refuge of the righteous, 61.
 God, the righteous understand, 304, 331.
 God the Saviour, 53.
 God, thoughts of men known to, 19.
 God unchangeable, 12.
 God upholds the righteous, 55.
 God, wicked and worldly know not, 306.
 God will render vengeance, 49.
 God, word of, made flesh, 73.
 God, words of, fitted to the lips, 463.
 Good and bad separated, 289.
 Government taxes, 339.
 Hatred, 366.
 Holy Spirit a witness for Christ, 241.
 Holy Spirit begat Christ, 233.
 Holy Spirit, believers taught and led by the, 252.
 Holy Spirit, blasphemy against the, 255.
 Holy Spirit, commandments through, 240.
 Holy Spirit convicts of sin, etc., 246.
 Holy Spirit descended on Christ, 96.
 Holy Spirit given by the Father, 229, 230.
 Holy Spirit given to Christ, 234.
 Holy Spirit gives assurance, 248.
 Holy Spirit gives talents to men, 253.
 Holy Spirit guides, 243.
 Holy Spirit helps in prayer, 251.
 Holy Spirit, ministers guided by, 265.
 Holy Spirit regenerates, 247.
 Holy Spirit, sanctification by the, 248.
 Holy Spirit teaches, 252.
 Holy Spirit, the, proceeds from the Father, 223.

- Hospitality, 364.
 Husband and wife, 373-377.
 Image worship, 337.
 Intemperance, 353-357.
 Jerusalem, destruction of, foretold, 112.
 Jesting, 415.
 Judges and officers, 388.
 Judges, trial by the, 387.
 Judgment day, 297-299.
 Justification not of works, 419.
 Kingdom not of this world, 224.
 Kingdom without end, 225.
 Laws contrary to God's, 391.
 Letters of commendation, 455.
 Lord, cast burdens and cares on the, 317.
 Lord, give glory unto the, 335.
 Lord's Supper, the, 349, 350.
 Love one another, 422.
 Love the fulfilling of the law, 423.
 Maintain doctrine, 441.
 Maintain good works, 416.
 Man fruitful and multiply, 284.
 Man lower than angels, 285.
 Man multiply, 284.
 Man, power given to, 35.
 Man, resurrection of, 292-296.
 Man, sin and death of, 286.
 Man trusting in God, 317.
 Masters and servants, 384, 385.
 Meekness, 360.
 Men, animals under, 472.
 Men, wisdom given to, 15.
 Messiah the Christ, 94.
 Multitude fed, 130.
 Murder, 365.
 Nations, wickedness of, 27.
 None come except drawn, 307.
 None know when the end shall be, 299.
 Numbered among transgressors, 151.
 Oaths, 339-341.
 Oppressed, relieving the, 352, 417.
 Parents and children, 375-383.
 Patience, 361.
 Peacemaking, 370.
 Poetry, wisdom and skill in, 17.
 Potter's field bought, 146.
 Prayer, 324-329.
 Prayer, vain repetitions in, 228.
 Pray for all in authority, 390.
 Pride, 362.
 Promises fulfilled, 63.
 Prophet, a, promised, 67.
 Prophets, inspiration of the, etc., 232.
 Repentance, 300.
 Responsible for use of abilities, 433.
 Revenge, 367.
 Riches, labouring for, 398.
 Robbery, 392.
 Sabbath day, 343-345.
 Salvation and forgiveness, 301.
 Salvation and works, 419.
 Salvation in no other name, 180, 302.
 Sanctification, 425.
 Satan the adversary, 277.
 Sciences, 17.
 Scriptures, 462.
 Scriptures, all should know the, 460.
 Scriptures and traditions, 458.
 Scriptures given by inspiration, 456.
 Scriptures, remember the, 461.
 Scriptures, search the, 461.
 Sea and winds, 469.
 Selling and buying, 395.
 Servants, 384, 385.
 Sin, free from the dominion of, 423.
 Singing, 333.
 Son of man, 82.
 Speaking evil, 409.
 Speaking harshly, 414.
 Speaking hastily, 410.
 Speaking truth, 408.
 Spirit and soul live, 287.
 Spiritualism, [necromancy,] 333.
 Spread of the truth, 464.
 Storms and floods, 463.
 Strife, 369.
 Strong drink given to another, 356.
 Superstitions, 442.
 Surfeiting and drunkenness, 353.
 Swearing by created things, 341.
 Talebearing, 412.
 Thanksgiving, 333.
 Theft, 392-394.
 Training children, 371, 381.
 Ungodly, their minds darkened, 276.
 Unjust punished, 24.
 Unknown language, 223.
 Voluntary self-humiliation, 413.
 Water turned to wine, 128.
 Wealth, use and increase of, 398-400.
 Wife and husband one flesh, 373.
 Wife, duties of, 377.
 Wisdom, all things done in, 14.
 Wisdom in arts, etc., 17.
 Wisdom, judicial, 16.
 Wicked, indignation against the, 48.
 Wine-drinkers, etc., associating with, 354.
 Witnesses in civil trials, number of, 407.
 Work, duty of all persons to, 397.
 Works, good, 416-418.
 Works, salvation not of, 420.
 World, when end of the, 299.

Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: May 2005

PreservationTechnologies

A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16068
(724) 779-2111



0 014 039 586 9

